UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 00359956 0

HANDBOUND
AT THE

UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS

24

The Romans of Partenay,

or of Lusignen.

EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW: OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 20.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
BOSTON: DUTTON & CO.

0

The

Romans of Partenay,

or of Lusignen:

OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

The Tale of Melusine:

Translated from the French of La Coudrette
(*about* 1500—1520 A.D.).

EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT IN THE LIBRARY
OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,

WITH AN

Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index,

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, EDITOR OF LANCELOT OF THE LAIK, &C.

33062
21/3/94

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXVI.

PR
1119
A2
no. 22

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

PREFACE.

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE MSS., &c.

The MS. from which the present poem has now for the first time been copied and edited, is one belonging to Trinity College, Cambridge (where its class-mark is R. 3. 17), and which is believed to be unique. It is written (on paper) in a clear but somewhat loose handwriting of the beginning of the sixteenth century, or possibly of the latter part of the fifteenth. I am inclined to guess that it may appear to be of a somewhat later date than it really is, from the possibility of its not having been written by a professional scribe; that is to say, if we are to take literally the lines near the conclusion,

> Sin at your request and commaundement
> This warke on me toke, it to fourge and make;
> And so haue I doñ after myne entent
> *With* litterall carectes for your sake,
> Tham conueying in sable lines blake, &c.,

which seem to imply that the maker of the translation wrote it out with his own hand. This, however, of course involves two other assumptions; viz. that this particular copy is the original (perhaps the only) one, and that the translator was one who did not employ a scribe. The MS. is nearly perfect, but two leaves are wanting, viz. fol. 1 and fol. 88. The sense of the latter has been easily supplied from a French MS. which will be described shortly, but fol. 1 contained original matter which might have told us more about the translator himself. As each page contains exactly four stanzas of seven lines each, we have thus lost 56 lines at most; but the precise

number being uncertain, the lines of the Prologue have been numbered separately. Had the MS. been perfect, the whole number of folios would have been 124.

On the margins of some of the leaves side-notes have been made in a much later hand. As these relate to the story, they have all been copied, and will be found in the foot-notes. On a vellum fly-leaf at the beginning are the marks of ownership—

"Liber Ricardi St Georg } fero et spero"—
Norroy Regis armor*um* }

and below this—

"Beaupre Bell, de Beauprè Hall in Com. Norf. ΑΡΙΣΤΕΥΕΙΝ." By the latter of these it was presented to Trinity College.

On the front of this fly-leaf there is written, in a very scrawly handwriting which it is very difficult to read, the following short poem, which seems worth transcription.

" masteres anne,
I ame your man,
as you may well espye :
if you will be
content with me,
I am merrie, [say I.] [1]
but if you will
kepe company still
with every knaue *y*at comes by ;
what boteth [be]
faythefull to [me,] [2]
I am, &c.

but if you fayne,
I tell you playne,
if I shulde presently die,
I will none suche

[1] The word "merrie" is hardly legible, and the line is incomplete.

[2] "be" and "me" have been cut off in the binding; there are also two other readings of these two lines, through which the pen has been drawn, viz.

" then shall you be—forsaken of me,"

and,

" then kepe you still—to werke your will."

as loues to muche,
I am, &c.

For if you can
loue euery man
yat can flatter & lie,
then are not ye
no mache for me,
I am, &c.

For I will not take
no suche kinde of mak[e,]
as you shall full well it trie,
yat of wil me cast
at euery blast ;
I am merrie, &c."

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS. as printing allows of, all its peculiarities being preserved as far as possible, such as, e.g. the use of the long *s* (ſ), and the occasional occurrence of a small letter at the beginning of a line. Every stanza begins with a large red capital, indicated by the large printed letter. The expansions of the various contractions, which occur but seldom, are indicated by italics. A hyphen within a word, such as in "vn-to" (Prol. l. 63), means that the syllables are written with a space between them. Letters or words between square brackets—such as in columb[e]re, l. 125—do not exist in the MS., but have been supplied because they are necessary. To ensure accuracy, the proof-sheets have been twice compared with the MS. throughout the poem. I am of course responsible for the punctuation, marks of parenthesis and quotation, side-notes, &c.

The peculiarities of the MS. that have not been observed are these :—full points occurring at the ends of lines[1] ; the strokes through the upper part of the letter *h* when it follows *c*, *g*, or *t* ; slight tags to *f*, *g*, *t*, and *ll*, which (in this MS. at least) mean nothing ; and the fine downstrokes which are introduced as metrical marks. These are often left out, and were merely intended to shew

[1] When one occurs in the *middle* of a line it has been inserted between marks of parenthesis, as at l. 95.

where a pause might be best made in the middle of a line when recited aloud. Such strokes occur oftenest after the *fifth* syllable, often after the *fourth*, rarely after the *sixth*. In the first stanza of the Poem, p. 8, one occurs three times, as thus :—

Hit is fo in trouth / in time auncion,
After the time / that OctauiAn was, ...
And A man ful ripe / in other clerigie.

The lines most frequently consist of ten syllables, which require a slow and measured pronunciation to make them melodious. The —*e* and —*es* at the end of words must often be fully pronounced.

The construction of the sentences, owing to some peculiarities of grammar, is not unfrequently obscure, and the question of punctuation in particular often presented difficulties, but nearly all doubts of this kind have been completely removed by a very fortunate circumstance, which, as I believe, has nearly doubled the value of the present edition. A MS. (marked Ll. 2. 5) belonging to the Cambridge University Library was kindly pointed out to me by Mr Bradshaw, of King's College, which contains, in French, the whole of the very romance of which the present edition is a translation. The copy which our translator used must have resembled this very closely indeed, though a few differences of reading can be traced; and, as a consequence, this French MS. has proved of the utmost service, and a constant reference to it has explained many a sentence, phrase, and word, which would else have proved puzzling; whilst a comparison of the two throughout has well decided the punctuation. The French MS. is in all respects superior to the English one; it is older, clearer, and better written, and the language is easier and more poetical. It is of the fifteenth century, on paper, and contains 165 written leaves, followed by a few blank ones. Of these, the first 148 are occupied by the "Romance of Melusine," and the rest chiefly by a Chronicle of events in French history, arranged in short paragraphs under their proper years, the last entry referring to the year 1454. Numerous extracts from it, illustrative of doubtful points, will be found in the notes, and the whole of the Prologue to the poem, carefully copied from it, will be found at p. 229.

Besides these two, there is also a copy of the Romance in prose

in the British Museum (Bibl. Reg. 18. B. ii) consisting of 219 folios, and entitled—in a later hand—"A Chronicle of Melusine in olde English, compiled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe." But this, as will be more fully explained presently, gives a different version of the story, and I have not made much use of it. Still, a few extracts from it will be found in the notes, and one of some length on a later page of this preface.

There is also, among the Additional MSS. in the British Museum, a short abstract of the Poem in Icelandic, entitled "Melucinæ og Remunds Saga." It is, however, of late date and little value. It contains seven short chapters, and begins on fol. 62b of MS. 4870.

Several quotations will be found in the notes from a book of which the title is—"Histoire des ducs de Bourbon et des comtes de Forez: par Jean-Marie de la Mure"—printed at Paris in 1860 from a MS. bearing the date 1675. The author accepts a large portion of the romance as genuine history, and works out genealogies and titles with the most laborious minuteness. Several of his statements are certainly open to question, but the book is interesting as illustrating the romance; see particularly book ii. chapters 77—84.

II. SOME ACCOUNT OF THE ROMANCE.

The first mention of the Romance is in connection with Jean d'Arras; of whom some account is given in the "Biographie Universelle." He was secretary to the Duc de Berri, who was brother to Charles V., king of France, and uncle to Charles VI., and also notorious for exercising great severity as governor of Languedoc. In the year 1387, the duke bade Jean d'Arras to write this romance for the amusement of his (the duke's) sister, the Duchesse de Bar. The famous deeds of the fairy Melusine had been long before this recorded in some documents that had been carefully preserved in the castle of Lusignan. To these Jean trusted for the main portion of his work, but added much of his own. It seems probable that it was at first written in Latin, as we

find in the Catalogue of MSS. of Gaul, Switzerland, &c., by D. G. Hænel, the following entry :—" 187. Roman de Melusine ; traduction en vers du *latin* de Jean d'Arras."[1] But it is probable that it was not long before there was also a French prose translation in existence, which may have been made by Jean d'Arras himself. This seems to agree with the statement in the Cambridge MS.,

" Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez
En *latin*, et tous approimtez,
Quon fist *translater en francois* (see p. 231) ;

or as our English translator puts it,

" Within the toure of noble mabregon
To faire bokis were fonden ther-on
In latin, And all preuyd at deuife,
That men made tranflat in moft frenfheft wyfe."

It is this version of the story which is given by the British Museum prose romance, which begins by invoking the " Creatour of alle Creatures," and continues thus. " And to the plaisire of my Right high, mighti, and doubtid lord Johan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce,[2] duc of Berry & of Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after the veray & true Cronykles which I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury[3] in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to acomplysshe hit. And bycause that his noble suster Mary, doughtir to the kyng Johñ of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had Requyred my said lord for to haue the said historye ; the whiche in fauour of her [he] hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to serche the very trouth & true historye ; and hath commaunded me for to do drawe alle alonge thistorye whiche heraftur foloweth. And I, as of herte diligent, of my pouere witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth of hys gracyous commandement . . . . . Whiche this present hystorye I bygamne the Wensday, saynt Clementis day,[4] in wynter, the yer of our lord mcccclxxxvii. ; beseching alle them that shalle rede or here it Redde

[1] So also Brunet, in his " Manuel de Libraire," speaks of this romance as " tiré du *latin* de Jean d'Arras."

[2] Jean II., mentioned a few lines below. [3] See note to Prol. l. 178.

[4] Nov. 23. But, in 1387, Nov. 23 was a Saturday ; the letters vii probably mean iiii, mistaken for uii ; for 1384 brings it right.

that they wil pardonne me my fawte yf their be eny. For certaynly I haue composed it the moost lustly that I coude or haue mowe, aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to be trew."

The earliest printed edition of this Romance is thus described by Brunet (Manuel du Libraire, ed. 1862, iii. 519). "Jean d'Arras. La Melusine. 'Cy finist le liure de Melusine en francoys, imprime par maistre Adam Steinschaber, natif de Suinfurt, en la noble cite de Geneue'. 1478. in-fol. goth. fig. en bois." It was one of the very first books printed at Geneva. Since then, editions have been very numerous,[1] as well in Spanish and German as in French; and the story is altogether very familiarly and very widely known upon the continent.

We now come to the second and later form in which the Romance commonly appears.

In the Catalogue of the Library of the duc de la Vallière, (Paris: 1783), vol. ii., p. 260, there is an account of a fine MS. on vellum of "Le Roman de Mélusine, ou de Partenay, ou de Lusignan." The romance is followed by a chronicle in prose of events in French history from the year 1403 to 1454.

There is little doubt but that the Cambridge MS., already described, altogether agrees with this, but is not so fine a copy. This version is in octosyllabic metre, and was undertaken by one named La Coudrette, a Poitevin, at the request of William, lord of Parthenay, and continued after this William's death (in 1401), at the request of his son, John of Parthenay, of whom there are profuse praises towards the close of the poem. La Coudrette tells us, in his prologue,[2] that he had three books to refer to, and he professes to have done little more than re-arrange his materials. When these failed, he broke off the narrative,[3] not venturing to continue it without due authority. He is also careful to tell us[4] that his was not the first attempt at versifying the story, and he therefore deprecates all credit for his performance. The reader will observe that the one version only preceded the other by a period which is less than

[1] See Brunet; also the La Vallière catalogue, vol. ii., p. 642; and the Conversations-Lexicon, s.v. Melusine.

[2] Prol. ll. 154—189. [3] See ll. 6398, 6399. [4] Prol. l. 159—161.

fourteen years. I may add here that there is an excellent modern version of the story in German to be found in Tieck, which I have often found of service. It is written partly in prose and partly in verse, but it is clear that in the prose portion Tieck has often adopted the very words of La Coudrette's version, so that a close comparison of them often explains minor difficulties. So common indeed is the story in Germany that an abstract of it can be had in the form of a "Volksbuch" for a couple of *groschen*, in which the principal circumstances of the legend are very well and clearly told.

III. THE LEGEND.

The subject of the legend may be most briefly shewn by an extract from a well-known work, which also discusses the name of the heroine.[1] "Melisenda is, in Spanish ballad lore, the wife of Don Gayferos, and, being taken captive by the Moors, was the occasion of the feats that were represented by the puppet-show in which Don Quixote took an unfortunate lively interest.[2] Melisende again was the princess who carried the uneasy crown of Jerusalem to the house of Anjou; and, perhaps, from the Provençal connection of the English court, Lady Melisent Stafford bore the name in the time of Henry the Second, whence Melicent has become known in England, and never quite disused, though often confounded with Melissa, a bee, and sometimes spelt Millicent.

Melusine was a nymph who became the wife of the Lord de Luzignan, or Lusignan,[3] on condition that he should never intrude upon her on a Saturday; of course, after a long time, his curiosity was excited, and stealing a glance at his lady in her solitude, he beheld her a serpent from the waist downward! With a terrible shriek she was lost to him for ever; but she left three [ten] sons, all bearing some deformity, of whom Geoffroi *au grant dent* was the

[1] Miss Yonge: on Christian Names, vol. i., p. 257.

[2] In the original Spanish, it is spelt Melisendra—"Melisendra libertada por el famoso D. Gaiferos." Don Quijote: parte ii. cap. xxv.

[3] "Près de la ville de Montbrison, il y a une paroisse qui porte encore [A.D. 1675] le propre nom de *Lezigniacum* ou *Leziniacum*, qui est le vrai nom latin de la Maison de Lusignan ainsi communément nommé, quoiqu' elle dût être appelée Lezignem." De la Mure: *Histoire des ducs de Bourbons*, &c., p. 495. The "Conversations-Lexicon" makes Lusinecm an anagram of Melusine, but this is clearly a wrong form of the word.

most remarkable. Prose makes this gentleman the son of Eustachie Chabot, heiress of Vouvant, but the Mélusine tradition lingers round his castle of Lusignan, near Poictiers; and to this day, at the fairs of that city, gingerbread cakes are sold, with human head and serpent tail, and called *mélusines*. A *cri de Mélusine* is, likewise, a proverbial expression for a sudden scream, recalling that with which the unfortunate fairy discovered the indiscretion of her lord.

The story is a frequent one; it occurs in Brittany, where the spell was broken by the husband speaking the word *death* before his fairy wife; and in Wales, where the lady is called a "*pellen*."

We may recall, too, Keats's "Lamia;" and how she disappeared as Apollonius uttered the word "serpent" for the second time—

"A serpent!" echoed he; no sooner said,
Than with a frightful scream she vanished—

a story which, as Burton tells us, is to be found in Philostratus, in his fourth book *de vitâ Apollonii*.[1]

To come somewhat more to particulars, I may first observe that the prose version is much longer and contains many more details than the rimed one;[2] and that the story resolves itself into these several parts. (1) The story of king Helmas and the enchanted mountain; (this part of the story is inserted in the rimed version near the *end*, but the prose version puts it in its proper place at the *beginning*;) (2) Raymond and Melusine; (3) the deeds of their sons; (4) the legend of Sparrow-hawk Castle; and (5) Palestine's treasure in Arragon. I now give a very brief abstract of these, referring the reader for further details to the "Index of Names" at the end of this volume.

I. King Helmas. Helmas was king of Albany, who married a fairy

[1] "L'histoire de Mélusine est une vielle fable dont le cadre, nettement tracé, existoit déjà au xiie siècle; du reste, cette tradition de la femme-serpent doit être beaucoup plus ancienne et n'est peut-être pas sans quelque rapport avec le Draco-calopedes, et même avec la déesse Derceto des Syriens." De la Mure: *Histoire*, &c.: note by the editor.

[2] It records more of the valiant deeds of Raymond and others, and especially of Geoffrey; and it mentions many minor details which the later version altogether omits. For example, when Uriens and Guy depart on their adventures, the prose romance tells us how their mother Melusine gave them two magic rings as amulets; and in like manner she gives two similar rings to Raymond just before her disappearance, to protect him from harm and misfortune. (See *fol.* 65 and *fol.* 188.)

named Presine, to whom he swore a vow, that he would never go to see her at the time of child-birth. Presine had three daughters at a birth, whom she named Melusine, Melior, and Palestine. Helmas then broke his promise, and the three children in revenge, being themselves endued with fairy power, shut him up in an enchanted mountain till his death (pp. 152—161). Presine, angry at this, punishes each of them with different evil destinies. Melusine was partly to turn into a serpent every Saturday; Melior was to be banished for ever to Sparrow-hawk Castle in Armenia; and Palestine to keep unceasing watch over king Helmas' treasure, which was deposited on a mountain-top in Arragon.

II. Count Raymond. A rich earl of Poitiers, named Amery, adopted Raymond, the youngest son of the earl of Forest. In a boar-hunt, Raymond accidentally slays his benefactor; and soon after, whilst riding aimlessly about absorbed in grief, is surprised by the sudden sight of three beautiful damsels (Melusine, Melior, and Palestine). The eldest, Melusine, promises him all earthly prosperity if he will marry her; but he is to swear that he will never inquire whither she repairs on a Saturday. After some years, he secretly watches her on that day, and perceives her with her serpent's tail. He is deeply grieved, and being very penitent, is forgiven for the present. But afterwards, in a moment of rage at hearing of the death of his son Fromount, he calls her a "serpent!" She swoons with horror, and after an expostulatory farewell glides out at the window in a serpent's form, passing round the castle three times, at each time uttering a terrible and mournful cry. Raymond is afterwards absolved by the pope, and becomes a hermit at Montserrat in Arragon, where he dies at a great age.

III. Their Sons. Raymond and Melusine had ten sons, all marked (except the two youngest) with some blemish, and nearly all remarkable for their great valour and extraordinary success. Of these, Uriens becomes king of Cyprus; Oede was lord of the marches of Poitiers; Guy was king of Armenia; Anthony, duke of Luxemburg; Raynold, king of Bohemia; whilst Geoffrey with the great tooth, who succeeded his father as lord of Parthenay, performed many prodigies of valour, slaying the giant Guedon in Guerrande,

the giant Grimold in Northumberland, and discovering all the wonders of the enchanted mountain. But the seventh son, Fromount, disgraced the family by becoming a monk, for which act his brother Geoffrey burnt him alive with all his fellow-monks, abbey and all. The next, Horrible, was put to death by Melusine's order, for fear of the wickedness he would else commit. The two last were born some time after the rest, and were named Raymond and Thierry; Raymond [1] became earl of Forest, and Thierry succeeded Geoffrey as lord of Parthenay.

IV. Sparrow-hawk Castle. In this castle, which was in Armenia, the lady Melior was to abide for the rest of her days, as above told. Presine had given her the power of granting a boon to any knight who watched the deathless sparrow-hawk which was within the castle, for three days and nights without sleeping. He was to have whatever he liked, except Melior herself as wife. The story tells how a king of Armenia dared to ask this, and how he was punished.

V. Palestine's treasure. Palestine guarded her father's treasure at the top of a mountain in Arragon, which is variously spelt Courgo, Coinqs, Quonig, &c. In this she was assisted by a huge serpent with a huge eye, and by a great bear and innumerable snakes that infested the lower part of the mountain. The story tells how an English knight slew the bear, and passed by all the snakes, but was swallowed bodily by the great serpent, in whose mouth he appeared no bigger than a pasty does in an oven.

The rimed romance concludes with many praises of John of Parthenay, with a lament for his father's death, and, at the end, a solemn litany for the preservation of the family and lineage of Parthenay. La Coudrette discusses the proper name to be given to the romance, and decides that it ought to be named either the "Romans of Partenay," or the "Romans of Lusignen"; to which decision I have therefore adhered.[2]

The translator appends a short epilogue of his own, as he had previously prefixed a few lines to the old French prologue.

The story of Melusine is alluded to by several historical writers.

[1] See Index of Names; s.v. Raymond (2).

[2] See ll. 6116—6421.

Thuanus[1] speaks of the excellent situation of the castle of Lusignan, strongly fortified as it was by a wide fosse and two large towers, and conspicuous for its "Melusine's tower," and "Geoffrey's gateway;" the latter being so called, according to Brantôme, from the colossal statue of Geoffrey *au grant dent* which surmounted it. Thuanus also mentions the famous fountain (for the marvellous origin of which see p. 32 of the present volume) in the words—"in imâ turre fons Melusinæ a poetis nostratibus decantatæ fabulis famosus scatet." Both Mezeray[2] and Brantôme[3] record the sad fate of this famous castle, which was razed to the ground by the Duc de Montpensier in 1574, because it had been determined to pull down all the fortresses wherein the Huguenots had been accustomed to take refuge. Mezeray's words with regard to Melusine are remarkable. "The great acts of Melusine," he says, "her riches, her extraordinary knowledge, which she derived either from communication with higher intelligences, or rather perhaps from the cabala of the Rabbins who were then very numerous in France, have procured her immortal renown in the mouth of posterity; who, not knowing her real history, have invented marvellous tales concerning her. These I leave to amuse old women and children. But I am enabled to report, on the credit of many persons of honour, and who are not generally thought credulous, that it has been observed that whenever one of her descendants, or a king of France, was about to die, she appeared on the great tower in a widow's[4] habit, and uttered long and terrible cries; that she was thus seen before the siege of Lusignan; and that, when her castle was about to be demolished, she was seen longer than ever before, shrieking aloud in so lamentable a voice that she cleft all hearts with pity; but that she has since never been seen or heard save very rarely. Si cela est ainsi (I here give his own words) les Theologiens en rechercheront la cause, et nous enseigneront si nous devons croire que des pareilles choses proviennent, ou de la malice des demons, qui se plaisent à mettre

[1] Thuanus: lib. lix. § xi.

[2] Mezeray; Histoire de la France, tome iii. p. 359 (fol. 1685).

[3] Brantôme; Capitaines Françoises; tome iii. p. 369.

[4] Brantôme also expressly calls her "veufve," so that the historical account is that she outlived Raymond, instead of disappearing so suddenly as in the romance.

les hommes en peine par ces illusions ; ou de la bontè de Dieu, qui *pour monstrer aux incredules l'immortalité de l'ame*, et les merveilles de l'autre monde, veut permettre aux esprits heroïques de paroître quelquefois en celuy-cy dans les lieux qu'ils ont aimez durant leur vie."

Brantôme also testifies, but less strongly, to these miraculous reappearances ;[1] and especially laments the destruction of the fine castle, for which many spoke of the Duc de Montpensier in terms of bitter execration. The ruins of the castle can now scarcely be traced. Miss Costello has recorded her extreme disappointment when visiting the site of them.[2]

With regard to the question just above raised by Mezeray as to the existence of fairies, the following extract from the prose romance is very interesting, and may serve also as a specimen of it.

"We haue thenne herd sey and telle of *our* auncyents, that in manye partes of the sayd land of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon Right famylerly many manyeres of thinges the which som called Gobelyns, the other Fayrees, and the other bonnes dames or good ladyes; and they goo by nyght tyme and entre *with*in the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of their cradelle*s*, and somtyme they turne them out of theyre wit, and somtyme they brenne & Roste them before þe fyre, and whan they departe fro them they leue them as hoole as they were before, and som̄ gyue grette happe & Fortune in this world. And yet haue I herd say of oon Geruase, a man worshipfull & of credence, that som̄ other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places in lyknes of wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body, whiche dide scoure pannes and potts and dide suche thinge*s* as a mayde or *seruaun*t oughte to doo, lyberaly & without dooyng of any harme. And also he saith for certayn that in his tyme he had a frend that was auncyent & old,

[1] Cf. note to l. 3711.

[2] Miss L. S. Costello ; Béarn and the Pyrenees, vol. i.. p. 140. She gives a sketch of the legend, and adds that Bouchet, in his chronicles, says he cannot find that any duke or count of Poitou was ever called Bertrand or Aymery ; whence he concludes that the whole story is one of those which it is *impossible to believe, but which are at the same time delectable to read.*

which Recounted for trouth that in hys dayes he hadd seen many tymes such thinges." (fol. 2 *b*.)

Jean d'Arras then goes on to give several instances of men who had married fairies, always under certain conditions, and specially mentions one whom "Geruase" *well knew*, viz., Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the province of Asy, who found a fairy in a meadow, and married her on the understanding that he was never to behold her stripped; but happening one day to see her in this condition, she immediately "putte her heed into a watre, & was tourned into a serpent." (*fol.* 3.) With regard to Melusine's re-appearance before calamities, and to her tending her youngest son, Thierry, as described at p. 140, the reader may compare the following. "In German tradition the name of Berchta is given to the so-called *White Lady*, who appears in many houses when a member of the family is about to die, and, as we have seen, is thought to be the ancestress of the race. She is sometimes seen at night tending and nursing the children, in which character she resembles the Keltic fairy. In other and more widespread traditions, the White Lady is an enchanted or spell-bound damsel, who usually every seventh year appears near some mountain or castle, points out treasures, and awaits her release.[1] Sometimes she is seen combing her long locks or drying flax-knots. Some pretend that, like Huldra, she is disfigured by a *tail*."[2] The story entitled "How Count Baldwin of Flanders married a devil"[3] has several points of resemblance to that of Melusine; but Melusine is always represented as most loving and beneficent.

IV. THE LANGUAGE OF THE POEM.

Judging by the occasional occurrence of plural verb-endings in *—en*, the dialect would appear to be Midland; but the lateness of the MS. renders such speculation doubtful. I may remark, however, that I have observed that many of the words used occur in the Promptorium Parvulorum, with the same peculiarities of spelling. The chief points to be noted are these.

We find plural verb-endings of the indicative present in *—en;*

[1] This clearly applies to the legends of Melior and Palestine.
[2] B. Thorpe: Northern Mythology, vol. i., p. 279. [3] Ditto, vol. iii., p. 283.

as, *willen, shinen;* and also of the past tense, as *weren.* The past tense of weak verbs ends in *—ed*, and the past participles end in *—ed* or *—yd.* The past participles of strong verbs end in *—en, —yn*, and even *—ing* or *—yng;* as *founden, forsaiden* (1290), *wroughten, throwen, coruen, yeuyn* (1860), *taking* (4921), *takyng* (1754), *yeung* (1799). Even the infinitive mood sometimes ends in *—ing* or *—yng*, as *enlesing* (5625), *yeuyng* (1528). Present participles end in *—ing, —yng, —and, —ant.* Examples of the latter forms are *trenchand* (3045), *distrussand* (4082), *Ioynant* (4513). But the most characteristic marks of the poem are these; (1) the continual omission of inflexions, so that we meet with *reste* = rested, *yilde* = yielded, *gif* = given, whilst *diffend* (1468) is to be compared with *deffendyd* (2105); so too *goo* = gone, *be* = been, *mysdo* = misdone; (2) an extraordinary partiality on the part of the writer for the present participle, which he continually compels to serve both for the present and past tenses of the indicative; see *musing* = mused (363); and (3) a continual omission of the personal pronouns —see note to Prol., l. 4—and even of the verb *to be*, which gives many sentences an awkward look, and obscures the meaning. As a genitive case-ending, *—is* twice occurs written apart from the word, as *sone is* = son's (28), and *Tristram is* = Tristram's (5750). By comparing *Tristram-is* with *Tristram his* (6008), we have a good example of the unhappy substitution of *his* for the genitive case-ending; a change to which proper names were very liable. It is further remarkable that this case-ending is constantly neglected altogether, as *castell strength, lady lore, medee auise, fadir deth*, for castle's strength, lady's lore, Medea's advice, father's death. The following past tenses are noticeable: *fly* (flew), *blent, glint, rought* (recked), *sly* (slew), *clue* (clove), *grint* (ground), *lepe, condute* (conducted). Some of the past participles have prefixes; as, *I-graunted, I-thought, A-conqueste* (2492), *A-stoned*, generally spelt *stoned.* Also *to-stoniste, to-chapped, to-rent* occur, from the verbs *to-stonish, to-chap, to-rend.* Owing to the frequent occurrence of *y auoir* in the French, the translator constantly uses *had* or *was had* in place of *was*, and *had* or *were had* for *were.* Similarly, the occurrence of the French *elle* induces him to use *she* in place of *it* more than once. The accusa-

tive case *me* is curiously used, as *me moste goo* = I must go, *speke me shall* = I shall speak. *Me* is also found, as commonly elsewhere, in the sense of the Fr. *on*. The plural *bretherin* occurs twice.

Of adjectives, we find many double comparatives, as, *more leuer*, *more fairer;* and superlatives, as *moste hieste*, *moste gretteste*. The forms *bryghty*, *moisty*, occurring for *bright*, *moist*, are very significant as pointing to the full pronunciation of the final —*e* in old authors, being no doubt corruptions of *brightè*, *moistè*. So too *pitty* is written instead of *pitte* = pit. The forms *breueloker* = brieflier, and *goodlokest* = goodliest, are worth remark, as instances of forms common in older MSS. The adverbs *fro-hens*, *fro-thens*, *wher-hens*, *ther-hens*, *ther-thens*, occur often. The adverb *well* is generally spelt *will*, which is at first sometimes perplexing. *Soully* occurs instead of *soon* in l. 4078. *In* and *inly* mean very, extremely.

The conjunctions *yat* (yet) and *os* (as) are strong provincial forms. The preposition *toward* admits of separation, as *to-Brehaigne-ward* (2147, 2151). Double negatives are common. The forms *not-for-þat* (nevertheless) and *neuer-for-neuer* (never at any time) are curious.

A few words as to spelling. *Th* seems to have often had the sound of *t;* as we find *thought*, *thowne*, *thaken*, *thouchyng*, *thyme*, meaning taught, town, taken, touching, time. Compare *whyth*, with, and *whent*, went. Such words as *crying*, *rejoying*, *noying*, are spelt *cryng*, *reioyng*, *noyng*. We find, too, *piteuous*, *shameuous*, *beauteuous*, *hidnous*, for piteous, &c. World is spelt both *worle* and *wordle*, and for worldly we find *worly* and *wordly*. But one of the most curious freaks is that two letters are often transposed; continually is *for* written when *fro* is meant; and *traying*, *presone*, *beded*, *presight*, *aduersite*, *berres*, *ther*, *secerly*, *perdestinat*, *portared*, *sogren*, all noticed in the foot-notes, are simply errors for *tarying*, *persone*, *bedde*, *perfight*, *aduertise*, *breres*, *thre*, *secrely*, *predestinat*, *portraed*, *sogern*, respectively. It is curious that *r* is the letter shifted, in nine instances out of eleven. We are thus left somewhat uncertain as to whether the spellings *refershing*, *crussing* are *intentional*, or whether they should be altered to *refreshing*, *curssing*. Cf. the O.E. *kerse*, *bridd*, for *cress*, *bird*.

It only remains for me to explain why my name appears alone on the title-page, instead of jointly with that of the Rev. J. Rawson Lumby, as at first advertised. Mr Lumby had done his full share of the transcription, viz. the latter half of the poem, from l. 3151 to the end, and had begun to add side-notes, when he was compelled by stress of work to relinquish the task. He has nevertheless been ever ready with suggestions and advice, and to him therefore are my thanks especially due; as also to Mr Bradshaw (as before mentioned), and to the authorities of Trinity College, who have allowed me the unrestrained use of their manuscript.

CORRECTIONS, ETC.

P. 9, l. 28. For "fone is" read "fone-is," to show that *is* is the genitive case-ending; see preface, p. xv.

P. 19, l. 347. For "faluȝ" read "faluz."

P. 22, l. 443. The reading "ne" is certainly right. See the note.

P. 26, l. 554. I am not sure that I am right in displacing the MS. reading "os," and substituting "as"; for though "as" is the usual form, still "os" occurs no less than four times, viz. in ll. 554, 2076, 3372, and 6424. *Os* = as, occurs in Piers Plowman; Harl. MS. 875; Passus III; and in other MSS.

P. 45, l. 1095. Insert a hyphen in "ther-thens."

P. 64, l. 1723. The MS. has "ftafte." But I propose to read "ftafte." See Glossary.

P. 82, l. 2269. For "Anly" read "And."

P. 85, l. 2339. The MS. reading "will" should be retained.

P. 100, l. 2792. The MS. has "fhifte;" but I propose "fhifte." See Glossary.

P. 139, l. 3964. Add a comma at the end of the line.

P. 150, *foot-note*. For "3492" read "3942."

P. 181, *foot-note*. For "by mistake" read "intentionally." I have since noticed that wherever the word "pope" occurs, it has a line (a very thin one) drawn through it.

P. 188, l. 5456. For "yift" read "yift."

P. 206, l. 5992. For "displaide" read "difplaide."

P. 215, l. 6297. For "parfight" read "parfight."

NOTES. Line 975. St. Jougon is probably St. Jouin, in the arrondissement of Parthenay, celebrated for good white wine. *Penny Cycl.*

Line 980. Probably *ris* means Ruys, near Rennes.

Line 5414. The eve of St. John the Baptist was an appropriate time for the adventure. In Thorpe's Northern Mythology (vol. iii., p. 140), we read that "treasures burn especially on St. John's night, and those *who know how* can [then] raise them."

Line 6210. This feast is not called St. Louis' day; for that is Aug. 25, the day of his *death*.

The Romans of Partenay,

or of Lusignen.

[*Fol.* 1 *is wanting.*]

* * * * * * *

FOr full fayne I wold do that myght you pleaſe,
yff connyng I had in it to procede;
To me wold it be grete pleſaunce and eaſe,
yff aught here might fourge to youre wyl in dede;
But barayne is my foule,[1] fauting connynghede,
Natheles in it wil I make progreſſe,
Euermore truſtyng to youre gentilneſſe.

[Fol. 2.] I would gladly, had I the cunning, forge something here to please you; but my soul is barren, and lacks skill.

I not aqueynted of birth naturall
With fre[*n*]ſhe his verray trew parfightneſſe,
Nor enpreyntyd is in mynde cordiall;
O word For other myght take by lacheſſe,
Or p*er*auenture by vnconnyngneſſe;
For frenſhe rimed or metred alway
Ful oft is ſtraunge in engliſhe to diſplay.

I am not acquainted by birth with the perfection of French, and may mistake one word for another; for rhymed French is difficult to be displayed in English.

As nighe as metre will conclude ſentence,
Folew I wil here my preſident,
Ryght as the frenſhe wil yiff me cuidence,
Cereatly after my*n* entent;
Al-be-hit I am vnſufficient,
Ne can noght peynt my boke as other be,
Vnder youre ſupporte yut aunter wyl me.

As nigh as the metre will permit, I will follow my text, in due order; albeit I cannot paint my book as most books are painted.

[1] MS. "foule."

In ancient times, men invoked deities; thus Valerius Maximus invoked Tiberius,

In auncion tyme of antiquite
Men called goddis to theire helpe and ayd,
With deuoute prayers to theire deite,
Their werkys to fourge eche houred brayd,[1]
Their celles of memoir to refrefhe prayd;
As valerius maximus gan do,
Tiberius Cefar called helpe vnto,

[Fol. 2 b.] and explained in the proem of his notable book, how the gods were created.

In the proheim off hys notabile boke,
Wher all thes goddis apertly may fee,
(ho-fo luft out it to behold or loke),
hou thay were creat eche in their degre;
Som luft their faders honoured fhold be,
Som for their ftrenght or for thing in holde,
Som for wifdome or fomwhat vnfold.

Midas, the rich king of Phrygia, besought Bacchus that all he touched might become gold; which the god granted, even with respect to his meat and drink.

Off roial frige Midas the riche king
Bachus god of wyne ther befoght he,
That al gold myght be what he were touching,
For he was of hys confraternite;
hys defyre graunted that gold fine fhold be,
Ne had thys god relefed hym at large
Off hys mete and drinke, per fhold he had difcharge.

Some gods owed their origin to poets' fancy; others were malign spirits, giving oracular responses.

To declare how they were deyfied,
large tyme, longe fpace wold it ocupie;
Poetes whilom fom fantefied;
Som maligne goftes, ful of tyrannye,
yeuyng anfweres to peple fondrye;
For to tell or fay their generacion
yn vayn, ryght noght their fundacion.

To call to my aid gods such as these, who are of no

To callen in ayde tho of no valoure,
Which want myght and ftrenght, vertu none hauyng,

[1] MS. "houredbrayd."

That miſcreantes whilom gan honoure,
As for their goddis thaim deyſiyng,
As power had, where non wer hauyng,
Poetes faynyd in their poetrie,
Theim-ſelfen the more for to magnifie ;

value, and were only imagined by poets,

Suche fayned goddys noght is to cal on,
Thing Agayne our feith[1] And but fantifie ;
No help ne focour to cal thaim vppon ;
I lay theim Apart And fully denye,
Requiring that lord whych is Almightye
That of hys highneſſe he be my trew gide,
The weyes of trouth me vn-to prouide ;

[Fol. 3.] would be against our Christian faith. I deny them, and call rather upon Almighty God,

That in thys mater my penne conueid be
As plefaunce may be vn-to the highneſſe
Off our facred lord, ſitting in trinite ;
Now be he myn ayde in thys beſineſſe ;
To hym only I truſt in thys forth progreſſe,
That throgh his mercy he me fend[2] ſuch grace,
For[3] frenſh tyll engliſh that it may purchace.

to guide my pen as may please the Trinity, that I may translate the French into English.

Mi labor wil don After my ſimpleneſſe
hit for to conuey As I can or may,
Befeching hertly of your highneſſe
My defautes for to pardon alway ;
Truſtyng to your grace now euer and ay,
The prohemy and prologe of frenſh here begyn,
After my ſampler paſſing forth ther-in.

I will do my best, asking pardon for defects, and will now begin to translate the prologue prefixed to the French text.

The philiſopher ful wyſe was And ſage
Which declarid in hys firſt pagent,
hys methephiſike off noble corage,
Werto plieth humayn entendement,
Naturally conceyung the entent

The philosopher was full wise, who declared in the first page of his "Metaphysics," that the human intellect naturally endeavours to *learn* and *know* things; for all a man's endeavour

[1] MS. "ſeith." [2] MS. "ſend." [3] Fro (?)

To lerne And know ; thing faid wel and wifly ;
For all humayn entendement fully

[Fol. 3 *b.*] is to know that which he before knew not, especially in matters that concern him closely. Old things, when rehearsed, are good and fair; as when we speak of Arthur,

DEfireth come to know that he knowith noght,
Whether of loue or of reproche it be,
And fpecially if it touche hym aught.
Thinges of long time paffyd in contre,
When reherfid is, pleafith hertes fre ;
Aunc*i*on thinges wich ben good and fayre,
As to fpeke of king arthure debonayr,

and of his noble knights and worthy people; or of Lancelot. Percival, or Gawain.

How he wold preue his vertu and manhede
With noble knightes and peple worthi ;
Many of hym fpekith at thys hour in-dede ;
And fo thai don of lancelet fureli,
Wher ful good loos had ryght ful preyfingly ;
Of perceuale alfo, And of Gawayn,
Which lo ! at no time had hertes in uayn

Whoever inquires of their marvellous adventures by sea and land, will find it an excellent thing to know them.

As for to adquire grete honour and prife ;
Ful wel lernid were in knightly coniectures.
Who wyl know and enquere in what maner wyfe,
By fe and land meruelous auentures
Which came unto fondry creatures,
For to conne it is an excellent thyng,
And caufe of many mannys *pre*ferring.

Science is a most worthy thing: and every one should study history, more especially if he be of high degree.

As rofe is aboue al floures moft fine,
So is fcience moft digne of worthyneffe ;
ho noght ne can, noght worth is to deuine ;
hit wel belongeth to tho of goodneffe
Strongly to enquere hiftories expreffe,
Which that of longe tyme makith memorie ;
Moch more is if he be of degre hye ;

[Fol. 4.] Such a man ought to know his pedi-

HE fhold ferche, fro degre into degre,
vn-to know wherhens he defcendyd is,

Duke, Erle, or Baron, or markois if he be,
So þat long mynde therof fhuld be ywis;
Al thes lordes gret fo fhold do in thys,
Ther-off fcripture make as an hiftorie,
To ende that ay ther-of be memorie.

gree, and cause it to be duly recorded.

For-fo-moche I fay that an high grete lord,
Whilom of peiters, (whom god yf honour),
lord of partenay named of record,
To whom I fhal be redy at ech hour,
Me commaunded, noght gretly, to labour
Of hys proper fentement and feling;
Hys commaundment wern fhal I no-thing.

Thus it was that a great lord of Poitiers and Partenay commanded me to labour after this manner;

FOr euery knawith and full wel May fee
That to lordes here men obbey, lo! fhold;
ho can it noght do, wife ne fage is he;
In hys fwete langage ther he me vnfold
That I ther take the exampleir wold
Off a boke[1] of his which that he had made;
He it ther me toke, to fourge it me bade.

and men should always obey great lords. His bidding was, that I should make a (rhymed) copy of a book of his; which book he gave me,

To know in fertayn ho fourged and wrought
Roial lefigne[n], the noble caftell,
Als ho made the town, vnto mynde it brought;
A meruelous ftrenght is in for to dwel.
Then I anfwerd greing to hym well,
"My lorde," faid, "vnto your wil and plefire;"
Then faid he, "do it at your owne lefire;

so that men might know who made the castle and town of Lusignan. I promised accordingly to do so.

For all the labour and iornay is your;
Thys caftell was made with on of faire,
(As ouer all reherfed is eche hour),
Of the which I am drawen lynyally,
I and all the lyne difcendyd fully
Of partenay, it is ryght no doute at all;
The fair melufigne men gan hire to call,

[Fol. 4. b.] He then told me that this castle was built by a fairy, from whom he was himself lineally descended, and whose name was Melusine;

[1] MS. "aboke."

whose arms, indeed, he still bore; and he bade me rewrite the whole history of it in rhyme, because then people would the sooner recite or hear it.

This fairie womman þat you namyd haue,
Of whom the armys here now bere wee,
The which ofte were borne; and daly it craue,
And to end of it there-of memoir be,
ye ſhall put in ryme thys hiſtorie fre:
I will that it be rimed hole entire,
The fonner peple wyll it fay or hire."

I replied, I would gladly undertake it, but desired to receive no praise, for that it had been put into rhyme once before already.

Then fayd, "my lord, I grant your entent;
Alwais your will and plefire wil doo,
My power alfo; but lofe wil none hent,
For in other tyme in frenſh put alfo,
And ryned, As men me haue told vnto;
Wherefor vnto me ſhold it be gret ſhame,
Of thys dede me auaunt and of it haue name,

Still I would try and put it into another shape, which would please him better;

Syn Another time hath fourged be and made.
But to my power what I can wil doo;
fo god be plefyd, my witte ſhal put to fade
In-to other fourme, if leyſer haue, lo!
Which letter[1] ſhal you come plefaunce vnto,
Syn that the other ye haunt ne vse noght;
And, that you plefith, put to will I my thought

[Fol. 5.] and would consult two books that had been found in the tower of Mabregon, originally written in Latin, but which had been afterwards translated into French;

After tho bokes which of it men fynde,
Wher this hiſtorie preuyd manion;
And to ende that we may bring vn-to mynde,
Within the toure of noble mabregon
To faire bokis were fonden ther-on
In latin, And all preuyd at deuiſe,
That men made tranſlat in moſt frenſheſt wyſe.

The contents of which books had been subsequently confirmed by Anthony, earl of Salz and Barry, in another book,

And fyn, after monthes fife or fixe, lo!
This historie confermyd anthonye,
The erle of falz and of Barry alfo,
In a boke whych had of this caſtel hie,

[1] *Sic* in MS. Read "better." The French has *mieulx*.

Whiche that was fo faire, ful ftrong and myghtie ;
But al-wais fpake in his wordes al
Vn-to thes bokes Aboue-faid egall :

Off bokes thre that boke drawen oute,
(Ryght fo fayn[1] men reherfyng the chaunce),
And that wherby it was know no doute,
Which other tymes haue fayne the fubftaunce ;
here-to fhal I put all my hole pufaunce,
In ordinat rule fhal it fett furelye,
As plefire may be vnto our lord hye."

which, they say, was compiled from three others: and I do not doubt it, as I have seen the substance of it.

Then toke I my leue As of my good lord,
(Vn-to whom god yeff ioy, grace, and honour).
As to þe caftell ftrength here to recorde
Of þe faid lefignen, whiche was fair þat hour,
here fhall ye here thys hiftorie labour ;
So þat it may plefe the kyng of glorie,
Which to me yeff Felyng ther-of fullie,

Therenpon, I took my leave, and will now endeavour to write the history of the castle of Lusignan, with God's assistance,

Withowt whom a man[2] here may do no thyng,
Be it in franfh tonge other in ebrew ;
All fcience cometh of that noble kyng,
Wich is the clere wele or the pilour trew,
The maker of all whom liff doth enfew ;
Of hym cometh goodneffe, wite, and fence ;
Non, but by our lord, herite in fcience.

[Fol. 5 *b.*] without whom one can write nothing, whether in French or in Hebrew. Of Him cometh goodness, wit, and sense.

With hole hert entire here I hym require
To thys nede me ayde ; and hys moder fwet
Mi mater conduce to the ende entire,
Thys werke vnto me here fhewyd and gett,
To the hie plefaunce of my good lord grete,
To whom god yeff ioy, worfhip, and honour ;
Right thus the prologe Endeth at this hour.

I pray Him, with my whole heart, to aid me; and that his sweet mother will conduct my work to the end.
Thus endeth the prologue

[*End of the prologue.*]

[1] fayn (?) [2] MS. "aman."

[THE ROMANS OF PARTENAY.]

In ancient times, after the time of Octavianus, lived in Poitiers a certain earl named Amery, well-skilled in astrology and other sciences,

Hit is fo in trouth in time auncion,
After the time that OctauiAn was,
In peyters a erle had of grete renoun,
Off whom gret talkyng men held hie and bas ;[1]
louid of all, cherifhed in eche place,
Callid Amerys ; wel cowde aftronemie,
And A man ful ripe in other clerigie

as well as in canon and civil law. Never was there a better astrologer, or one more learned in the science,

Off the right Canoun and Ciuile alfo ;
Wel nye al by hert thes fcience coude he,
Als wordly witte I-now had ther-to ;
yut hys dedes neuertheleffe to fe,
Neuer better aftronomian might be,
Founde was neuer man being *christ*ian ;
He cowde moche more than any other man,

[Fol. 6.] excepting only Him, who gave stars their names. He was also great and rich, and very fond of hunting.

But only he which fterres gan to name,
Then all other, with ther names all.
A gret man this was And of noble fame,
And wel at eafe of goodes mondiall ;
Difport of houndes loued moche with-all,
Full ofte chaced he hertes, bores grete ;
Thys erle of peyters huge nobles gan gete.

He had a fair son and a fair daughter, whose names were Bertram and Blanche.

A Fair fone had by hys gentill wiffe,
Full moche loued hir, chirfly can hir hold,
And A doughter fair, ful fwete As fare liff,
Streight nofe, fair mouth, wel fetured, me told,
Gret beute fhe had wonderly vnfolde ;

[1] MS. "has," which is wrong.

Which men callyd Blanche, ſhe was inly fair;
And the ſone is name Bertram debonaire.

Thys Erle thes children ful moche loued tho;
yut was noght founded, neither like to be,
Rochel ne machon, neither of them to;
Thorugh al peyters foyſon of wode plente,
A ful gret foreſt with many A ſtreight tre,
And in the wild foreſt As of colombere,
Which is noght full ferre fro peiters there.

Neither Rochelle nor Macon were yet founded; and there was, throughout Poitiers, abundance of trees, and especially a large forest called that of Coulombiers.

FOr tho ther was A Erle in the foreſt,
Which of children had A huge noumbre gret;
In riches herite was not in þe beſt,
But of good lyuyng was in-dede and fet,
Sagely And wiſely good gouernaunce get;
After that had, warly gan diſpende;
And for hys good gouernaunce, at ende,

Now there was an earl in the forest, who had a huge great number of children, not very rich, but who lived sagely, and spent warily,

Loued and cheriſhed was of peple all.
Cofyn he was to Erle amerye fre,
Which thes nouels hurd at that entreual,
That his cofyn had of children plente;
Then came hym *in* wil and *in* volente
Off ſuch greuous charge hym to diſcharge tho;
Without traying,[1] therfor, gan he do,

[Fol. 6 *b*.] and was beloved by all. He was cousin to Amery; who, hearing of his great number of children, thought to assist him.

At peiters made A roial gret feſte,
A more worſhipful neuer ſayn with eye;
After tho he ſend the Erle of foreſt,
Of poiters The erle commaunded ſo fullie,
And other Barons lyke-wyſe verilye,
Which of hys ſeignorie landes gan hold
Of this noble erle A-forne ſpoke and told.

He made therefore a great feast at Poitiers, and invited the earl of the forest and his feudal barons.

Tho wer after ſende, to hym came gladlye;
All other cam, non lakke, vnto that iournay

They came gladly upon the day appointed; and the

[1] tarying (?) See note.

earl of the forest brought with him three of his sons.

That thys fayd Erle commaunded hertlye.
The Erle of Forest brought hym, thay fay,
Thre of his fones vnto court that day,
For to do to hys cofyn gret plefaunce;
And he cam vnto full fair ordinaunce.

The earl of Poitiers was glad to see them, and regarded the three sons closely, especially the youngest, and said,

The Erle of poiters had gret ioy to fight
Of hys good cofyn, And hym fefted fo,
And hym cherifhed in al that he myght;
Hys children feruently gan he behold tho,
To on of them thre hys behold gan go,
The left gan hym plefe in hert brennynglie,
To hys cofyn fayd thes wordes fwetly.

[Fol. 7.]
"My fair sweet cousin, I beg you to give me one of these children; he shall be well taught,

"Underftandeth me, my fair fwete cofin,
I haue vnderftande And by neighbours knowe
That largely ye haue children good and fin,
Full good is that ye ther-of difcharge yowe;
here I you require, yeff me on to owe;
he fhall be wel taught in curtefie and fpeche,
For fuche doctrine fchal hym lere and teche;

and I will make him a rich man." "My lord," said the earl, "do your pleasure as regards these three; I will not refuse you.

And for euermore ryche man fhal hym make."
"My lord," fayd thys Erle of the foreft hie,
"Of thes thre on your plefire do and take,
And you ther-of I thanke whyth hert ful humly,
Refon is ne right that you werne fhold y;
Se ye here now thre in your hie prefence,
Do as liketh your noble reuerence.

Take whichever of them you like best." "Then give me the youngest," quoth the earl of Poitiers;

Take here vnto you which you beft do plefe,
No man fhall ther-of you werne ne withfay;"—
"Then yeff me the left to my hertes efe,
For I haue to hym my loue yeff thys day,"

The Erle of poiters this to hym gan fay.
"Sir, I wyll gladly do your will and heft,"
So hym Anfwerd the Erle of foreft,[1]

92 "Syn he you plefith, ye fhall hym haue trulie; "and declare to me his name."
My lord, fe hym here, you here take fone "My lord, his name is Raymond."
myn;"—
"My fair cofyn, I thanke you ful hertlye;
Declare me hys name (.) gentil good cofyn."
96 "My lord, men hym cal Raymound good & fyn,
The fair, the fwet, the gentill, the curtoys,
Off all thre beft thaught, ftill, not moche of uoys."

When thys roiall Feift was endyd and done, [Fol. 7 *b*.]
100 Ryght fo As it fell vppon the thyrd day, The third day after the feast, the earl of the forest departed.
The Erle of forefte toke hys leue to gone;
Tho thes brethen thre to-geders kyffyd thay, The three brethren mutually commended each other to God, and Raymond remained behind.
Entercommaundyng to god other ay,
104 At ther departfon had thay gret dolour;
Thys Raymound Abode *with* hys lord that houre.

Ful wele he hym feruyd vnto his powere, Raymond served earl Amery faithfully, and was much beloved in return.
Off trouth he it knew ful wel verilye,
108 Thys full noble erle, fir Amerie, there,
Which moche hym louyd And cherifhed[2] hertly,
As for that fo wel hym feruyd daily,
And furely wold do that to hym wold fay,
112 Neuer feruitour louid fo no day;

And[3] Alfo he was his faythfull cofyn. But after this did Raymond slay him; cast stone-dead to the earth, to death must Amery incline, through the false gluttonous cruelty of fortune.
Raymound after thys, gayn wyl, hym gan fly;
Standed caft to ground, to deth moft incline
116 By fortune fals glotenous cruelte,
Which no-thyng dredith ne doughteth to be,

[1] MS. "foreft." [2] MS. "fherifhed." See l. 121.
[3] MS. "AAnd."

But cauſith ofte meruelles for to come,
So As ye may hire fondry tymes lome.

The earl Amery went often to hunt in the aforesaid forest, during five or six years;

At noble poiters the erle Amerie,
Which ſo was louyd and cherifhed tho,
Als of hys men holden ful cherifhlye
Both of ryche And pour *in* like wyfe alſo,
To wodes he went ful ofte to hunt, lo!
Into the foreſte of fayd columb[e]re;
So fyffe or fexe ȝere regned *in* powere.

[Fol. 8] and he went to hunt one day with a large number of knights, with Raymond on a high courser beside him, bearing his sword.

HIt cam on A day, for to hunt he went,
With hym gret fuſion of knyghtes many,
Of tho which he moſte louyd ther hent,
Whith hym to diſport brought he forth furelye.
Beſidis hym rode Raymounde gentillye,
vppon A courſere he, beryng ful wel
(As thys hyſtorie doth declare and tell)

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by them and by the earl,

The fwerd of thys noble Erle and man.
Tho began the chace ſtrong and myghtly;
The beſt for noyſe A-forn the hundys ran,
The houndes fewing after ful ſtrongly;
The Erle thaim fewed and ſpored lyghtly,
Of whom anon ſhal you declare and ſay
Where hym cam tho gret miſchef and afray;

who never returned again home. Raymond followed him as closely as he could; and, as the moon rose, the boar was still slaying the dogs.

FOr neuer after he ne cam againe,
Raymounde hym fewed As moche As he myght,
As for to leue hym ne wold he certayn;
Of thaim to it fil As ye ſall know ryght.
In the foreſt fought thys fwyne euery wyght,
Which in columbere bred and fed trulye;
The mone ther roſe; the fwyne ther houndes flye,

The earl's people knew not where he was, having

Ther ded to ground thaim caſt myghtilye.
his peple wyſt noght where that he became,

Novmbred were thay ther mo then twentye
Which full feruently rode after thys game ;
"Come heder," faid, "Raymound, lord, in goddys name !
Our houndes, our peple lost now haue we,
In what part thay ben vnknow is to me ;

ridden away after the boar. "Come hither, Raymond!" said the earl,

And now is it noght to retorne, parde ?
Thought we cerche Aboute we fhal not thaim find.
What fay ye now ? what do now fhal we ?"—
Raymounde fayd, "go forth, tary we not behynd,
Vnto fom receit nye the wodes lynde,
Wher we mow thys tym receyued to be."
The Erle anfwered, "ful wel now fay ye ;

[Fol. 8 b.]
"and tell me what you advise." "Let us find some retreat," said Raymond, "where we may tarry awhile."

Ryght fo fhal it be As to me faid,
Sithen the mone is rifen vp an hie,
The euening is fair and clere difplaid,
The fterres fhinen fair I-now truly
That all the wordle enlumyneth goodlie."
Then vnto ther way went thay ful nere,
For the mone gan fhine inly fair and clere.

"So shall it be," said the earl, "for the moon and stars shine clearly."

Thorught the wodes went, athirt trauerfing,
Where thay found places diuers and fondrye,
Then a full fair way to thaym apperyng
Wheron a ftronge pas rode thay haftily.
The Erle faid, "Raymound, thys path wyl vs bryng nye,
As me femeth, to peyters the ryght way ;
What fey ye ? is it noght fo, now me fay ?"

Traversing athwart the wood, they found at last an easy path, which the earl thought would lead them to Poitiers.

RAymounde faid, "I trow it fo be trulye ;
Now ride we then, in goddis name, apace,

Raymond thought the same, and advised that they should ride on fast, and

inquire their way of some one whom they might meet.

We fhall come ful late thought we ful faft hye,
That into the town to entre haue no fpace;
yut perauenture we may fynd fom grace
To mete your peple whiche that knowith the way:"—
"Go we," fayd the Erle, "I graunt, al that we may."

[Fol. 9.] The earl, as he rode, began to behold the stars, being (as was told) a skilful astrologer.

Then thay toke ther way wonder fpedfullye.
Thys noble Erle be-gan to behold
Thes fair fterres fhinyng ful bryghtly,
So that the fkye enlumyned manyfold;
Of aftronemye wyfe was As is told,
So moche ther-of knew he the maiftrie.
As he a fterre beheld in the fkye an hie,

Thereupon he perceived, by a certain star, that a strange adventure was at hand, and wrung his hands, and cried out,

Ther he faw a meruelous auenture
Which ful fharpe and hard after to hym was.
The profite of other touched he ther fure,
But of hys owne ille perceyued no cas.
Ther wonderful fyghtes[1] gan to purchas,
hys handys gan wryng and to draw faft,
"O lord god!" faid, "that angelles formed haft,

"O Lord God! why doth fortune make a man prosper by ill-doing? For I perceive that prosperity will thus happen.

That thes merueles fo ftrange bene fothlefe!
Fortune is ful ftrong any man to know;
O varray god! for why made fhe encreffe
Only a man,[2] for doing ille, to grow?
She is ful glad of duyng ille, I trow,
Now is it ryght thus, I fe wel now expreffe
That, for ille doing, comyth gret goodneffe!

Raymond! behold these stars, and know that if, in this hour, a man

In thes fterres fe, Raymounde, vnderftand!
For I here perceyue ful gret auenture."
he hym anfwerd, "what is that fayand?"

[1] fyghes (?) [2] MS. "aman."

Thys Erle hym faid, "the fhal declare fure,
Without any doubte know thys of trouth pure,
And no-thyng no doubte, but be in certayn,
If a man[1] gan fle hys lord fouerayn,

were to slay his sovereign lord.

As in thys hour, he fhuld gretter lorde be ;
More pufaunt, ful myghtly, and ryght gret
Then any of hys kynred in contre ;[2]
In al places fhal fructefie and get,
loue of all fhal haue wher he entermet,
More gretter loue haue then his neyboures all ;
know thys, fayr cofin, this is trouth, & fhall !"

[Fol. 9 *b*.] he would become himself a greater lord, and more puissant than any in the country, and be more beloved than his neighbours."

RAymounde noght o word yaf hym to anfwere,
Al penfif a foote difcended adon ;
An hepe of wode a[t] that tyme founde there,
That herdes had lefte, gret and fmal, theron ;
A lytyll fire found ther, the wode brend anon.
Certes ouer warme at that tyme was noght ;
The Erle ther lyght doune, fomwhat hy*m* chaufe thought.

Raymond answered not, but alighted, and found a little fire kindled in a heap of wood. The earl also alighted to warm himself.

Ther thai hurd a noyfe, for to fpeke fhortlye ;
The wod breke and rent ful heuily tho ;
Then Raymound his fwerd gan to gripe ferfly,
And the Erle his in that other party to.
leuing the fyre which ful clere brend, lo !
Then aforn them faw ny to them comyng
An huge bore of meruelous wreth beyng,

Then heard they a noise. The wood brake, and they beheld a huge boar, in marvellous wrath,

With tufkes tho whettyng ful ftrongly,
And with malice yre comyng, faft fmytyng ;
"My lord, faue your lyf and ward yow quiklye,
here vppon a tre wyghtly be clemmyng ;"—
With hie hautyng voice the erle anfweryng,

and whetting his tusks. Raymond begs his lord to climb wightly into a tree, who boldly refuses

[1] MS. "aman." [2] MS. "incontre."

"I neuer was repreued at no ſtound,
Ne here ſhal not be neuer ſhuch wife founde.

[Fol. 10.] to flee from a pig of a foul sow. The earl advances to pierce the boar, when his sword glances; for, as the boar came fast towards him,

WEre it plefaunce to god I ſhold hens fle
As beforn A pigge of A fowle fowe, lo?"
Towardes the fwine hys fwerd faft ſhoke he;
Raymound vnderſtode his worde hym noyed tho.
Thys fayd Erle tho went to launce hym vnto,
And when it cam ſo, the fwerd went adōn;
Thys fwyne to the Erle forth fafte ran anon;

his sword would not pierce the boar's hide; so that, missing his stroke, he falls from his horse upon the boar's tusks. Raymond runs up to aid him,

By miſchef ther thys noble Erle gan die;
The Erle hym ne myght no lenger ther hym hold.
By myſchef thys fwyne fmot hym feruentlye;
But hys fwerd in hym entre ther ne wold,
There he mofte of horſe fal to hys tuſkes bold.
Raymound fast gan ren thys fayd fwyne agayne,
Trowyng hym to fmite thorugh the body playne;

but his sword also turns aside. A second stroke, however, is successful, and he cleaves open the boar with his steel sword.

But hys fwerde glente, non hurt had he tho,
For vppon the bakke was the ſtroke to ſe;
Againe Raymounde fmote, thorught the bely gan go,
With the ſtilen fwerde there tho made entre;
The blade fourged good, rafour kene was he,
All the bowelles cutte, all fil out anon;
Hys good fwerd withdrew, the bore ther fil dōn,

He finds his lord dead, and his soul commended to God. For he was as valiant a man as any on this side of Rome.

No mortail deth to grounde fallen tho.
Thens vnto hys lord went he forth anon,
Neuer gan to reſt til hym cam vnto,
Al dede ther hym founde And the foul gon;
Commaunded was ſhe to goddis hie renon,
For A worthy man and vaillant he was
As Any A-thif-ſide[1] Rome to purchas.

[1] MS. "A thiffide."

RAymounde hym tuke fast ther to wepyng,
hym-felfen gan bete and hym fore torment—
"ha! alas! thou fals fortune," ther fayng,
"To me haft thou be felonefly bent!
Goode to tho wykyd thou graunteft and lent;
he is A more foole then Any mute beft
That truftith on the, or in thy beheft!

[Fol. 10 b.] Raymond exclaims against Fortune, saying that a man who trusts her is a greater fool than any mute beast;

Thou art no gudfader ne Godmodere!
To on art thou fwet, Another bitter to;
Non may on the truft, ne in thy fals gere;
Off A fmal man thou makeft a kyng, lo!
And of tho ful rych right pour men alfo.
In the no wyl ftreine to helpe mofte or left;
Thou on aydeft, Another deftroeft!

that she is no godfather nor godmother; that she makes a king of a small man;

Alas for forow! thys in me to fynde!
Thou here me haft deftroed entierlie,
And perdurabelly dampned to mynde,
But ihesu crift, the cheritable god hye,
The trew, the fwete, the piteful, of mercy
Of my wery foule luft to haue pyte!"
And with that Raymound zownyng dōn gan fle,

that she has perdurably condemned him, unless Christ will have pity on him. Hereupon he swoons,

And wel nye an hour ryght fo gan hym hold
Without fpech or loke; after cam agayne,
Ther begynnyng his forowes manyfold.
When he rewardyd hys lord fouerayne,
Whiche ther dede-cold lay, fore hym gan complayne,
Rewfully fayng with fcrychyng vois hie,
"Come, deth! tarye noght, anon let me dye!

and does not come to himself again for an hour. Again regarding his lord, he invokes death,

Comyng me to take, for time now it is;
For lofte haue I here both foule and bodye;
My fouerayne lorde that dede here lith thys,

[Fol. 11.] for that his lord is slain by his misdeed. He would commit

suicide, but that it is against providence.

By my grete myſdede here hym ſlayn haue I.
Deth, come to me! feaſon is trulye;
Come forth here anon, or I ſhal me ſle;
But god ſhold me ſle, I ſhold noght ſo me.

God would not that any should despair; yet it had been better for him to have been born dead.

God wold noght, which is our chef fader hye,
That any criſtyn in diſpeir be ſhold;
But the hour courſed that born was worly,
Or that wreched lyf ſo long leuyng hold.
Better had me be dede-born here vnfold,
For then had I noght dampned ne loſt be.
Alas! my lord couſyn, gentile and fre,

Leaping again into his saddle, he leaves the body, and rides away from the spot,

Leſſe worth am I then any faryſyne,
Whiche is in beleue of fory mahound!"
Ther leping vp into hys ſadel fine,
More lenger ne reſt he ther that ſtound,
The body of hys lord reſt[1] *in* that ground,
A fory man was thorught the wode gan ride,
With wofull malice deſtruſſed that tyde;

leaving the bridle-reins loose. Thus rode he along lamentably, till he approached suddenly

The brydell-rayne lefte, at large let it go;
hym-ſelfe[2] tormented and curſid ful fore,
Vnnethes for-bare hym-ſelfe to ſle tho,
Ful ofte hys colour changing euermore,
he had non end of his dolorous (.) ſtore.
In thys eſtate rode lamentabillye,
Tyll he Approched, certes, ſodenlye

[Fol. 11 *b*.] the fountain of Thirsty Gladness, said to be of fairy origin. The horse chooses his path at will,

The fontayn and well of thurſty gladneſſe,
(As ſaid is, it came[3] of the fayrie);
Thys wofull man apas ſtreight ther-to gan dreſſe,
hys horſe chef a path conueying wightly,
Ouer all thys hors ſo went wylfully,
here and there ouer all where at hys luſt wold,
For that he had lefte the rayne for to hold.

[1] left (?) [2] MS. "ſeffe." [3] MS. "canne."

At thys faid fontayn hys courfer hym brought,
So forth paffing by ther tho apertlye ;
Neuer ne refte, but was in other thought ;
hys courfere hyme bare forth faft and wyghtly ;
For difcomforted was he moche truly,
That hys mynde was gone fro hym-felf full ferre,
So that he ne faw Abowt, ferre ne nerre.

and thus brings him to the fountain. The rider is so distressed that he cannot look about him.

Uppon thys fontayn ther had verilie,
Which was right holfome, ful clere as creftal,
Thre fair laydes of gret feignorie.
In hys forth-paffyng faw non of thaim all,
Such dolorous thoughtes to hym gan call.
Then fpak the mofte gentilleft of thaim thre,
The moft goodlokeft And iolyeft to fe ;

Beside the fountain were three ladies of high degree. He sees none of them; but the most good-looking and "jolliest" exclaims,

SAyng, "neuer faw, dais of my lyfe,
Where it were gayn night or at morne erlie,
Gentil man to paff but had refpectif
Aforn ladies without falu3 hye,
I wyll goo And fpeke *with* hym verilie."
She vn-to him cam, taking by the rayn,
After openly to hym faid certayn—

"I never, all the days of life, saw a gentleman pass ladies without salutation." She then seizes his rein,

"FOr goddis fake, man, fhew the noght foo,
Which be defcended of noble linage,
Sin Aforn vs thre ye apperen, lo !
And without worde fay for to make paffage,
It is noght the dede of gentil corage."
he, whiche dolour hurt tho ful feruentlye,
vpp fodenly lepte, perceyued thys ladye ;

[Fol. 12.] and tells him that to go by without a word is not the deed of a gentle heart. Raymond suddenly perceives her,

Ther he trowed that fantefie it were,
Where he flepte or wakyd wel knew he noght ;
A dede mannys colour that tyme had he there,

and thinks it is all the effect of his imagination, and knows not whether he is awake or asleep.

He returns her no answer.

To hir non anſwere at that ſeaſon brought,
Noght intended here for forow in thought,
But muſing ful faſt and was ryght penſſife
As euer was man which that here bare life.

She asks him why he will not speak, and wishes to know who taught him such behaviour;

Thys fayr layde toke her tho to ſpeke,
Anon ful hiely fayd ſhe hym vnto,
"how, Raymound, is thys, ye luſt no word breke?
ho hath you taught that to a mayden ſo,
Or to A lady when ye ſe thaim, lo!
That no word haue ne luſt to ſay onlye?
Of it cometh repref and vilanye.

for that it is a dishonour to him that he thus forces his heart to be unnatural. Raymond is many times astonied,

IN you all ſwetneſſe And good curteſie
Shold byde and dwel *with* al honour ſure;
here-on ye be diſhonoured gretly
Which comyn be of ſo noble nature,
That your gentil hert put to diſnature."
Raymounde vnderſtode, ther hir gan behold,
Sore aſtoned was times manyfold,

[Fol. 12 *b.*] and, perceiving the human body of this fair lady, his heaviness of heart troubles him yet more. Knowing not whether he is alive or dead, he alights hastily,

When that he ſaw ſhe hym held by rayne—
But when perceyued the humayn bodye
Of thys fair lady hym ſo to reſtrayne,
In whom gret beute was preynted freſhlye,
Moche the more troubled his noyſance heuye,
That he wiſte not where he were quicke or dede;
Fro hors fill down vppon the graſſe in-dede.

and says, "Most gracious image, pardon me, sweet thing! My heart is heavy with misfortune;

After hys[1] ſayd, "moſte gracyous ymage,
Soueran layde of gret beute hye,
With whome to compare non hath Avantage,
Pardon me, ſwet thyng, for goddys mercye;
With forowes I haue the hert ful heuye

[1] thys (?)

By ouermoche meruelous auenture ;
By my faith, lady, I will you enfure

That in fuch aftate wher-on that I was,
I remembred noght what I owght to do ;
So moche forow and care me doth enbras,
Truly more than man can fay you vn-to.
For-foth I noght you perceyued no wyfe, lo !
But, noble lady, you befeche and pray
Me vnto perdon fo it pleafe you may."

I remembered not what I ought to do. I perceived you not; pray, pardon me."

Ther thys lady fpake, "Raymound !" anfwer-
yng,
"I am ful forye of your gret noyfance."
When Raymou*n*de knew fche hym ther namyng,
A litell began to mufe that inftance.
"lady, of my name ye haue conyfance,
Where-of I am Ameruelled gretlye ;
By my feith, I know noght your name redilye.[1]

She addresses him by name: at which he is much astonished;

You named but . . . . . .
Wher that perceyue fo full huge beute,
hyt caufeth me to beleue verilie
That I fchuld by you wel affured be,
And that I fhal yut wel recouer[2] me,
By you to acquire fom good recomfort
Off my huge forow is my dyfcomfort.

[Fol. 13.]
but, reassured by her beauty, he trusts that he will soon recover himself;

For of fo fair A fwete creature
Approcheth non ille, but ay al goodneffe ;
Fro you may noght come but good auenture,
I beleue noght that terrene boody fothleffe
Of lufty beute may haue fuch richeffe,
So moche of fwetneffe, fo moche of connyng
As in your gentil body is beryng."

since only goodness can come from so sweet a creature. He cannot believe that an earthly body can have so much sweetness.

[1] Here follows the catch-word—"you named but." See note.
[2] MS. "y^ecouer," the tail of the *y* being partly erased.

She then recounts to him all he has been doing, explaining that she is well acquainted with all that has happened.

"Raymounde, I perceyue how it goth now;"
She declared hym ther all hys doyng,
Ther hym gan rehers euerydele how,
As Aboue is faid al hym declaring.
Then Raymounde feruently reioyng,
How-be-hyt he moche aftoned tho was
How hys name myght know; ftrange to hym þat eas.

She then declares that all the good fortune which his lord predicted for him will be brought about if he will attend to what she says.

Then thys lady faid of gentil bodye,
"Raymounde, my good loue, vnderftandeth me,
Al that whiche your lord faid youe varilye
By wordes myn fulfillyd fhal be,
Truly and forfoth, yf fo do wil ye
Ryght As I fhal here vnto you rehers,
Thinges to non hurt, fondry and diuers,

[Fol. 13 b.] Yet more assured, he gladly promises to do all her commandments.

Unto the plefire of our lorde an hie,
And of his glorius moder alfo."
When Raymounde vnderftode fhe fpake trulye,
Stedfaftly hym toke the more furer to,
Ther hir faing, "fwete gentill lady tho,
I fchall put my hert And my holy[1] entent
To your plefour do your commaundement.

Yet he wishes to know how she knows his name and circumstances.

But certes, lady, I may no wyfe tarie
That you me[2] demaunde the trouth and verite,
how ye myght my name knowen verilie,
And how thys dede know any wyfe may ye
That by my fortune and mifchef fil to me,
As wherthorugh I haue deferued deth full wel,
Wherfor that I haue defired deth cruell?"

"Raymond," she said, "I counsel you not to be astonished. You

"Raymounde, you councel, Aftoned be noght,"
Afaid thys lady, "for god fhal you ayd;

[1] hole (?) See l. 482. [2] ne (?)

yf ye will, moche more to you ſhall be brought
Of wordly goodes then your lorde you ſaid,
Whiche *in* the foreſt dede-colde light this braid.
I wyll in no wyſe you to diſcomfort,
I ſhall you ſocour, helpe, ayd, and comfort.

shall be yet more successful than your dead lord predicted.

Y Am, after god, your nexſt frende trulye,
Wordly catell I-now ſhall be brought.
But loke ye me truſte And beleue verilie,
And dubte ye no-thing of goddys part am noght,
I noght beleue in hys vertues wrought;
yut I you promiſe that I do beleue
Ryght As holy Catholike feith doth yeue.

I am, after God, your best friend; but you must trust to me entirely. Do not doubtingly think that I am not on God's side;

[Fol. 14.]

Euery Article beleue I and hold
Of the holy feith catholike named,
That god, vs to ſaue, of the virgyn unfold
Was born without wemme in hir attamed;
Dethe endured; third day roſe vnſhamed;
After aſcended vnto heuenys hie,
Ther verray man And varray god trulye;

for I hold every article of the Catholic faith; viz., that God was born of a spotless virgin, endured death, rose the third day, and ascended into heaven,

And is in ryght ſyde of hys fader hie.
Raymound, vnderſtand here now me vnto,
Firmely all beleue without doubte anye.
Now ye here beleue that ſagely ye do,
And ye ſhall riſe vp, to ſuch honour go,
That more ſhal ye be As of hie parage
Then any man, lo! As of your linAge."

and is at the right hand of the Father. Trust me entirely, and you shall attain to great honour."

Then Raymound muſyd and gan aduertiſe
The wordes ther ſaid, and hertly ioyed tho;
A litel his colour cam, vnto deuiſe,
And moche amendyd of forow and care to,
When he anſwerd, "lady, I ſhal do
With all my hole hert, without withſaing,
Al that which ye wyll be me commaunding."

Raymond, much amended of his care and sorrow, promises to do what she commands without gainsaying.

"Swear then to me," she said, "at this time, that you will marry me, and that you will never inquire as to where I go on a Saturday; .

"RAymounde," fhe faid tho, "this is ful wel faid;
Now vnderftandeth me without gayn-fayng,
To god and his fayntes me fwere now thys braid,
That in mariage me wil be taking,[1]
And that neuer dais of your leuing,
For no worde that man wyl vnto you fay,
ye fhall not enquere of me the faturday,

[Fol. 14 b.] and I promise, in return, to go to no ill place, but always to labour that day on your behalf."

NE after me cerche in no wife ye do,
Neither to what part drawith my body,
Ne what I will do, ne to what place go;
Als I fchall you fwere For trouth uerilie,
To non ille place go ne will certaynlie,
But alwais to labour that iournay,
Puttyng my hole hert, ftrength, mynde, and thought (.) ay

Raymond swears, but was, in the sequel, forsworn, to his great misfortune.

To your honour, hawfe, and encrefe alfo;
Neuer fhal ye fe me forfworn no day."
Raymounde wolde fwere and ther hys othe gan do,
But att end forfworn was he, is no nay;
To ful gret myfchef it cam hym alway,
For that hire couenaunt brake and noght gan hold.
"Raymounde," fche fayd, "underftande this told;

She tells him that if he breaks the compact, he will lose her; and that himself and his heirs will lose their lands.

Iff thys poyntement hold noght in thys deuife,
ye fhall me lefe, be therof certane,
Without fight of me any maner wife;
After that, ye and al your hoires playn
Shal begin to fall, and thaim-felfe diftayn
Off landes, honoures, and heritages;
Then doloures fhall be in their corage[s]."

[1] MS. "betaking."

Raymonde fwere agayn fecundarilie,
That neuer no day forfworne wolde he be.
(Alas! thys dolent man faid not foth trulie,
For gret heuineffe After fuffred he,
Hys cherefull lady loft of nicete!)
At thys prefent time of it fpeke no more,
Vnto my purpos tōrn fhall I therfore.

Raymond swears a second time; but alas! this miserable man spake not the truth.

[Fol. 15.]

"RAymounde," fhe faid, "ye moft to court go,
And me this not werne here in no cas,
To peyters boldly go ye now vnto,
Say wel and playnly when ye come aplas,
If any you demaunde, hie other bas,[1]
Of your faid lord ne fay ye no thyng
But that in the wode ye loft hym huntyng;

"Raymond," said she, "you must go to Poitiers, and give out that you lost your lord in the wood while hunting,

And that longe ye gan After hym Abyde,
Cerching, enquering in wodes ramage,
A wilde fwine chafing at that houred (.) tyde.
Many other to court fhall do make paffage,
Whiche equipollent fchall fay of corage,
After fhall your lord truly fhall[2] ther be founde,
And to peyters brought openly that ftounde.

and that you sought for him a long while unsuccessfully. At last he will be found, and brought to Poitiers.

Then gret heuineffe ther fhall fone Awake,
With euery man huge forow fhall arife;
Full dolorous wo this lady will take,
And *with* hir other gentil wemmen of price;
his children lamenting *in* wofull wife.
Thaim aid and councell ryght auyfilye
yn that belongeth to hys obfequye.

when his wife and children will lament in woful wise. You must counsel them concerning his burial,

Loke ye thaim councell hie and lowe that hour,
For a man[3] fhold do A grete lorde vnto
his funerall obfequye *with* gret honour,

and wear black as others do; and when at last the time shall come

[1] MS. "has." [2] This word is redundant. [3] MS. "aman."

Cloth you ther in blakke As other ther doo.
When that paſſyd is ther dolour and wo,
By proceſſe of tyme at leyſer and ſpace,
When weping dais an end do purchace,

[Fol. 15 *b*.] for his heir to receive the earldom, demand of him a gift ere ye go, as payment for your services to the late earl;

And that the enheritour ther ſhall be
The erldom of peyters reſceyued to,
And hys homage take of men of contre,
Of thys lord demaunde A yefte or ye go
For your guerdon of ſeruiſe ye haue doo
To the Erle laſt paſt in the ſame place;
Wher þe *pr*eſent be, ſo myght pleaſe his grace,

beg him to give you so much land as may be enclosed by a hart's skin, and cause deeds of the gift to be duly executed;

So moche as[1] A hert-ſkyn myght aboute encloſe,
In ſeueral to ſhitte wodes and contre.
hit will not you wern but graunt, I ſuppoſe;
Dedes therof mak the cauſe ther-on be,
Off the lordes yifte the enchefon may ſe,
Wher-for he it yaf, And for wat reaſon;
After ſette day of lyuerey and ſeaſon,

and, when you have the deeds ready, depart; and go on till you see a man carrying a large hart's skin, which buy at his own price.

That men deliuer you poſſeſſion;
And when your letters ye haue all redy,
Thens ye depart, a litell[2] way ſhal gon,
ye ſhal ſe A man come gayn you haſtilie,
The hertis ſkyn bring gret and large to eye.
By ye that ſkyn, I you gyf in charge,
What-ſomeuere coſt, ſpare not, yif ye large.

Next cut the skin into small thongs, very narrow, and tie them up into a bundle,

After cutte that pece into thwanges ſmal,
lete it not be brode, but narow As may be,
Enuiron the ſkyn rounde Aboute cut all
As narew as may perceyue it to ſe,
As long As the ſkyn endure ſee may ye;
After ther-of A ſardell do ye make,
And afterwarde to your repair you take,

[1] MS. "os." [2] MS. "alitell."

ANd lete it noght be lefte[1] to do, certain,
But men deliuere to yow your lande fad
Aboute this clere well and ful fair fontain.
Now complaineth noght of your huge pain had,
For ye fhal finde[2] this place fourged and made
In al places ryght As it liketh me,
Where that your lande appere fhall to fe.

[Fol. 16.] and make men deliver you up the land which you can enclose with them around this fair fountain.

If the thanges be more lenger certain
then the rowndneffe made which that ye finde fhall,
Again the ualey do it to remayn
The rennyng of thys fantain clere with-all,
Where ye fhall take the dwellyng to fall
The thwanges lenght after to ende had.
Do thys hardily, be no-thyng Adrad,

But if the thongs will enclose more than such a circuit, draw them down along the valley.

ANd when that ye be Affuryd of all,
As at peiters when ye come only,
Take your leue and return that enterual,
For in thys faid place fhal ye verily,
At wat tym ye come, fynde me certainly.
luke ye me hold trew *per*fecte couenaunt."
"lady," faid Raymound at that inftaunt,

When assured at Poitiers of all your possessions, return hither, and you shall find me here."

"I fhall plainly do your commaundement,
What-fomeuer coft it for to cheue,
Sin it pleaffith yow me it commaunde to hent."
Fro hir de*per*tyd, taking fair hys leue,
This thing takith on ioyufly in breue,
To peyters he cam in the morow tyde;
Many demaunded wher ther lord gan bide.

Raymond promises to obey at whatever cost; and, greatly rejoiced, returns to Poitiers,

RAymounde Anfward, "yufterday hym loft
vppon hys courfere[3] which bare hym fwyftly;

[Fol. 16 b.] where he gives out that he had lost his lord, and

[1] MS. "lefte." [2] MS. "finde." [3] MS. "courfere."

knew not what had become of him.

That I was baffhed, wift noght to what coft
he went, I cowde not mete *with* him truly;
After I fewed As I myght full ny,
I hym loft when in-to woode gan draw,
Neuer after perceiued hym ne faw."

Thus Raymond excused himself, and accused not the soul of the homicide (himself); and none ever thought of accusing him.

Ryght thus Raymounde hym excufid tho,
the foule of the dede-doer accufyd noght;
For neuer man ne had in hym beleue, lo!
That þe dede was by hym done and wrought,
Though that moch he were diftrained *in* thought,
And that for the dede fighed full ofte there.
But it behouith to yonge baculere[1]

Many now return from hunting, both high and low. There were none but were sorely annoyed

Such A ftrange dede to couere fecretly,
Wich vnto hym cam at that huntyng-chace.
Vnto his manoir comyn were many,
Which fro hunting were drawing to þat place,
As wel of gret As fmal, both hye and bace,
Ni to Ramound drawing euermore.
Ther had was non but noyed wonder fore

at not knowing the truth, as to where the earl was that night abiding. At last his sorrowing wife and children saw two men approach, bearing the body,

That thay myght noght the trouth perceiue
and know,
Wher he that nyght[2] gan byd and remain.
Ful dolorous was his fair wyfe þat throw,
All wette *with* teres in hir vifage plaine,
And ther children to ful harde gan complain;
Tho A ferrom faw to worthi men comyng,
Which the dede body forily gan bring

[Fol. 17.] which they had found in the woods, with the dead boar lying beside him.

Which in the wodes barainly ther founde,
Thys notable Erle whilom off renon;
And thys foule fwine befides hym that ftounde.
Ther wepte burgeffes And fquiers manyon,

[1] MS. "baiulere." [2] MS. "myght."

Ther wepte ladies And knightes echon,
Ther wepte old, ther wepte yong peple all,
Thay wepte the deth of thys Erle roiall.

All bewailed his death.

When that the Counteffe of him had the fight,
Ful dolorous wo hir hert gan attain,
Here handes wrang, hir heere tare þis woful wyght,
With wepyng teeres foroly gan complain ;
Ther wepte the fone, the doughter, both twain ;
Ther wepte the gentile that Raymonde men call,
Ther wep[t]e preftes, ther wepete Chanones all.

His Countess wrang her hands, and tare her hair. Raymond joins in the general mourning.

Through Peiters Euery man forow lad,
Both tho gret and fmal ful fore were weping,
Thys day can noght be faad the heuineffe mad,
Noght halfe the wofulneffe the cite hauing.
Tho that this dede Erle were þer beholdyng,
Euery bewepte hys deth mornyngly,
Thys Erle beried ryght ful folempnely ;

Every one bewailed his death, throughout the town; and buried him with all solemnity,

Ful nobley wele the almes yef and do ;
Aboute hym gret wexe, fair ftore, and gret light.
Forfoth the burgeffes of the cite tho
Cast thys curfid fwyne in A huge fire bright ;
The Barons of contre there had ech wyght.
A man fhold fhortly the dole ouerpas,
When remedy non may be in the cas.

distributing alms, and burning great store of wax. The cursed boar was cast into a fire and burnt up.

RAymounde Ful wel aqueinted hym that hour,
Ther many A perfone of hym faid, "a ! he
Felith fore in hert anguifh and dolour !
Of hys fouerain lord had he fuch pite."
So he gan do in trouth and uerite,
As for to fee hym gret pite it was,
His mornyng, his wailyng, his loking bas.

[Fol. 17 b.] Raymond hears many remarking his excessive grief, which was indeed real.

After the burial, the barons busily went to do homage to the new earl; and Raymond approached to prefer his request.

After when that the obfequie was don,
The Barons fafte went ful befelye,
To the nouel Erle homage hym do echon,
After the feafon and[1] ufage cuftomlye.
Then Raymound drew hym forth to thys lorde hye,
his requeft to make after hys lady lore,
As fhe hym warned long tyme ther before,

He asks for as much land, lying near the fountain, as a hart's skin would enclose;

The lady of whom he had take leue to go.
"Honourous lord," he faid, "bef[e]ch you yif me,
Ni to the Fontain of thurfty gladneffe, lo!
Off wode, Roche, or ualey in that contree,
Be it medewes or arable (.) to fee,
So moche as an hertis fkin of grounde ftrech wold;
For noght wyll demaunde, ne in thys place fhold,

and requires no other payment. The yonng earl accedes, if it will content his barons.

Thing which that fhold you be in coft gretly;
I require of you non other paiment
For my feruice done continually
Of your Fader, whos foule god haue and hent."
Thys yong Erle faid, "I graunt all your entent,
So that it may pleafe to my Baronage."
Then the Berons faid with full fair langage,

[Fol. 18.] The barons think Raymond well deserves it, and the earl commands the deeds of gift to be duly executed and sealed.

"RAymounde may full wel thys faid yifte to haue,
(For he hath full wel deferuyd it fertain,
His lord fo feruyd), As hym luft to craue."
"Then fhal he it haue," Afaid thys Erle plain;
"hys dedes lete make his graunt to contain."
Deuifed thay were paffyng fotilly,
After the writyng fealled ful truly

[1] MS. "and and."

With the gret feal[1] of thys Erle nouel,
Which curious was, fair, and moche of told ;
The hye barons put to al-fo well
There gret fealles to the dedys unfold ;
The fcripture deuifyd full wel to be-hold,
Fourged and made of good ordinaunce,
The day perfixft of the deliueraunce.

It was sealed both by the earl and the barons, and the day fixed for its becoming of force.

The morn a man cartainly he found
Which A hertis fkin broght hym there before,
A ful curtois man hym it toke that ftounde.
The fkyn ful narew kerue thay euermore ;
His gyfte required after hys lady lore ;
The Erle faid, men him deliuer it fhold,
Fro peiters partyd *with* gret raundon told,

In the morning, a courteous man brings him the skin, and the earl bids men to deliver him up his possession.

To Raymound hys ghyfte deliuerd this wyfe ;
The Erle fend peple to delyuer plain,
Fulfillyng that which he gan promife.
By that were comyn vnto the fantain,
Streith Raymound thaim lad to *þat* place fertain,
Raymound drew hys fkin ther forth vnto fight ;
Of *þat* merueled ftrongly m*any* A wight,

As soon as they come to the fountain, Raymond produced the skin, to their great wonder, when they see how narrowly it is cut.

When fo narow corue thai gan it to fe ;
Vnknowin was thaim what that thai fhold do.
To men comyn were ther to that contre,
Takyng ther thys fkin coruen ful fmal tho,
Anon on A band put thay it vnto,
A gret truffe ther-of making vp that ftound.
On ende to a pain thai had ther y-bound,

[Fol. 18 *b*.] Two men then approach, who make the thongs up into a bundle, and bind one end to a stake;

[1] MS. "feal."

and enclose the whole rock with a part of the skin. They again bind an end to a stake, and carry it down the valley. A stream suddenly wells up,

Al the Roche thay had enuironed,
But yut of the fkyn ful gretly abode.
To A pane on ende ftrongly thai tied,
That other ende bare againe the ualey brode,
Ful litill it held As thay forth glode.
A-ferre fro thens A ftreme gan to rife,
Wher-of ftoned were ftrongly to deuife ;

which had never been seen before. All wondered when they saw the immense tract enclosed.

For neuer body had that water fain.
And when thay had all prouided thys place,
Which the hertis fkin compaffed fertain,
Seing the contre that comprehended was,
That fuppofyd noght that it wold purchas
Neither to enclofe ther-of the moite,
Gret wonder and meruail had thay tho, perde,

Raymond receives all the neighbouring country, and news of it is carried to the earl,

So large contre the fkyn gan comprehende.
Forfoth al the procinete ther gan hym take
Ryght As for that where charged and owte fend,
As ther dedes mencion gan make.
To poiters toke way, And ther told and fpake,
Thys faid Erle vnto, al the gret meruail,
Whyeh neuer ne faw fuch like apparaill.

[Fol. 19.] that the circuit enclosed is two miles about. He also hears of the two men, and of the new stream.

FOr thys hertis fkyn in circute gan hold,
To miles aboute gan it comprehende ;
And of tho men which it gan clofe hym told,
Alfo of the ftreme that thai faw at ende,
Ryfing ther vp, again the ualey wende.
"I beleue it was thing of the fairy,"
As faid thys Erle, "fo god me faue only !

The earl is aware of the marvels connected with the fountain, and

FOr thys Raymound hath founden in þe way.
Ful ofte hath bene faid that at that fontain,
Many merueles have fain ben A day,

Whiche men fodenly and ofte there haue fain ; rejoices at Raymond's luck.
And fo to Raymounde myght it come certain,
For of it wold [I] merily reioy."
And raymounde tho fpake that he had gret ioy,

FOr he was comyn hym to thanke hertly, Raymond thanks the earl, declaring that he hardly knows what is coming to him.
Of hys notable gyfte ther hym thanking ;
And he Anfwerd to hym, "graunt mercy !
Of your goodneffe ye luft fo be fayng.
I wout nere what to me fhal be comyng,
But, if your lord wyll, good may com to me."
So forth paffyd till morn-day-lyght to fe ;

RAymounde tho lepte vp hys courfere vppon, Raymond rides away to the fountain, and finds there the lady, who welcomes him.
To the fantain and wel of thruft gan to go,
Wher that hys lady founde beyng alon,
Which hym faid, "my loue, welcome me vnto !
luke ye be wife, redy, wel thaught, lo !
And ye fhall now haue for your good labour
yut here-after gret worfhip and honour !"

ANon into A fchapel made entre, [Fol. 19 *b.*]
Which thaim ny vnto ful redy ther found, They enter a chapel, and find there knights, ladies, clerks, prelates, and squires, all nobly apparelled.
knightes, ladies, And gentile wemmen fre,
Clerkys, prelates, Squiers at that ground,
Clothed, apparailled nobylly that ftound ;
Raymounde meruelyd of it wonderly,
Of that peple which ther faw plainly.

UNnethes he myght hym-felfen withold He cannot refrain from asking her about them. She replies that he need not marvel, for they are all his.
That he demaunded noght thys gentile body ;
Thys lady had tho many in houfold,
I-now hym femyng for to haue truly.
"Neuer bafh herof," faid this faire lady,
"Thay ben al youres," ther commaundyng al
hym for to refceiue for lorde principall ;

They humbly do him reverence. Raymond muses within himself, and hopes the end may be as good as the beginning.

Alſo gan thai do ryght As thai ſhold,
Ful humbly thay gan do hym reuerence ;
But raymounde in hert muſid manyfold,
In hym-ſelfe ſaid demurly in audience,
"Se here a noble gynnyng *in* prefence !
God yif that the ende therof be ful good !"
Thys lady hym reſoned there he ſtood,

The lady tells him he must take her in marriage. Raymond declares himself ready at once ; but she tells him that all is not yet ready.

SAyng, "ye Raymounde, what willen ye to do ?
Til that ye haue me had *in* mariage,
ye may noght the eſtat ſe ne know, lo !
Wherefor you councel, purney As the ſage."
Raymounde ſaid, "I am redy to that paſſage."
Thys lady hym ſaid, "we faute that we ſhold haue,
Raymond, all other wyſe we moſte do craue,

[Fol. 20.] He must bring a number of witnesses to the marriage with him, and come again on the Monday.

Iff we ſhall do to pleſaunce honeſtly ;
you behouith to trauel and haue pain
So that peple ye moſte bryng redy,
Which of thys acte may haue conſaunce plain.
haue no point of doubt, but therof be fain,
I-now of all good here ſchal fynd by grace,
But warde that ye be a monday in thys place."

Raymond returns to Poitiers, and comes into the presence of the earl.

RAymounde anſwerd to hir curtoiſly,
"Forſoth I ſhal do your commaundement."
Fro thens deperted Raymounde haſtily,
Vppon hys courſer retorned and went,
To poiters he cam, ther diſcending, hent
And anon forth went, taried ne bode,
Toward the erle of poiters where he ſtode.

He salutes the earl, and says he feels that he ought not to hide anything from

RAymound wel cowde ſalute ſuch eſtat,
Without colour changing or muable,
To hym humbled formally that dat,

There declarid his lord honourable,
"My lord," faid Raymound *with* contenaunce ftable,
"I ought ne fhold my dede be couering,
To *you* al declare And certefying;

him, but to declare to him all things.

I fhal noght you lye for no man*er*[1] wight,
Maryed fhal I be vppon monday;
To a gret lady that day be trought plight,
Ryght at the fontain of thurftes gladneffe ay;
Nothyng fo loue ne likyng to my pay.
humbly you befeke at that day to be,
And to bryng *with* you your peple and mayne;

He therefore confesses that he is to be married on Monday to a great lady, and beseeches him to come to the wedding.

[Fol. 20 *b.*]

Ryght gracyous lorde, to me honour do,
And your gud moder wife and debonair,
My ryght doubted and fhereful lady to,
Which is proclamed fo noble lady fair."
The Erle fayd, "I fhal to that place repair,
But afoure will you thys demaunde make,
What is that lady which that ye fhal take?

He also hopes that the earl's mother will be present. The earl is willing to come, but wishes to know the lady's name.

WArde you And beware ye tAke noght amis,
knowith whens fhe is and of wat linage;
Say me, fair cofin, now what fho is,
Thys day am redy to your mariage."
"Sir, it may noght be for non auantage;
More may noght enquere As of hir beyng,
For ye may no more[2] of hir be knowyng;

and warns him against marrying one of whom he knows nothing. Raymond asks him not to inquire further,

You it fuffifith I-now hyr to fe."
The Erle to hym faid, "thys is gret meruell
That ye take A wif vnknow what is fche,
Neither haue knewlich of hir gouernail,
Ne of hir kinrede; ftrange is without fail!"

for that it will suffice to see her. The earl marvels greatly at such conduct; but Raymond says

[1] MS. "noman*er*." [2] MS. "nomore."

she is like a king's daughter;

"Sir," faid, "I hir faw in fo noble ray
As kinges doughter where frefh is and gay;

and that a fairer lady was never seen. The earl promises to come, with his mother and all his barons.

A More fairer neuer fain with ey;
Off hir linage enquered I no-thing;
Where fhe be of[1] duk or of markois hy,
Forfoth I wyll hyr haue, fhe is me pleafyng."
Thys Erle faid, "Raymounde, to you fhal be comy*n*g,
My moder alfo with all our barony."
Humbly Raymounde fayd, "my lord, graunt mercy!"

[Fol. 21.] On the Monday, the earl and his mother, with many attendants, set out, wondering where they will be lodged and entertained,

THe monday cam men apparailled faft;
Thys Erle Awakyd, rofe vp ful erly,
Hys moder *with* hym brought, frefhly on hyr caft
Full ryche Atire, befain ful womanly;
Sondry ladies with knightes many;
But moche on thaim toke to ful gret meruail,
How thay fhold there loge, by what gouernail,

though they need not have wondered, as all was ready. Riding on, they at last approach the rock.

When thay approched ny to thys fantain.
But therof certes nedid noght haue doute,
All redy was made A place ful folain.
The wayes And pathes fo rode thay aboute
That thay approched Columbere tou*n* al-oute,
And ouer that went ryding the contre,
Hilles, wodes paffyd, the roche might fe;

There they found pavilions pitched beside a valley, where flowed the new stream.

TEntes And pauilons ftreght and pight frefhly
Befyde a ualey,[2] enmyddes a plain;
The ftreme befydes, the fontain ful ny,
Which nouelly was vp-rifen and fain;
Euery man meruellyd of it certain,
Ful wel thay fad knew it the fayry was.
Into the medewes thay beheld apafe

[1] MS. "fo." See note. [2] MS. "aualey."

They heard sweet songs of birds; and saw a wild wood with many people; also several kitchens, with much smoke.

876 TEntes, pauilons frefhly wrought and good,
Doucet fonges hurde of briddes enuiron,
Whych meryly chirmed in the grene wod;
Vppon the ryn faw A wyld wood anon,
880 Where gret peple were to-geders manyon;
And in there kechins fay thay gret fmoke to;
As tham femyd, was A ful huge hooft thoo.

[Fol. 21 *b.*] Next they saw coming about 60 knights, well horsed and armed, who asked for the earl, whom many pointed out to them.

ANd thay faw comyng toward thaim anon
884 Ther nombred aboute knightis ful fexty,
yong, ftrong, lufti, fers, and ful lyght echon,
I-horfed ful wel, armed nobilly;
(hyt nedith not demaunde of it truly);
888 The noble Erle demaunde of peiters,
And thay hem fhewed fondry and dyuers,

The knights ride up to the earl, and salute him humbly. The earl returns their salute,

Off whom demaunded had the trouth to know.
Raymounde thai anon gan fe and behold
892 In the faid Erles company fo grow,
Which ther ful iocunde tales gan unfold.
humbly to the Erle cam thes knightes bold,
And hym ther falute ful debonerly.
896 The Erle ther faluz yilding ryght goodly

yielding to every man the respect due to him, according to the place whence each came. The knights say to him

UNto euery man, without other abode,
After that to hym it fhold appartain
For that place whens that he cam and rode,
900 Both to gret and fmal menal perfones fain,
Ful wel knew to eche ther faluz yild plain;
And thay which ne wold haue no point of blame,
To hym cam and faid worfhipfully the fame:—

that the fair Melusine thanks him heartily, and

904 "THat fair Melufine hym thanked hertly
Of that pleafed hym to com to ther fefte;
And that fhe had charged thaim verily,
you wel for to loge yaf in charge and heft."

that due lodging was provided for his retinue

Thys Erle thaim faid, to pleſire in the befte,
"For here I perceiue ful fayre ordinaunce."
Nobley thay loged thys Erle that inſtaunce.

[Fol. 22] The coursers were well lodged, and provided with rack and manger. The Countess was received in a golden chamber,

A Ful fair pauilon thay hym gan take,
Ther courſers loged paſſing inly wel,
Both rekke and manger at their eaſe gan make,
Infyde tentes ful fair eueridel.
Gret ther labour was wherfor atimed wel.
The Counteſſe reſceiued in that houſold
In-to a chambre freſhly bete with gold,

where many ladies welcomed her. All marvelled at so rich a sight.

Which men pight And ſtreight vppon the fontain;
Many ladyes, ful of gret beute,
Went to a company with the Counteſſe plain,
Ech welcomyng hir after ther degre.
Al meruelyd there thys ryche ſight to ſe,
Als of the nobleneſſe that ey myght purches,
Neuer trowed ſe ſo fair in no place.

The chapel was well apparelled, high and low, and stuffed with rich jewels. The earl and countess demand the bride.

RAymounde with the Erle that tyme logid was.
Of ther fair chapel doubt therof had non,
Wel apparailled was it, hie and bas,
With riche iewelles ſtuffed manyon;
What wold ye ſhold ſay? freſh was enuiron.
The ful noble Erle And thys fair counteſſe
The eſpouſe demaundyd thay expreſſe.

Melusine enters the chapel, freshly attired, and looking, not human, but angelic.

Ther men anon forth aplace hir brought,
Fair meluſine, enmyddes the chapel;
Thys mayden ful fair As cowde bene I-thought,
Freſhly atired rychely and ful wel,
That al hir faw preiſed thys damycel,
Sayng, "it was noght no humayn body lyke,
But more better ſemed a thyng angell-lyke."

[Fol. 22 b.] The earl and countess duly receive her. Minstrelsy is heard, both of high and bass instruments.

THen thys faid Erle applied vnto
Thys fair meluſine to reſceiue fothleſſe,
And of that ful wel his deuoir gan do,
And ful wel or better the noble counteſſe;
Al tho bothe that hour weren at that meſſe.
In that place was had ful gret mynſtracy;
Both hye and bas inſtrumentes fondry;

Never was so noble a feast. The woods rang merrily, and all agreed that human eye had never seen the like of it.

ANd fro[1] that conſtantinople vnto,
In no place was ſo noble a feſte made;
Al the wodes range merily founding tho,
ther was no perſone[2] that preſent tyme hade,
But that "merueles," ſaid, "I ſe ful ſad;
Neuer humain ey ſaw to it egal!"
With great ioy made thys matrimonial.

The mass done, the earl led forth the bride, and a prince conducted her to the chief hall.

After thys meſſe don, taken haue the way;
The Erle the eſpouſe courtoiſly forth lad;
In that other part, A prince of contray
In-to the chef hal thys fair mayden had,
Which noble peple held that day ful glad;
Ther mete al redy, vnto waſh thay went;
After ſette As was moſt conuenient.

The earl sat beside the bride, and the countess next him. The courses were brought in by squires, including great plenty of dainties.

BEſides thys maiden thys noble Erle ſate,
The gentile counteſſe next ſette hym vnto,
After A gret lord of contre that date,
Which for gret honour worſhipped was ſo.
Raymounde tho ſate with other knightes mo.
The courſe tho brouth[3] in with ſquiers many,
Gret plente there had of deyntees fondry,

[Fol. 23.] There was wine of Anjou, and of Rochelle; of

WHich that apperid As thing infinite;[4]
With wine of Angoy, And als of rochel tho
Which wold eſchawſe the braines appetite;

[1] MS. "for."
[2] MS. "preſone."
[3] brought (?)
[4] MS. "infinite."

Touraine and Beaune; also Clare Romain and Ypocras.

Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme alfo,
Which iawne colour applied noght vnto;
Clarre Romain, with doucet ypocras,
Thorught al the hal rynnyng hye and bas.

Wine, morever, of Tours and Dijon, of Auxerre and Saint Jougon; of St Jean d'Angely, and others.

Wine of Tourimz, and alfo of digon,
Wyne of Aucerre, of feint Jougon alfo;
Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther fpake and tolde tho;
Wine of eftables, of uiart[1] alfo;
After thaim cam the wyne bafterd good,
Wine of feint purfain, and of ris hys brood.

Every one had abundance, as much as he asked for, whether of wine or meat.

Ouer all thes wines ther had the prife
The nouel ofey of Dingenon,
Off all the wynes named to deuife.
Ther all peple preuilage had echon,
Euery in hys loge plente and fufon,
Euery of that which thai wold demaund
Off wynes and of uitaillouns viand.

After this began the jousting, where Raymond jousted mightily. Next they went to vespers, and then to supper.

After thys diner, men to iouftes went;
Be-fyde the fontain ful fair iouftes had;
But Raymound ioufted ftrongly and feruent,
Certainly myghty iouftes[2] ther he made.
Thys Jouftes dured till fonne went to glad.
After to eueffong went euery wyght,
And fin to foper fet were and dyght.

[Fol. 23 *b.*] After supper came the dancing. At last the bride retired into a costly pavilion.

When fopyd thay had at ther owne deuife,
Strongly thay daunced, ioying merily
Ful long that night in right gladfom wife.
And when that men faw time approched ny
Vnto go to bedde, And deperted fully,
Men made the efpoufe to depart fair.
Into A pauilon made fhe A retrair,

[1] MS. "mart." [2] MS. "iouſted," roughly altered to "iouftes."

Off whom moch coft the fourging And makyng;
Portreid it was with briddes freſhly,
Thys fair pauilon rich was in feing;
Forth Anon the bede ſtreight And made redy,
Which *with* floure-delife couerid was to ey.
Quicly cam Raymound, in the bedde[1] him laide
By fair meluſine, the ſuete doucet made.

portrayed with painted birds. Then laid they the bed, and made it ready.

Forfoth A Biſſhop which that tyme ther was
Signed and bliſſid the bedde[2] holyly;
"In nomine dei" ſo ſaid in that place;
After fro thens departed haſtily,
For the ceaſon late le[*n*]ger to tary.
The Erle hym *with*drew to hys pauilon;
And hys good moder, time was and ceaſon,

A bishop gave his benediction, "*in nomine dei.*" The earl and his mother also retired to their tents.

INto hir chambre goodly went to bed.
Euery man went to hys erbigage,
But ſom all night dyſported And ſolas led,
Singing, dauncing, diſporting *with* longage;
Many fayr fongis fonge that compernage.
Off thys noble feſte no more[3] you will breke,
Off gentile Raymound ſhall I to you ſpeke,

All went to their allotted chambers, but some spent the whole night in singing and dancing.

[Fol. 24.]

Which[4] with meluſine lyght ful meryly,
To whome ful fuetly outred ſhe and fayd,
"Now vnderſtandith, fayre ſwet loue, hertly,
The Auentur comyn vnto vs thys braide
That we togeders by grace here bene laid,
Ryght As mAn And wyffe after entent,
And I Am her at your commaundement;

Melusine addresses Raymond, reminding him of his good fortune,

But that oth moſt hold which firſt day me made.
I know full wele, when ye cam to pray

and of his oath lately made to her. She tells

[1] MS. "beded." [2] "body;" French text, *Le lit.*
[3] MS. "nomore." [4] MS. "Whicht."

him she is aware how the earl inquired concerning her lineage;

The Erle of peiters And knightes that he had
To come and to do you honour that day
That I fhuld be maried to your pay,
Be[1] you enquered full moch wat it was,
And of linage ye gan me purchas."

she proceeds to tell him that his good fortune will last as long as he holds to his covenant:

HE anfwered hym to the point ful wel,
"Myn owne verray loue, now doubt ye ryght noght."
"ye fall be mofte beft fortuned to tell,
So ye couenaunt hold As of refon ought,
As euer was Any of your linage brought,
Hou-fomeuer fortune that thay haue had,
So the contrary by you be noght made.

but that if he breaks it, he will suffer huge harmful pains, and be disinherited of all.

IFf it be, ye fhall haue gretly to doo
huge noifaunt paunes *with* aduerfite,
And defherite be wrechedly alfo
Of tennementes, landes, the befte to fe;
It wyl be fo And fertanly fchal be."
"Fayre fwet lade," faid, "I you pleg[g[e t]routh myne,
Whyle I leue fhal be, be it non m[align]e,[2]

[Fol. 25 *b*.][3] He again swears to be faithful, giving her his hand in pledge of his sincerity.

FAlfhed fhall noght be our faid couenaunt,
Of which here beforne made haue I promeffe;
And yut I wil you promit the fame grant;"
hys hand vnto heres put in ge*n*till wyfe,
Makyng A gret oth As hert cowde deuife,
That he wold it hold euer entirely.
Melufine hym hanfwered fwetly,

Melusine cautions him yet once more, declaring

"Now, my fwet loue, I fay you feithfully,
If ye be ftedfafte and couenaunt hold,[4]

[1] "He" (?)

[2] A piece near the corner of the page is here torn away.

[3] See Note to l. 1050.

[4] MS. "bold."

In good hour ye be here borne treuely ; that she will never fail in her part of the covenant.
kepe it truly, befeech you manyfold ;
For in my part fail fhal I for no gold,
Off me haue ye had ful tru Affuraunce
Which I fhall hold ; no more fay thys inftaunce."

With clipping, kiffyng, that nyght gan do fo, Their eldest son was named Urien, whose famous deeds will be told of hereafter. The feast concluded,
That an fair[1] fone ther engendred was ;
Vrien callyd at that tyme tho.
Dedis and warkis fuch gan he purchas
As in tyme fhal hire the mater and cas.
Thys fefte endured dais ful fiftene ;
At ende to lordis yiftes gaf melufine,

And to lades which that men brought Melusine gives very rich presents to all, who wonder at her wealth and liberality.
With thys roial and noble Counteffe.
Al faid ther, "lord god ! what wyfe is this wrought,
Which that we fe here prefent of rycheffe ?
Maried is he vnto gret hineffe !"
Raymounde of all moch ther preifed was,
No worldly man myght better in no cas.

[Fol. 26.]
After when it cam vnto departfon, She opens an ivory casket, and draws from it a clasp garnished with precions stones, which she gives to the countess.
Faire melufine went fafte ther openyng
A forcelet[2] wrought frefh of yuor[3] bon ;
A formelet,[4] of gret ualure beyng,
With prefious ftonis gerneffhed that thyng,
With vertues perles ful many,
To the counteffe gaf it verra hertly,

Which of that iewel fhe ful gret ioy had. The earl and his people depart,
Thens deperted the Erle and hys maine,
Which were ful noble peple, good and fad,

[1] MS. "an m fair." [2] "forceret" (?)
[3] MS. "your." [4] "formelet" (?)

Melusine taking her leave of them.

The fair melufine hir leue take hath fhe
Of thys faid counteffe of ful hy degre
By-forn al peple honourabylly,
And of thys fayd Erle ryght femblabilly,

Leaping up to their saddles, they ride away. Raymond accompanies them to the edge of the forest.

Off lades And of maydens all.
Thai leaping vp ther fadelles unto,
Openly ther thens went that enterual;
But gentill Raymound conueied tham fo,
With peple of eftat Acompanied tho,
With hym wold not haue creature Afoote,
Noght paffyng Columberes woodes foote.

At leave-taking, the earl would fain have asked Raymond who Melusine is, but durst not. Raymond, seated on a courser,

RAymounde of thys Erle ther hys leue gan take,
But the Erle druft noght, And ful fayn wold,
Ryght gladly hym A demaunde to make,
Off fair melufine, what fhe was, tel fhold;
Ful moch he thought, but yut hys pes gan hold;
Fere of difplefaunce of Raymound any wyfe.
On A courfere fate ful fair to deuyfe,

[Fol. 26 *b.*] takes his leave of the earl, and returns to Melusine, who receives him joyously. At the end of eight days, all the trees in the wood were uprooted

Off thys Erle toke leue; after gan retorne
Streight vnto hys wyf kyffyng hir fwetly,
And thought in hert ther vnto fogorn,
Which hym refceiued ryght ful ioyoufly.
Er that eight dais were ended fully,
Al the wodys were roted up and gon;
Of laborers had plente and fufon,

by labourers of an unknown nation. They made hideously deep ditches, and were

NO man knew whens was, ne of what nacion;
Ful gret diches made, ryght huge and profounde,
Ful hiduous was to behold adon;
No caufe had thai difmaing thaim no ftound,
Neither no deffaute i*n* þe pame*n*t found,

Euery day had ther money and argent,
The laborers were the more diligent.

diligent, finding themselves well paid.

The fundementes made thai right profounde,
(Ful wel know may be if y myſſay, lo !)
Fair meluſine was deuiſer of that ground,
And of werke alſo lyke as it was do.
Vppon the quicke Roche thay it fett tho ;
The fyrſte ſtones to put thay, and made
In litell of tyme ; Maſons I-now had.

They made deep foundations, building a castle upon the live rock according to Melusine's plan.

The walles hye deuiſed ſhe echon,
Wel founded was vppon the ſaid uayley ;
Too ſtrong toures made with a huge dongun,
And Enuiron an hy with wardes ſtrong that day.
Of it meruelyd ſtrongly the contray,
hou ful ſone men made this ſaid ſtrong repair.
And when thys caſtell was baſtiled fair,[1]

There were two strong towers with a huge dungeon; insomuch that all the country marvelled.

Thys ſwete meluſine ſaw it full fair tho,
After hir ryght name gan it ſhe Baptiſe ;
Off hir name ſhe hath taken a part, lo !
luſignen to name yaf after hir deuiſe,
yut is oueral named in that wiſe ;
Many bare that name, it aboute gan cry,
And yut is ryght and cried was fuerly ;

[Fol. 27.] Melusine baptized the castle after the latter part of her own name, calling it Lusignen.

NOght-withſtandyng the good kyng Ciprian
hit cried luſignen euer in his cry,
As the hiſtory ſeith to euery man
Off whom after ſhal do make memory.
Meluſigne is As moche to ſay truly,
Ryght As ho ſeith, meruеles fauti[t]h non ;
She was A woman A-per-ſe, alon.

The meaning of Melusine is, "no marvels are lacking," she being a woman A-*per-se*.

[1] At the bottom of the page is the catchword—This ſwet meluſine ſaw.

When this castle was built, high walls and all, people wondered how it had been finished so soon.

YE may fe here A comfort meruelous,
Moche more then other ſtrange auenture.
Wel was A-cheued this caſtel beuteuous,
Al A-boute reifed wonder hy wallure.
Euery man ſaid it was A huge dede fure,
That thys ſaid caſtel was ſo ſone made;
The peple wondred and gret meruel had.

Melusine bare a son, named Urien, whose visage was very short and broad, and who had one eye red, the other gray;

THys fair meluſine here in hir tyme bare;
At nyne monthes ende childed ſhe A ſone,
vrien named, the ſoth to declare,[1]
Which that after was of ful gret renone;
But hys uiſage was ſtrange to uiſion,
For it was full ſhort And large *in* trauers;
On ey was rede, Another grey dyuers.

[Fol. 27 *b*.] also a huge mouth and great nostrils; yet well made as regarded his legs, arms, and feet.

EVery man myght ſe it openly,
Huge mouth And large gret noſtrelles alſo;
neuer man ſain non to hym egally;
But of body was inly wele made tho,
Off legges, of Armes, of feete therto,
In it not failled thing thouchyng nature,
And at the ful made vnto hys ſtature.

After that she made a city, with high walls and towers, well provided with loopholes.

AFter that tyme made ſhe ful huge honoures,
Fourged the brought in mou*n*t of bew-repair,
The walles bild hye, and als tours,
The goinges and comynges wroughten fair,
All couered and made, non might ben gair;
At louers, lowpes, Archers had plente,
To cAſt, draw, and ſhete, the diffence to be,

THat non wordly man myght no wyfe it take;
So ſtrong w*ith* peple Acompanyed was,

[1] "Vryen" is here scrawled in the margin in a later hand.

That ſtrenght ful ſtrong *with* peple gan make,
The diches profunde large brede gan purchas,
With this toure couerid hye and bas,
The yates Iumelles, mighty and ſtrong,
To ſain the trouth, ful large were and long.

The ditches were of great breadth, and the gates large and long.

Atwixſt the borough and thys ſtrenght myghtly
A place ther fourged merueloufly ſtrong,
The toure trompe ſom callyd it daily,
In luſignen town ſo named tham among;
For Sariſins trompers tho were put ful long,
To ende this ſaid toure thay fold kepe and ward,
And al enuiron aboute to rewarde

Between the town and the fort was made a strong tower, called "Trompe;" for it was garrisoned with Saracen *trumpeters*.

That peple noght approch neither to com ny,
But tho of that ſtrenght ſhold it know and ſe.
That yere childed ſhe the ſecunde ſonne truly,
Oede[1] named; a fair femblant had he,
As ſhinyng fire his uiſage ſemynge be,
With wonder redneſſe ſo reſplendiſing;
his membres ful fair formid *in* makyng;

[Fol. 28.] The second year Melusine bare a son named Oede, who had a face as shining fire, resplendent with redness.

IN that ſame yere made that lady fair
The caſtel and brought which men callen mel,
Vauuant and meruant made ſhe, non gair,
The tour of feint Meſſent after made ful wel;
The Borugh fourged, the abbey gan echdel,
Where *þat* our lady is ferued alway;
And After the town of noble partenay.

That year she made the castle and town named Mel, and some others, including Parthenay.

AND Als the caſtel fourged ſhe roial,
With good lime and ſtone freſhly vnto ſight,
Toures, torettes, pinacles, and harde wall;
The craftiſmen wrought As tho perfight.

She also made the castle of Parthenay with good lime and stone, towers, turrets, pinnacles, and wall.

[1] *Oede* is also in the margin, written in the later hand.

By that, Raymound was doubted of ech wight,
Into gret honour rifen is A-hy,
And worfhipped is in ech company.

Her third son was named Guy, who was of great beauty, saving that he had one eye a little lower than the other.

After fhe had the third fon fair withall;
A more fairer neuer fay[n] with ey,
Off beute ynow vnto him gan fal,
hit cowde noght ben withfaid certainly;
Sauyng þat on ey had he more bafly
Then þat other a litel[1] ther femyng,
Men callyd hym Guy, which doubted no-thyng.[2]

[Fol. 28 b.] The same year was founded Rochelle; and soon after she built a great bridge, for which she received great praise.

Then that faid fame yere founded was Rochell,
In peito, by fair melufine this lady.
After taried noght, but litel gan dwel,
That A ful faire brigge made fhe vnto ey,
(As ther cornicles[3] fhewith openly),
And in talmondois fourged was to fe,
Of which werke gret loos ther refceiued fhe.

Her fourth son was Anthony, who had on his jaw a mark like a hurt made by a lion.

ANon after had fhe born in certain
The fourth fone, callyd and named Antony,[4]
But in hys iaw bare A hurt ful of pain
Off A lyon, which al hys life bare ful fighty;
To hym A gret ftonyng was it verily,
To moche fkin grow, A long feme cutting;
But hardy man was, noght drad ne fering.

All these things are true. And when it pleased our Sovereign Lord, this lady had the fifth son,

All Is trouth that I outre you or fay,
Doubt ye noght of it that I you do tel;
In luxenbrough fair thyng made that day.
Thys lady norifhed thes children ful wel
Till thay wer growyn ryght large, wyfe, and fell;
And when it pleafed our lord fouerain,
The fyfte child thys lady had again,

[1] MS. "alitel." [2] In the margin is *guy* in the later hand.
[3] *Sic* in MS. [4] In the margin, *Anθoni*.

Which in his hed had on ey and no mo,
Mofte hiefte fet, wonderly to fe.
hys name of Baptime Raynold called tho ;[1]
his fight more clerer ueryle then he
Whiche to eyes had, for al their plente ;
Merueles gret gan do, after ye fhal hire,
So it may be hurde thys tale hole entire.

whose baptismal name was Raynold. He had but one eye, but his sight was clearer than that of a person who has two eyes, for all their plenty.

[Fol. 29.]
GAffrey with gret toth Afterwarde fhe bare,[2]
Which growyn in mouth A wonder toth hade,
Which without iffued paſing gret and fquare ;
he meruelous ftrong, of nothyng Adrad,
Blacke monkes he flay, to mortail deth lad ;
Off mallers Abbay were thay, lef or loth,
Which caufyd hys fader ftrongly to be wroth.[3]

The next was Geoffrey with the great tooth, which issued from his mouth, great and square. It was he who slew the black monks of Maillezais abbey;

Again melufine wrothed he ful fore,
That to hir fayd moch repref and velony,
That hir company loft for euer-more ;
Which caufid a fal fro hys Aftat hy
To hys gret repref, ryght to fhamfully,
As after wyl make declaracyon,
Of al ther warkis the conclufyon.

which event caused his father to be angry with Melusine, and was the cause of all his misfortunes.

The feffe child Ffromont that time callyd was,[4]
Of ftature of perfone hie, gret, and long,
Inly wel formed, pulcrious of face,
Sage, fubtile, wel taught, myghty and ftronge ;
But vppon hys noffe fuch a tach had fong,
Ryght As A wolfes fkyn row was it tho,
Ful ftrange vnto fight to fe hys nofe foo.

The seventh son was Fromont, who had a blemish on his nose. It was rough as a wolf's skin, so that his nose was a strange sight.

[1] In the margin, *Raynold with'on ye.*
[2] In the margin, *geffrey withe gret tothe.*
[3] MS. "wroght."
[4] In the margin, *Froymonde w[as] a monke, and w[as] burnd.*

The eighth son was Horrible; he had three eyes, and was of a very wicked disposition.

1268 Then the eighteth fone borne of Melufin,
Thre eyes hauyng on in front uifible;[1]
Moche peple meruellyd and wonderd ther-in,
Thys child named and called horrible;
1272 For hym vnto fe was thyng terrible,
And alfo he was of wycked doing,
In no goodneffe, thought but to do ille thing.

[Fol. 29 *b*.] We now return to Uriens, who was grown big, mighty, strong, and light; and was fond of war.

Now retorn Again vnto vriens,
1276 Which of tham was the moft aunci*on*.
Eche fhal declare by ordres diligens,
That me*n* may perceiue dul am not ther-on.
vriens was A fair fquier of *per*fon,
1280 Growen ful bygg, myghtly, ftronge, and lyght,
Willing to know where by fee and lande ryght.

He took ship at Rochelle in a barge, with Guy and much people; intending to go and acquire lands.

At Rochel toke A fhippe ful fair and large,
(And for fhe was long, wide, hole, founde, entire,
1284 I founde in feripture that it was A barge),
Sayng *þa*t he wold go land to acquire,
So god hym warde fro perel to plefur;
Moche peple with hym had, the barge ful was;
1288 Ther Guy with hym went landes to purchas.

They took with them much silver and gold, and went to sea. Soon came they to Cyprus.

IN many places preuid was hardly
Thys forfaiden Guy truly manyfold.
And to wel find ther peple only,
1292 The fair melufine of filuer and gold
Gret plente toke, in trefour ftore to hold.
Into fee thay went, the fayl vp gan reife,
To cipreffe contre ther fhippes gan teife

The king of Cyprus was then being besieged in

1296 Streight to that place wher fair auenture funde.
Of Cipreffe the kyng tho befeged was

[1] In the margin, *horryble with iii yes.*

In A myghty towne, which owyd that ftound ; Famagousta, which the Sultan had nearly taken.
Named Famagouce[1] that cite and place ;
Which, enfaimling, Almofte gan purchace
The foudan bigly the town befeging,
With an hundred thoufande men fightyng.

[Fol. 30.]
Off it knew vriens the uerite, Uriens lands, and, calling his men together, displays his banner.
Off Famagouce[1] the Cite roial ;
land toke, referfhing[2] hym and hys maine.
Forth-with declarid to hys peple all,
And to thys Cite his peple gan cal,
Wher-vnto thai had An euyn ftreight way ;
And beforne tham his baner gan difplay,

Whych of Fine filke was enbrauded frefhly. Both Saracens and citizens see them coming. Soon were they arrayed against the sultan.
The Sarafins knew and faw ther comyng ;
Alf tho in cite knew tham uerily,
And ther oofte myght fee ful faft herbiging,
The peple of Armes ther difloging.
Nye to the foudan thai re[n]gid tho were ;
As to the Cipriens to fight femy*n*g there,

That the Soudan caft Away for feere to flee ; The sultan meditated flight; which the king perceived, and was at once armed by Ermynee his daughter, and mounted his horse.
That faid to othir, "we moft after few."
The kyng Armed was w*ith* fair Ermynee,
hys fwet doughter ful maydenly to vew,
hyr honorous fader w*ith* harnois new ;
Ther hym conueing ryght ful curtoifly,
Vnto hys courfer ful debonairly.

Trompes, clarions, blew up faft founding, Trumps and clarions sound. A hard conflict ensues, and many Christians and
The kynges baner lifte, vp-reifed hy ;
Ther full gret affray was at ther mellyng,
The paynymes faw the kyng cam frefhly,

[1] MS. "Samagouce."
[2] MS. "referfhing;" the *er* is blotted.

Saracens are slain.

Anon Aſſembled that full haſtily ;
Many A criſtyn Approched deth in haſte,
And Saraſins many to mortal deth caſte.

[Fol. 30 b.] The king is shot with a poisoned dart, and the surgeons fear that they cannot heal him.

The ſariſins were myghty, fers, And ſtrong ;
The Cipriens ſhewed ther ſtrenght and myght.
The king withe a dart[1] toxicat poiſon ſong,
Such A malice ſtroke his foes hym dight
That in gariſon hym wold take no wight.
Tho Sourgeons doubte, As thay gan report,
Wherfor the peple were tho diſcomforth.

The Cyprians thereupon retreat, closely followed by the Saracens. Great clamour in the city.

The[2] Cipriens went for fere euermore,
The ſariſines after full faſt fleing,
Into the thowne thay bete thaim before,
Many ther ſlain And many don caſtyng.
In that towne was horrible crying,
As for tho wounded And Als tho ſlayn ;
And for the kynges hurt, ther foucrain,

Ermynee bemoans her father, and tears her goldish hair, perceiving that he had arrived at death's door.

Fvll dolorous wo ther enforced was ;
Ermyne by-ment hir good fader fore,
Gret torment to hir ther gan ſhe purchas,
hir goldiſh herre tering, breking, euermore,
For hir fader and lord lying hir before,
Whom perceiued riued at dethes port,
And that no man[3] cowde yif theroff comfort.

Meanwhile Uriens and Guy had displayed their banners,

Off kyng Ciprian leue we ſhal and reſt,
And of vriens ſpeke and talke we ſhall,
Which was wurthy, uaillant, and gentilleſt,
Full femly to ſee, luſty ouer all ;
And of his brother, that Guy men do cal,
Of fader And moder As beforn is ſaid ;
Ther baneres were openly diſplayd,

[1] MS. "adart." [2] MS. "Thy." [3] MS. "nomā."

AN̄d in ther handes full fafte gan to hold.
A fers and hardy ftoure ther a man[1] fhold fe,
When to-geders mete *with* fperys manyfold.
The petyuins tham bare As warly men fre;
For ther good vitail and wines plente
The more ftrenger were And the more femly;
Affautes tha[y] gafe dyuers And fondry.

[Fol. 31.] and attacked the Saracens. The men of Poitou, owing to their good victual and plentiful wine, were stronger than their foes.

THer vriens fhewed his noble proweffe,
Many be-gan fle and hurt manyon;
his brother Guy in lyke befineffe,
Men hym doubted As thai wold A lion;
Paynymes hym drad, fered hys perfon;
After wifte noght the foudan what to do,
But *with* fpores priked hys courfere tho.

Uriens and Guy are dreaded by the Saracens: and, at last, the Sultan presses forward at full speed,

HIs forbefhed fwerd of ftele fafte holding,
To A peiteuin wightly fmote he fafte,
So that neuer myght[2] be purchaffyng,
With-in litel while ftanded was in hafte;
The timbre And yre thorugh hys body wrafte.
hyt perceiued tho gentile vriens;
Semyng fro hym-felfe, *with* gret uiolens,

smiting down a Poitevin with his furbished sword, so that both wooden hilt and iron blade pierced through his body

IN hys handes twain hys fwerd faft gripte he,
Such A ftroke ther yaf the Soudan vnto,
To teeth cliue his hed for hys cruelte,
*With*in the Soudan entred his fwerd fo;
Vnto mortall deth fell this paynym tho,
The paynymes All abafhed heuily.
Such-wife vriens wrought dedes Army,

Uriens grips his sword in both hands, and cleaves the Sultan to the teeth, at which the Paynims are distressed,

THat both paynymes, turkes, And furiens,
That As A larke fro A hauke doth fle,
And hare fro grohund As for ther diffence,

[Fol. 31 *b*] so that Paynims, Turks, and Syrians flee fast to their ships, hard pressed by Uriens.

[1] MS. "aman." [2] MS. "nyght."

So fleyng thay vnto thar naue.
Vriens which had to tham enmyte
As for to dyſtroy the fariſins all,
Smote vppon thaim As vppon curres fhal.[1]

Uriens determines to rest awhile in the tents of the conquered foes; but, before long, come a troop of Cyprians,

Ther by[2] vryens And curtois Guy
Were flayn of paynymes the myghtieſt.
Vriens in ther tentes thought long furely,
Thens thought not go, but ther take to reſte,
Sin vppon paynyms had he ſuch conqueſte.
Ther ne taryed he noght ouer[3] long,
That the Cipriens cam beſily ſtrong

who beseech him to visit the king, as the king cannot visit him, being so sorely wounded.

Off the kinges part to hym ſend, and come,
Beſechyng tham com to the cite,
Off frendlyhed the way to hym nome,
For vnto tham come certes myght not he;
For vnnethes myght ſpeche on hym be,
Strayned *with* ſekneſſe ſuch wyſe was tho,
Wounded and hurt *with* hys enemyes ſoo.

He answers that he will come gladly. Uriens and his brother dight themselves freshly in noble array, and set off.

When vriens was thaim vnderſtandyng,
he Anſwerd thaim ryght ful curtoiſſly,
That gladly wold he Approche that hy kyng.
In noble Aray greithed thaim freſhly
Vryens And hys brother in company,
Towardes the kyng whent thai forth Anon;
Moche went Cipryan, beholdyng the perſon

[Fol. 32.] Many a Cyprian, seeing Uriens' face, said that he would conquer all lands by his appearance.

Off vriens, which he ſaw moche, large, And grett,
Ther ſeing he had A ful ſtrange uiſage
In horrible wyſe, As he went by ſtrett,
Euery man bleſſed, ſayng in ther paſſage,
That neuer ſuch a man[4] ſaw *in* al ther age;

[1] "ſmal" (?)
[2] MS. "Therby."
[3] MS. "oure."
[4] MS. "aman."

"By reſon," ſaid, "he ſhuld do conquere[1]
All landes *with* hys ſemblant and chere;

NOn shold to fight[2] hym attende ne bide,
Which fro hym may Any wyfe diffende;
ho, lord god, ho? noght A geaunt no tide!
I you enfure, meruelus is to attende!"
At the gret paleis gan thay to diffende;
On grice went vp, the kyng on bed thay founde,
Hys noſe, hys mouth bolned gret that ſtounde,

for that none would dare to stand against him. On arriving, they ascend the palace steps, and find the king's nose and mouth swollen,

With toxicat uenym replete was certain;
hym ther complaynyng and ful fore bement.
humbly vriens falute thys ſouerain,
Thys kyng which *in* body this poiſon hent;
Anon hys ſaluz yild forthwith ther preſent,
Sayng, "ye haue me feruyd nobilly,
And to me ye haue done gret curteſy;

and the king replete with venom. Uriens salutes him humbly, who returns his salutation, and great thanks also.

NEuer in my lyf no ſuch ne had."
Thes wordes outred the kyng of Cipriens,
After demaundyng vriens ful ſad,
"What be ye? what is your name *þis* preſentens?"
"Worſhipful kyng, men cal me vriens;
Off luſignen am naturally grow,
I wyll that my name to all men ben know."

The king further demands Uriens' name, who answers that he is Uriens of Lusignen.

"IN faith," ſayd the kyng, "of it am I glad
That dreſſyd and come ye be to thys place,
And that your wyll were truly to be hade.
Swet frende, I fele mortal dethe me brace,
Neuer After thys comforth to purchace
Off ſurgery-craft ne with medicine,
For ſtuffed I am ful of uenyme,

[Fol. 32 *b*.] The king is glad to see him, but tells him that he feels he is incurably wounded, being stuffed full of venom;

[1] MS. "comquere." [2] MS. "fight."

wherefore he beſought him to please to condescend to accept his gift, which Uriens does.

Whereof helth neuer ſhal I not conquere,
But of my days ſhortly to make end;
Wherefor you beſ[e]che *with* me accorde here
That to my gift you pleaſe to condiſcend,
Whereby noght ſhal leſe, vriens, gud frend;
honour ſhal ye haue, worſhip, and profite."
Vriens graunted hym *with*out reſpite,

The king thanks him for his assent, and sends for his barons and his daughter Ermynee.

That hys commaundement wold he do gladly,
Agre and Accorde hys fayd gyft vnto;
The kyng hym thanked, And fayd full humbly,
"Thys is wel fayd, and the more gladder, loo!
I ſhal mortal deth take;" commaundyng thoo
That Al the Barons After ſend ſhold be,
And hys fayr doughter the ſwet Ermyne.

He tells his barons he expects not to live longer, and that he wills to leave his kingdom to his daughter,

To hys barons ſaid, "now ye vnderſtande,
More longer liff noght in me attend;
lenger may not liue here *with* you in lande,
My noble Rewme Cipreſſe; now ſay you at end,
Whom, to my power, haue warded and diffend
Ffro paynymes at point of ſwerdes cru[e]lte,
Now it wyll I leue my doughter Ermyne,

[Fol. 33.]
she being the true heir. The barons thereupon do homage to his daughter; and the king adds,

IN me noght had no poynt of medicin;
For therof ſhe is enheritour of ryght."
Thai ſayng hym *with* contenance good and fin,
That gladly wold do hys pleſire eche wyght.[1]
Ther homage made to hir do in ſight,
So takyng of hir ther landes and fe.
Then toke to ſpeke this noble kinge fre;

that his subjects cannot be defended by a simple woman against

"The barons All here me vnderſtande,
ye warde And kepte truly may noght be
By ſimple woman gayn Sariſins hande;

[1] MS. "wyight."

your neighbours thay ben wonder ny to fe ; such cruel neighbours as the Saracens;
Such fers ftoures of huge cruelte
As off Armes bere, ne the fharpe fhoures ;
Here Auifed haue to you good focoures.

Uppon thys dede here I haue deuifed that Uriens is puisant and mighty, and has discomfited the sultan, as they all saw for themselves;
That vriens is pufant and myghty,
Off lufignen uaillantly franchifed,
Which that the Soudan difcomfith manly,
And hys men gan fle by dedes Army,
By the huge proweffe off hys body ftrong ;
Off thys knewlych non hath by mene of tonge ;

What demaunde or afke here of hym now and that he therefore asks them to beseech Uriens to grant him all his request; which the barons at once accede to.
wold,
To pray hym I you here befeche hertly,
That he me noght wern, but my requefte hold."
Thay hym befought and prayed fwetly ;
To ther requeft Acorded he humbly ;
To the kyng reportyd thay that he wold do
What-fomeuer he wold hym demAunde, lo !

THeroff was the kyng Full ioyous And glade, [Fol. 33 *b*.]
To vriens faid, "me requeft hir ye, The king is glad thereof, and tells Uriens that he wishes to ask nothing of him, but to confer on him something of his own,
And here perdon me of my wordes hade,
For nothyng wil ne of you for to gyf me,
Off youres nothing fall demaunded be ;
But you wil I gif gentilly, fire, of myne
Thys Rewme *with* all enheritaunce fyne,

With my fair doughter in franke mariage ; namely, his kingdom and his daughter. The barons are of the same mind.
For other haue non difcended of my lyne.
you befech to take here thys fair Image."
When the Barons knew to that wold *in*elyne,
Strongly ioyed all off that difcipline,
Ther loue to vriens ftrongly gan draw,
For the gret goodneffe that thay on hym faw.

Uriens thanks the king, and says he would not take the gift if he saw in the king any respite from death.

Uriens the king full well underſtode,
A lytell muſed, after gan Anſwere;
"I thanke you hertly, gracyous lord goode,
Off that ye me haue don ſuch honour here;
But iff reſpite of deth *in* you ſaw were,
Full litill or noght wold I your gifte preiſe;
But, lord, ſyn it doth your hert ſo to pleiſe,

The marriage is performed; and, as the priest was raising the host at the mass, the king yielded up his soul.

Syn your will it is, Full wele lyketh me;
Wherfor ſhold I, lo! lenger it delay?"
Thys mariage don plefantly to fee,
And ryght As the preſte reiſed god *þat* day
Off the holy maſſe, *þat* þe preſte gan ſay
Where thys ſike kyng lay in ſuch maner wiſe,
yild vpp hys good ſoule in-to paradiſe,

[Fol. 34.]

Their great joy is thus turned into wo. The bride's heart is "locked up" with heaviness.

Where our lorde will reſceyue hym of hys grace,
And off all hys ſyn yeuyng hym pardon;
For I witneſſe you And ſay in thys place,
That he was A trew catholike perſon.
Ther gret ioy changed in-to wo Anon,
full dolorous was tho the eſpouſe,
With heuyneſſe loke was hir good hert fre.

The king is buried royally; and there were therefore no plays or tournaments at the wedding,

The kyng After entered was goodly;
long taried noght or put were on graue,
hys obſequie don ryght worſhipfully,
And, to ſay the ſoth, As reſon wold craue;
For A kyng ſhold roiall obſeque haue.
That time noght had pleys ne tornement,
For the gret dolour whych for the kyng hent,

which was, nevertheless, honestly done. No blame attached to those

Which At mortall deth was ther preſently.
But not-withſtandyng honeſtly was don
The mariage And weddyng greabilly;
Blame ne reproche certes nedith non

Tho melled of thes dede paſſed and gon ; who were busy about that matter;
So wyll was this thing At poynt don þat day,
At which time ther was full noble array

Appertaynyng wel to A kinges dede. for many nobles, knights, ladies, damsels, and squires, honoured the marriage feast, and danced thereat.
At thys mariage was nobles ful many,
Of fondry townes peple in that ſtede,
knightes, laydes, damycelles worthy,
yonge Squiers, And maydens goodly,
Where-*with* thys ſaid feſte gretly gan honour,
Which ther daunced At that tyme and hour.

[Fol. 34 *b*]
Ryght[1] thus the peple merily ioyng Thus joyed the people on account of the good rule of those two, viz., of the bride and Uriens.
As off the good rule noyſed of thaim to,
Of the eſpouſe full noble gouernyng,
And of the good lordes renomyng alſo.
Anon was ſhe made vnto bedde go,
For vriens wold in no wyſe tary,
With hir went to bedde As man ful haſtly.

IN that night Greffon ther engendred was, Their firstborn was named Greffon, who conquered many countries, including Colchis,
Off whom I ſhall declare, outre, and ſay ;
Which in payny conquered hye And bas,
Gret ſeignories And contrees that day,
And of Colcis quitte the contre Alway,
Where playnly no man *in* no wife paſſe myght.
Many meruelles of trought cam ther ryght,

EVery moneth twenty And mo. where was an isle, in which the golden fleece was gained by Jason, with the aid of Medea.
An Ile was ther had full fair to deuiſe,
Wheron conquered was the flees tho,
Which conqueſte was made by medee auiſe,[2]
By Iaſon Away it bering ſuch wife.
he it conquered by the hy prudence
Off medee the fair, And by hir ſcience ;

[1] In the margin, [*Vr*]*yen kyng of* [*Cip*]*re by ermyne* [*hy*]*s wyf hathe a boy* [*cal*]*led gryffon.*

[2] MS. "medecauiſe."

It would take up too much time to tell all that story. I should then be going aside from the matter in hand.

FVll long tyme wold be it to rehers here.
ho in-to thys boke thys mater draw wold,
The meruailles huge had *in* that ille there,
A thoufand ther hau[e] fall, come, and unfold;
A thoufand fayn, A thoufand tymes told,
As wele opin plain As faid by ftraitneffe;
Out of my mater iffue fhold expreffe.

[Fol. 35.] Greffon was quick and ready in war, and conquered many places. At last he came to Tripoli (?),

OFf thys Ile to fpeke thys tyme fhall I refte,
And vnto Greffon retorn here me fhall.
Greffon with fwerdes fors was redy and prefte,
Off maree the prince, chef, And principall;
After the porte yaffe, conquered he all.
So Aboute went purfchaffing dayly,
That the uaillant Cite of Triple cam by;

which he assailed and took. Thus he acquired laud, honour, and praise.

BI hys huge proweffe went it to affaill
In ryght werly wyfe, For manly was in brefte,
That both his penon And baner fanfaill
Put within the town, fo making conqueſte.
Neuer At no day taried ne refte,
That he [ne] went by land And by ffee,
laude, honour, preifing fo conquered he.

Uriens is crowned king of Cyprus. His wife's uncle is king of Armenia.

OFf hym we fhall refte And tary now,
And to our purpos here retorn fhall we
Off vriens, kyng which is full know,
And crounyd lorde of Cipreffe was he.
Vncle[1] to hys wif, the king of hermyne;
When hir Fader in lif was being,
Brother to hym was of hermyne the kyng.

This king of Armenia dies, to

THys full noble kyng of Arminiens
In his days was man of grett goodneffe,

[1] In the margin, *kynge of hermy*[*ne*] *vnkull to vriens, brother to her fa*[*ther.*]

But Ay myght not be in liffes exiftence ; the great sorrow of his subjects, many of whom died of grief.
Tho feble and ftronge dethe takyth expreffe.
Ther ware hys peple full of heuyneffe,
With that forow had many mortalite,
For whyle he regned, well ruled the contre.

[Fol 35 b.]
His daughter was his only heir; wherefore the Armenians send to Cyprus, requesting Uriens to send them his brother Guy,
A douhter he had gentile And full fayr,
A more gentelere was ther non then fhe,
Off hym difcended was non other hayir.
A concell ther hold off the hermyns fre
That thay wold fend to cipreffe contre,
Requiring the kyng that hys brother Guy
Sol[d] fend in-to ther region only,

who should have the damsel, Flourie, to wife. The messengers come to Cyprus.
And[1] he fhold haue that gentile damycell
To hys wedded wife, flourye the fair.
Thay thys ordinaunce Amonge thaim held ful wele ;
To Cipreffe cam thes meffyngers debonair,
Without tarying or Any retrair
Vn-to the kyng declaryng ther meffage,
For euery off thaim was full wyfe And fage.

Uriens takes counsel with his barons, and they agree that Guy should be sent at once.
With full gret ioy refceyued thaim the kynge,
And tham fefted wonder nobilly.
When thes nouelles vriens knowyng
Off the fayr debonair, the gentile floury,
Off hys barons toke concell haftily.
Thay All accorded[2] And to hym thay faid,
That hys brother ihold fend with þam þat braid.

Guy agrees to the proposal, takes ship, and arrives at Armenia.
That thys thyng were done hafted he bigly ;
Guye after fend, Accorded All ther-to
That which vriens commaunded hym only.
Into ffe thay went with moche peple tho,

[1] MS. "AAnd." [2] MS. "occorded."

Off Armes doubty, noble, And gentile, lo !
Ariued thai were In hermeny,
Wher enherite fhold the full fair floury.

[Fol. 36.] Disembarking, he soon meets some lords, who receive him gladly; and marries Flourie,

AT erthe difcended, fo thay forth going,
lordys of contre contring thaim Again,
With A wilfull hert full gentilly refceyuyng,
And ioyufly brought forth thys fouerayn.
Off hys comyng gret ioy had fertayn,
All the eftates made hym full gret fefte;
he maried floure *with*out other refte,[1]

and is king of the country: so that two brothers are once more kings of Armenia and of Cyprus.

The king After was of all the contre,
Thes to Rewmes put As thay beforn were.
To brethers Aforn of trouth had it be,
So ben thay now in to brothers powere,
By fader and moder, in like manere.
Thes kynges to regned, As it is fayd,
And ther tyme ftrongly gan thay aid

The two kings aided those who were descended from them, and the people of Rhodes too. They had many children,

To tho which of thaim difcended were;
As I underftande, tho of rodes to,
That in mifchef ye know, And uifite there.
Full many children had thes brethers tho,
Which leuid till thay were large woxen, lo !
Many fair dedes *in* ther tyme thay wrought,
That fele paynymes to difcomfiture brought.

and ruled well, trampling under foot those who annoyed them. I will now turn to Raymond and Melusine.

After diceffe of ther fader good,
Which vnto tham both gentill fader was,
Ther Rewmes ruled well while in lif ftood,
And ther noyours underfote put bas.
Fro thaim to ther fader torn wyll by grace,
As vnto Raymounde And fair melufigne,
Ther noble moder with all honour dygne.

[1] In the margin, *Guy maryd flou*[*re*] *kynge of hermy*[*ne*] *dogter, & ys ky*[*ng*] *hymfelf.*

When that thay hurde the nouelles And tiding [Fol. 36 b.]
Off ther fones too, goode, fair, and gentill, When these heard of the success of their two sons,
how conquered had to gret Rewmes hauyng ; they said the 7 Psalms to the
Wherefor thay fayd the fept pfabulmes until King of Glory,
The kyng of glorie, enpreiſing *with* vos fhill,
By whom thai haue had the huge victory,
And conquered ther foes many ;

And that in ſo gret honoures put be because each of them was called a king. Moreover Melusine, for her soul's health,
That Ayther of thaim claymed is A kyng,
And of fogettes loued in eche degre,
Then was ſhe fette in defy[r]ing
Our lord for to ſerue, hertly hym thankyng.
Thys noble lady called Meluſine,
As for the helth of hir foule deuine,

Thys fair Meluſine, *with*out tarying, built a minster to Our Lady, and founded also many other churches.
Of our lady A minſtre fourged ſhe
Which was ful fair, gladſom in ſeing ;
hit edefied Meluſine the fre,
And full richely it founded to ſe ;
Thorough All peiters, by hir owne deuyſe,
Many churches founded *in* glorious wyſſe.

TO euery place yaff ſhe gyftes grett. Next she married her son Oede to the earl's fair daughter. Raynold and Anthony set out from Lusignan.
Affter Oede hir ſon gan ſhe to marie
The fair doughter, of the noble Erle gett.
For foth Raynold, whych had but on eye,
Full gret, thikke, And fers wax he wonderly ;
Anthonye And he parted luſignen fro,
For peple went thens when dined had tho.

FOr Anthony was ayne and eldeſte, [Fol. 37]
Towardes Brehain toke he the ſtreight way, They soon came to Luxemburg,
Till that luxemborugh Approched ful preſte,
A famous town of gret renon that day.

which was then being besieged by the king of Alsace,

Beforn whom many A penon gan difplay,
The king of Aufoy it befegied had,
Almofte it toke, *with*in thay fore Adred.

who had nearly taken the town. They asked the cause of the war, and find that it was for the duke's daughter, an orphan,

When thes brethren to in feld comyn were,
The town vnnethes gayn Aufoys myght hold;
Ther Aither of tham had hurt[1] the manere,
Wherefor thaim werred thys myghty kyng bold;
For A mayden it was that haue wold,
That *with*in the towne was gentil, curteys, & faire,
Doughter of A duke,[2] Orphelyne debonair.

whom the king of Alsace wished to marry forcibly. The brethren defy the king by a herald,

BI ftrenght to wife haue wold hir the kyng,
Remeue wold he noght thys faid Cite fro
Til the dukes doughter he were hauyng.
But Anon cam A-place thes bretherin to,
Which *with* thaim brought A wonder huge hoft tho,
Vnto thys faid kyng fend thay diffiance,
By An heraude of theres that inftance.

whereof the king is glad, as he is fierce and cruel. From afar the brethren perceived the host, armed with knives and halberds.

Wherof the king was ioyus And glad,
For he was lufti, yonge, fers, and cruell;
A-ferrome thay perceyued the ftrenght had,
Seing the baneres with the wynde ful wel,
Which blew thaim A-lofte *with* many A penfell,
Of Army peple feing grett fufon,
With Cuftiles And Gifarmes manyon;

[Fol. 37 b.] The Lusignans attack the foes boldly, so that the

Then thay ftafte thaim, putt in-to ordinance,
Goyng to fmyte ther enemies uppon,
huge noyfe and crye Affembled that inftance.
The lufignens went, fafte crying tham on;

[1] "hurd" (?)

[2] MS. "guke."

To-geders dreuing cam *with* gret randon,
And when thay cam the Aſſemble to,
The erth made thay to tremble and quake tho.

earth trembles at their encounter.

Ther entre-fembling don wonder ferſly ;
A gret Abaſhment was it tho being ;
Aufoys peityuyns aſſailing bigly,
Peiteuyns vppon Aufoys faſte knakking,
Manyon ther ſlayn, mortally deyng ;
Ayen luſignens crying[1] were Ful faſte,
"Theffes Aufoys ! byde our fwerdes taſte,

The men of Alsace assail the Poitevins, who hammer at them in return. The Lusignans bid their foes abide the taſte of their swords.

FOr eſcape no wyfe mow ne ſhal ye noght !"
Ther army dedes the peiteuyns gan do,
Fro fele bodies pertid the foule in brought.
Then thes brethren, ech by thaim-self, tho,
So ful werrely wrought, can noght be ſaid, lo !
Off o ſide and other ſo departed there,
That the peiteuyns Aufoys gan conquere.

The two brethren, each by himself, behave in so warlike a manner, that their men are the victors.

ANthony the kyng toke with handes to,
In his hand he femyd hym no-thyng,
hym wold he haue ſlayn, but he yilde hym tho,
A-non hys fwerd forth-*with* preſenting.
When Anthony faw to hym ſo yilding,
he hym reſceyued And his fwerd gan take ;
And tho the Aufoys gret flight gan to make ;

In Anthony's hands the king "seemed nothing." Anthony receives his sword in token of submission.

[Fol. 38.]

But peyteuyns Full ny gan thaim to few,
And Raynold ſtrongly full faſte gan to ſight,
Many ther were ſlayn And fele gan ſubdew,
The Aufoys takyng all And ſlayn don-right.
Raynold was full ſage, And wel taught perfight,
In like wyfe was hys brother Anthony,
Full gentill And connyng vnto mannys eye.

The Poitevins pursue the men of Alsace till they are all taken and slain.

[1] MS. "cryng," *e* being mis-written for *c*, and *i* omitted.

Anthony and Raynold take their ease in their tents, and send six knights, with the captive king, to the fair maiden.

Where that day thay toke to eafe thaim furely
As for ther repare in the tentes and place.
In-to the town After fend quikly
To fe if thay were reioed in thys cace ;
knightes fixe made go vnto the good grace
Off thys fair mayden, hire to prefent the kyng,
Ther thens departyd, lenger noght byding ;

The fair creature inquires who are the two noble lords who have thus come to her assistance.

The kyng prefented to thys fair creature,
vnto do *with* hym at hir owne plefance.
Then thys fayr mayden, frefh fhappe of figure,
Which was full gentile, Fair, fwet of femblance,
And to tho faid which had hir in gouernance,
" Fro whens comith this noble lordes thys hour,
That me thys day han don fo gret honour ? "

An aged knight tells her they are the "sons of Lusignan;" and that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

" MAdame," faid on which was an Aged knight,
" With A herty will ye fhal know gladly ;
Thes bene the fones of lufignen ryght ;
Men thaim fo name, certes, by ther cry,
That on of thaim is called Anthony,
And that other hath vnto name Raynold,
To full myghty men, manly And full bolde."

[Fol. 38 *b.*] She is very grateful for their services, and expresses a wish to counsel with them ere they go.

Thys Fair mayden faid, "god off his mercy
Off ther focour tham thanke for hys hy
pufance,
For me haue thay don dedes Full worthy.
What fo I haue fhall be to ther plefance,
For ther confell wrought and good gouernance,
With tham fhall I concell, er thay goo,
Off all thyngis that I haue to do."

She tells her council she shall invite the brethren and their host into the town.

Then fhe ther demaunded hir concell ;
After commaundyng thes brethren come
hir to,
lenger myght not fhe it withold well,

And with ther hofte fhall[1] come loge alfo,
In thys faid towne ther herbigage haue tho,
And in efpeciall the Barons mofte hy.
hyr peple faid, "it fhal bene done truly."

THOward thes brethren went thay forth anon,
Within the tentes merily tham founde,
In place where was the kyngys pauilon
For time that the fege was hold *in* þat ground.
Ther founde thay I-now of goodes þat ftounde,
But of it thay wold take ryght no-thyng,
But to men off armes All was yeuyng.

The messengers find the brethren in the king's pavilion, where they had found much treasure and had distributed it among the soldiers.

WHat-fomeuer thing in that place was founde,
Fyrfte gaf to tho gret, After fmal vnto.
When fro luxemborugh where come þat ftounde
Thes meffengers Ful Apertly tho,
Ther meffage fagely And wightly gan do
To thes to brethren off full huge proweffe
Fro the part off thys lady And meftreffe.[2]

When the messengers from Luxemburg had arrived at the pavilion, they delivered their message to the two brethren,

THes[3] brethren to refceyued tham humbly,
Ryght fo As thay k[n]ew full wel for to do.
When thes meffyngers vnderftod uerily
All thare Anfwer, no lenger taried tho,
That of thes knightes fife hundred and mo
Went thaim to loge there, were noght dangerous,
knowing that ther was al thyng plenteuous.

[Fol. 39.] who received them humbly. The messengers receive their answer, and at once 500 knights set out to lodge within the town.

THe hoftes marfchall lefte thai þat inftance,
Ther forigers[4] A-forn gan to fend
For ther hoftes to make ordinance,

The brethren leave their "marshals" with the main army, and send their foragers on before them.

[1] MS. "fholl."

[2] At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Thes brethren to refceyued."

[3] MS. "Thyes."

[4] MS. "forigers."

Every place and cross-way are filled with people.

Of whome the Inſtrumentes founded at end,
Off luxemborught entre moche to commende;
No place ther had, neither carfoukes non,
But peple fhold fe ther come many one,

The nobles of the city convey the brethren to the castle. The maiden arrives thither; her name is Christian.

TO the founde that thes inſtrumentes gan make;
The nobles and gentiles comyng thaim agayne.
Tho moſte worthieſt thes brethren gan take,
Vnto the caſtel conueing thaim certayn.
To thys aſſemble peple cam ful fayn,
Where appered thys criſtin creature,
Whiche criſtian was named, be ye ſure.

She is accompanied by many ladies, both married and maiden, who receive the brethren nobly.

Ther Acompanied was ſhe noght ill
Of laides had ful gret company,
With noble damyſelles longing hir until,
Als of tho maried As of maidens many.
Thai thes brethren reſceyued nobilly,
And ful fagely ryght ſo As thay ſhold,
Ther vitail redy As to pleſire haue wold,

[Fol. 39 *b.*]
A feast is provided; they wash their hands, and sit in order; the king of Alsace highest, Anthony next, and Raynold and three barons next.

With-out taryng to waſh ther handes went;
After went to ſitte ther ceriatly.
Sche made thaim ther A ful fayr ſight to hent,
The kyng of Auſoy ſette was he moſte hy;
After the brother to Raynold, Anthony,
After thre gret barouns of the ſame place,
Enmyddes tham Raynold ther ſette wace.

A more "honest" feast was never seen. After dinner they washed their hands; and, grace being said,

Ther tho had was An excellent feſte,
A more honeſter neuer ſayn *with* eye,
Of vitail and als wines of the beſt;
The peiteuyns were at eaſe merily.
When dined thay had, ther handes waſh clenly;
The tables rayſed After tho anon,
And graces ſaide with gret deuocion,

The kyng of Aufoys to thes brethren to
Said, "I am your prefoner thys inftance,
In your handes take at thys iournay, lo !
I you here befech to make ordinance,
In fuch wyfe I may be put to finance."
Anthony hym faid in fayr, "lord and knight,
Our prefoner be ye noght of right ;

the king said to the two brethren, "I am your prisoner, and ask to be put to ransom."

HEre haue we done And fhewid curteffy,
Where to wrongoufly uillanous ye doo,
To thys noble damicel and lady.
Owr dedes we haue put now hir vnto,
your body we haue yeuyn hir alfo ;
Now by hir mofte be all the ordinance,
Other-wyfe ryght noght but to hir plefance.

Anthony replies that they have been as courteous as he has been villanous, and that they now put his body in the lady's power,

IN hir ftandeth all your deliuerance,
Or elles your deth without doubt Any "—
(When the kyng it hurd, in hert had noifance)—
"for that ye haue hir noyed wekkidly."
Forfoth tho anon fpake thys fayr lady,
(Neuer concelled by mannys langage,
For fhe was well thaught, inly wife and fage),

[Fol. 40.] because he had annoyed her wickedly. But the fair lady at once, without any prompting,

"MI lordes," fhe faid, "I thank you hertly
Of honour and feruice that ye haue me do ;
But by my feith As to that dede furely
Off kyng Aufoys, I wyll not ordayn, lo !
he is yours, I leue hym you vnto ;
here all that I haue you[1] gyf you thys day,
For you to guerdon[2] certes can ne may,

returns thanks to the two lords, and says in return that she leaves the king at their disposal, as she could not "guerdon" them

And hepes of gold had in trefory,
That which ye haue yufterday me do,
By your gracious noble chiualry.

if she had heaps of gold. The king's

[1] "I" (?) [2] MS. "gruerdon."

life and death are therefore in their power.

In you lyth hys lif, And his deth alfo.
No other thyng fhal I do ther-to ;
So to your goodneffe am I bounde & hold."
hir wordes hurde Antony and Raynolde,

They answer, "If so, he shall have a quit-claim of us, provided he kneel down here debonairly, and cry you mercy.

Thai hir anfwering, "fin ye wyll do fo,
Of vs fhal he haue A quite-clayme fully,
With-that he Amend that he hath mifdo.
Then here fhall he knele ful debonerly,
here Aforn vs al, eriing you mercy
Of trefpas and wronges he hath done here ;
And vppon hys feith truly you to fwere

[Fol. 40 *b.*] and swear he will never do you annoyance, disturbance, or damage. The fair maiden sweetly consents.

That neuer you il after thys fhal doo,
No noifance, diftourbance, neither demage ;
Surete And hoftage fhall you take vnto."
Thys fair maden faid with full fwet langage,
"Ryght As ye haue faid, it pleafith my corage ;
Vnto you I wyll Agre in all thyng,
As ye wyll, fo wyll I, by confenting."

The king is full glad, and cries mercy at once. She accordingly consents to his freedom.

The kyng was full glad, ioyng merily,
For he trowed wel exiled to be.
To thys lady went, cryng hir mercy,
lyke-wyfe As was faid by Anthony fre.
Thys womanly thyng ther refceyued fhe,
Ryght As it pleafid ther thys brethren to,
She Accordid in femble wyfe tho.

The king next cries with a loud voice, that he should be glad to have such chivalrous men for neighbours.

When the kyng had made hys othe & fwrete,
Then ful lowde he fpake And ful hautaynly,
And fayd the Barons, "ful glad mow ye[1] be
yif fuch a neighbour puruely myght I
As on of you to to haue uerily,
Which bene fo chiualrous in your doing,
And which for to do is preifable thyng.

[1] "myght I" (?)

SEith here now thys plefant debonair
Gentile Criftian, thys nobyle ducheffe,
Which holdeth contrees and rentes fair!
Anthony, me hire befech your hineffe,
ye don haue gret curtefy and gentilneffe,
Hit is gret refon ye were fatefied
Off your ful good will don And Applied.

and he bids Anthony look on the pleasant Christian, this duchess, with fair rents, and consider that it is reasonable that he should be repaid for his kindness.

I fay thys to ende that it myght be wrought
As that we App[r]oche that I thenke fully,
Ryght noble Barons, fin wel I haue thought,[1]
To my femyng, Criftian might mary
As to be yeuen vnto Antoni.
A man no better myght hit employ nay-where,
For this knight is A worthi baculere."[2]

[Fol. 41.] He thinks that Christian might be given to Anthony, as he is so worthy a bachelor.

Off luxembrough the Barons and eche lord,
Thay fayng, "ful wel here hath faid the kyng."
All Agreable fete in one Accorde,
To thys werke the kyng was thaim there faing.
The mariage had w*ith* all the weddyng,[3]
Which endured eight days plenerly,
Ther had iouftes and tornementes myghty.

The barons and lords of Luxemburg applaud him; and the marriage-feast is held, and lasted for eight days.

There ioufted tho ful nobilly the kyng.
At eight days ende finifhed the fefte,
Then euery man redy fafte haftyng
To go And leue take of tho femyng beft.
Anon ther cam, w*ith*out bode or refte,
A meffenger, ftreight faft As he myght goo,
Which longing was the king of Brehayne to.

The feast ended, every man is about to take leave, when a messenger arrives from the king of Brehayne,

[1] MS. "thoiught." [2] MS. "baiulere."

[3] In the margin, *Antony ys* [*duke*] *of luxenb*[*ourgh*] *by marry*-[*ing*] *Cryftyne, eyr yeref.*

with a letter to the king of Alsace. Having read the letter, he begins to sigh and weep tenderly; and, being asked the reason,

TO the kyng of Aufoys lettres he brought.
Anon the gate opened hym vnto,
Forth-*with* þe kyng brake thes ſtrange lettres wrought.
As ſone As he had radde thes letters tho,
There gan he to ſigh and ſowghid for wo,
And Als for to wepe ryght ful tenderly;
Then thes brethren to demaunded for why

[Fol. 41 *b.*] says he has had hard news; that the Saracens have besieged a town in Brehayne, and that he pities the king his brother.

That he weped ſo, And wat tydinges he hade.
Vnto tham he ſayd, "reſte wil noght to tell;
Full ill me is come, hard nouelles and ſad;[1]
Befegyd haue the faryſins cruell
In Brehayne *with* the tirauny fell.
Off my brother kyng haue I gret pete,
Which fore diſpleaſith and hurteth foule me.

Anthony listens to his appeal, and bids him not be discomforted; for that he will send his brother aid;

FOr your lordys ſake, take therof pete,
And if it you pleaſe to hys ſocour goo,
I thynke it deſerue atwixſt you and me."
When Anthony underſtode hys wordes tho,
Full goodly he ſaid thys hy kyng vnto,
"Sir," he ſayd, "for thys be not diſcomfort;
My brother you ful wel ſhal recomfort.

and that Raynold should go and slay the Saracens. The king hereupon pledges his life that Raynold shall marry his niece;

FOr certes Raynold my brother ſhal go,
My good knightes *with* hym ſhal he bring,
And your brother put Away fro wo,
Ther many Sariſins ſhal be deing."
"I thanke you hertly," to hym ſayd the kyng;
"I Afferme And plegge here vppon my life,
My brothe[r]s doughter ſhal he haue to wyfe;

Raynold ſhal ſo enploed be and fette,
Then in your brother better may noght be;
So god me ayde, he ſhal hir haue *with*out lette

[1] MS. "ſayd."

After my brother, kyng of hy degre;
And he ſhal goueme noble Brehayne;
For non other hoir hath non my brother,
But only hir; ne may haue non other."

and, after his brother's death, succeed as king of Brehayne; as his brother had no heir but this one daughter.

When Antony vnderſtode thys nouell,
Which was ful fayr and inly gracyous,
To the kyng he ſaid hautaynly and wel,
"Go hens, ye noble king vertuous,
your hoſte Aſſemble *with* peple plenteuous,
Al your ful hoſte vnto *þat* place bryng,
Within thys Auynſime[1] be ye retornyng.

[Fol. 42.] Anthony bids the king go and assemble his army, and return again to Luxemburg within a fortnight;

MI peple ye ſhall finden al redy,
Noght ouer ferre, but ny by ſhall ye;
Raynold my brother to you ſhal come truly,
In *pro*pre perſone me ther ſhal ye fee."
The king hym thanked goodly As myght be,
Fro thens dep*ar*ted he ful haſtly tho,
hys peple to Aſſemble faſt gan to go.

for there should Raynold meet him. He himself also (Anthony) would appear there. The king hastily departs,

AND when Aſſembled hys peple hade,
Then forth-*with* As ſone As he goodly myght,
To luxemborugh A retorn he made,
And then to that place came hys peple raid ryght,
A noble Baronage hauyng ther to fight;
Then he made to come A meſſengere
Fro king Aufoys to Anthony there;

and soon returns to Luxemburg with all his people. He next sends a messenger to Anthony

Which ther cam tho in ful noble aray,
With A ſhil vois ſaid to duke Anthony,
"Sir, I pray your lord you ſalute thys day;
The king of Aufoy And hys company

to say that he was all ready to go to Brehayne, and that his hosts

[1] See note.

were beneath the town in the fields.

here comith to go to Brehayne haftly ;
By-nethes ar thai in the fayr medew,
With ful noble company hym to few."

[Fol. 42 *b*.] Duke Anthony says he is welcome; and tells Raynold that the king of Alsace is come, and he must find his army good lodging,

The duke hym fayd, "welcom fhall he be."
Raynold forth he fend, mofte no lenger byde.
Raynold cam Agayne, ther taried noght he ;
Sir Anthony fayd, "brother, goth thys tyde ;
Into thys faire medew forth moft ye glyde,
For ther is comyn king Aufoys roiall,
Makyng to loge hys peple gret And fmall,

and make them take their ease. Raymond obeys, and all is well provided.

His paulon piche vnto Auantage ;[1]
To that done was he inly fage and wyfe.
let tham take ther eafe after ther corage,
Then make the kyng come of hys hye emprife."
hys commaundement Raynol[d] gan Auife,
And it was wel don to hertis plefance,
The Aufoys loged wel *with* all circumftance.

The king departs to Luxemburg to see the duke. A great feast is made, the particulars of which I need not rehearse.

The kinge departed and for[2] thaim toke leue,
Towardes luxemborough thys faid duk went,
The town entred in, ther founde, in breue,
Gret feft thaim Among was to all entent ;
After at borde fet conuenyent.
Of ther diner and fayr leue here I fhal,
For hit nedith noght As to rehers All.

Anthony makes all ready to go to the aid of the king of Brehayne. The number of the two hosts was, in all, 30,000.

Anthony Anon made tho all redy,
Such peple As were ther in that contre,
he hauyng ther A noble company
As to aid the kyng tho of Brehaigne ;
Nombred thay were thirty thoufande fre,
Ther thes hoftes too full Affembled were,
And full gret honour to-geders can bere.

[1] MS. "A uantage." Fr. text, "dauantaige." [2] "fro" (?)

NOble felowfhip ther A man fhold fe ;
As moche peple the duke As had the kyng.
When that to-geders thay made aſſemble,
In euery parte the grounde faſte tremblyng.
But er that made fro thens departing,
Thys fayr Criſtian called Anthony,
Sayng, "you beſeche, foucrayn lord hy,

[Fol. 43.] The duke had as many men as the king. Ere the duke departs, the fair Christian calls him, and beseeches him

That it myght you pleaſe me do ſuch honoure
That ye the Armes wold fouchefafe to bere
Off luxemborugh ; noght put non houre
Other blaſon, you beſeche, to were."
"My fair fwet loue," Anthony gan Anfwere,
"Accorde fhal I noght your wyll ther-vnto,
But Another thyng for-fothe fhall I doo.

to wear the coat-of-arms of Luxemburg, and no other blazon. Anthony says he will not exactly do that, but proposes

IN whatſomeuer place, lo ! that we be,
The fhild fhal I bere of A lyon,
Vppon my armure, plenerly to ſe ;
That Armys wyl haue ; other wyl I non ;
For that when I was born thys wordle on,
A hurt of A lyon tho I gan to bere,
Vppon my Iawe ſtrongly appering there,

always to bear on his shield a lion, because that, when he was born into the world, he had on his jaw a mark like that made by a lion's claw;

Where-of the peple Abaſſhed was ſore.
Alſo your pleſire certes fhal I doo,
And fulfill your wyll days euer-more."
She ſaid, "I you thanke full hertyly, lo !
For yf the Aſure be put Away fro,
My hole Armys fhal ye bere ſurely,
Both youre armys And thes ſame only,

with this exception, he will do her pleasure. She thanks him, and says that, excepting the azure, he can bear both his own arms and hers,

Which ben Armes ryght full Aunc/ion."
Thes Armes he toke And tham gan to bere,
And ſo Aſſorted thaim ryght thys to gon.
Of this fair lady toke he his leue there,

[Fol. 43 b.] which were the old arms of Luxemburg. He accordingly assorts them, and takes his journey

to Brehayne at full speed.

Then fro ther logis thar[1] dreffyd tho were,
Towarde Brehaigne went thai faft dreuyng;
Euery Afore other went fleing,

Bavaria is passed, and Almaigne; and Brehayne is soon reached. I must now speak of the evil Paynims.

PAffyng fo Baueres And alfo Almayn,
Suche progreffe forth made ou*er* the contre,
By huge Iournays, ualey and montayn,
Till thay Approched the land of Brehaig*ne*.
At thar owne defyre ther made thay entre,
Now fhal I fay of paynymes the felons,
Which werred dayly thys fayd Brehaignons.

The king of Cracow was mighty and strong, and with his men made great war against the Brehaignons.

The king of Craquo[2] mighty And ftrong was,
Werryng ful bigly the Brehaignons thoo,
Withe hym Efclauons many had aplace,
So as[3] we haue founde i*n* old fcripture, lo!
For of that lande was lorde and fyre alfo.
To Brehaignons ful gret werre he made,
On A day he went, to fcarmifh[4] w*ith* thaim fad,

One day the king of Brehayne, whose name was Fedris, armed himself for a sally, and bade the gates be thrown open;

Afforne Brehaigne w*ith*out hodelneffe.
There hym perceyued the king of Brehaigne,
And ther thought difplay his baner expreffe,
Fedris, which held that Rewme And contre;
Armyng hym ryght fafte, taking his helme fre,
When w*ith* his armure coueryd he was,
Ther the gates made opon[5] And unbras;

[Fol. 44.] but the Saracens beat these free knights, overwhelming them with the number of their men.

FRo town iffued his peple And he;
Off noble peple had he full many.
And the Sarifins bete thes knightes fre,
Many ther cafte done And moche peple fly,
But fuch ftore was of Efclauons only,
That we can not put tham As in writing,
Off whom Brehaignons were ryght fore doubtyng.

[1] "thai" (?) [2] MS. "Traquo." [3] MS. "os."
[4] See Note. [5] *Sic* in MS.

Efclauons Brehaignons put fore Abake,
And tham fore chafed A-non to the ende.
But of luxemborught the duke on gan take,
He puttyng Away ther huge debate tende.
Off Brehaignons kyng to fyght[1] was bende,
With the Sarifins faught he in eche fide,
Which his peple had put Abake that tide.

These men drove back the Brehaignons, and chased them into the town. But the duke of Luxemburg came up, while the king of Brehaigne

But the kyng was noght put Abake only,
But he had ynow hys life to deffende,
Here And there cafte doun, fighting ful manly,
On all for-fnete, Another to grounde wende,
As A wyld boor deffendyd hym at ende.
Ryght As at bay ftode thys manly good knight,
Full fore were thay hurte whom he Approche myght.

was fighting for his life, like a wild boar at bay, smiting and casting down his foes.

But with A fhotte off A launcegay tho
Thys noble knyght[2] fmetyn thorugh hys body
Full felonefly And cruelly alfo,
That to mortal deth fill doun fodenly,
Fro body went the foule ful heuily ;
To our lord An hy commaunded was fhe,
For A worthy man certes was he.

But by a javelin this noble knight was smitten through the body and his soul was commended to God.

There vp ros the cry, As feith the fcripture,
The Brehaignons wo fore wepte for pite ;
Tho that myght, ther fled ; but farifins fure
Thay fued ny, attayning tho gan[3] fle.
There fwerdes gan take, fafte Aboute gan fle,
Ferfly on tham went whom þat myght attayn,
Full fafte caft thay doun, And many ther flayn.

[Fol. 44 *b*.]
The Brehaignons wept sore, and fled ; but the Saracens pursued, reaching soon the flying troop, and slaying them fiercely.

[1] MS. "fyght."
[2] MS. "kynght."
[3] MS. "gam."

The few who escaped came spurring to the town, and told the sad news; to the great grief of the slain king's fair daughter, Eglentine.

Wherof Brehaignons braid and cried,
And tho which might ther be efcaping
Vnto the town come fpored And hied,
Declaring thes nouelles of the kyng;
Wherof At hert had that gret noyng
The kynges doughter, named Eglentine,
Whome All good beute gan fair enlumyne.

The people ran fast back into the city for fear of the Saracens, when they saw their king dead. But the Saracens are overjoyed;

Eglentine, thys kinges doughter fre,
Off paynymes had gret fere And doubtance.
The peple ran to town And Cite,
The farifins moche doubted þat inftance,
When the kyng faw dede, whylom of pufance;
Wheroff the farifins had gret ioy tho,
Criftyng[1] ther were had be ended And doo.

and, making a great fire with bushes and wood, burnt the king's body before the gate. Those within cry and grind their teeth.

Tho A full gret fire thay tende made And hade,
With buffhes And wod makyng it full hy,
Ful ny to þe gate thys faid fire þat thai made,
Byforne hys peple the kyng brend truly.
Marred therof ben tho within Fully,
Crying And grinting fore with ther teeth tho,
But no remedy cowde thay fhap therto,

[Fol. 45.] But soon came Anthony, Raynold, and the king of Alsace towards Brehaigne, their basnets glittering like the bright sun.

For non other wyfe ther myght it noght be.
But tho cam Anthony And alfo Raynold,
Which to paynymes made fautes plente,
And of Aufoys the noble kyng hold.
To-Brehaigne-ward cam thes thre told,
Ther bufhinentes fayr refplendifing,
As the bryghty[2] fune light and fayr fhinyng.

The Brehaignons had great need of succour, and were

A noble thyng was to behold and fe
To-Brehaigne-ward forth fafte were paffyng,
Which gret nede had to focour and furete,

[1] Triftyng" (?)

[2] *Sic* in MS.

For gretly thai were thaim ouerpreſſing ; sore astonished, and defended themselves feebly.
The Brehaignons went out thaim Faſte truſſing,
Wheroff Brehaigne was Aſtoned fore,
And diffendyd thaim febly euermore.

Off thys Eglentyne had gret difcomforth, Eglentine would rather have been dead. She laments her father, and knows not what she, an orphan, will now do;
She had more leuer had mortalite.
"Als ! dede is," ſaid, "my fader, my comfort ;
Fader ne moder haue I noght, perde !
here bide And dwell moſt, orpheline to ſe.
What now willt thou don, woful Eglentine ?
To gret heuyneſſe off-fors moſte thou incline ;

For now I ſe here the deſtruccion for now she sees the destruction of all her realm. The country would be robbed, pillaged, and worse, by evil Saracens.
Off all my regyon And Rewme roial.
Als ! caytif ! what ſhalt thou now don ?
In what maner forme gouerne the now ſhall ?
Thy contre ſhalt ſe put in exile all,
Diſtroed, robbed, peled, and more wurſe,
By ille fariſins ; god gife thaim his curſe !

I wote nere wat to do, neither what to ſay, [Fol. 45 *b*.]
Ne I may noght to it ſhappe remedy ; She would have to deny our Lord, and believe in Saracen customs. Meanwhile they assailed the town furiously,
Me moſte here-After our lord to renay,
And in fariſine lau beleue fully !"
Thys complained Eglentine heuily ;
For fariſins ſtrong Aſſeilede faſte certain
The cite And town, And ſtrongly gan thaim payn

TO haue it, and take by aſſaute that hour. and thought to take it. But soon came a messenger secretly into the town unto the Brehaignons,
Such trowed it to dreſſe, which failled tho ;
For in lytell whyle, thorugh goddys labour,
Er that pay[ny]mes trowid it to do,
A meſſengere cam the Brehaignons vnto,
Entred brehaigne without tarying,
Ful coyly And preualy *with*in entring,

and bade them make another sally, and look out and see the king of Alsace approaching, with Anthony and Raynold;

Then efcried he ryght full hautanly,
"Now go ye forth, And well fhall it appere,
Which that will diffend thys cite truly.
Diffend you now well, fe your focour here,
Which comyng is you in ryght fwifte manere.
Se ye noght her of Aufoys come the kyng,
Anthony And Raynold *with* hym doth bryng?

and not to talk of death, for the Poitevins were at hand, so well nourished with meat and wine as to astonish the Paynims.

Moche ther comyng is you vnto focour,
Ne haue ye no worde deth vnto, fothleffe.
For the noble Duke Anthony of honour,
And raynold hys brother to this place thaim dreffe;
With thaim peyteuyns many bryng expreffe,
Which norifhed ben *with* good mete and wyne,
Paynyms thay will make to-ftonifte *in*cline.

[Fol. 46.] When the Barons of Brehaigne heard this, they praise God. Every man takes good heart, and the Saracens begin to quake,

The kyng of Aufoys thaim haue in company,
To focour And aid tho Af Brehaigne."
When the Barons it vnderftode truly,
Thay yildyng thankes to god *in* trenite.
Eche off tham diffended fcharply to fee,
Ther euery man good hert gan to take,
The farifins it faw, ffore gan to quake,

wondering what news they had received. But soon comes a messenger to them, saying, "Lords, leave off your skirmishing and retreat,

Mvfyng what nouelles or comfort thay hade.
When thai perceiued tham to contune fo,
"Se," on faid, "A meffyngere comyng fad;"
Whiche *with* full fhil vois cried right loude tho,
"your efcarmifh, lordes, lete paffe And goo.
Vn-to your loges make fair retrete Anon,
Withdraw, remeue hens time is that we dōne.

for behold the Christians fast approaching,

For criftyn peple comyng faft many fe,
To comforth tho within, famdele[1] fered,

[1] "fumdele," (?)

Off Army peple Full many here bee,
(The feldes ouerall, lo ! ben couered),
Which us cometh, by gret wreth ftered."
Then thes paynymes wrethfully ther thens
Whent, leuyng Anon ther ftourdy uiolens.

by whom all the fields are covered over." The Paynims thereupon retreat,

Thens to ther logges went thay retornyng,
And not-For-þat made clariners vp-blow ;
And ther batailles Anon ordaynyng.
Off that other part Anthony fo grow
Hys batail renged, comyng to be know ;
When entreproched thys huge hoftes to,
Sarifins ftrongly ther thaim doubted tho.

returning to their tents. Preparations are made for battle on both sides, and the Saracens are struck with terror.

The criftin peple tho ran thaim vppon ;
Perfed And brokyng fhildes were many ;
Tho criftin went toward thaim enui[r]on,
The farifins went tham to deffend withly ;[1]
Ther A myghty ftour men fhold fee to eye.
To off thaim hath ther caft don Raynold,
Meruelous ftrokes fmote he as man bold ;

[Fol. 46 b.] Then were many shields pierced and broken; there might be seen a mighty battle.

And ther Anthony hys foes cafte dōn,
All peple hym drad And fore hym gan doute.
A paynym to fmyte went he forth Anon,
hym not warented harnes ne helme Aboute ;
For hys fwerd entred hys hed thorugh-oute,
Which ther rent And cleffe d¯n the theth[2] vn-to,
he gan fall to erth *with* gapyng throte tho.

Anthony smites a Paynim, whom neither helm nor harness guarded from the blow; for the sword clove his head to the teeth.

Tho criftin manly gan do at that day,
Euery forth went *with* ftrokes fmyting.
Tho went lufignens eferying allway,
"lordys, Barons, Aforn here paffyng,
Vppon the paynymes be ye wel fighting !"

Then went the Lusignans, crying out, "Lords and barons, fight well!"

[1] "wightly" (?) See l. 2260. [2] *Sic* in MS.

The king of Cracow, in great wrath,

The kyng of Craquo[1] ful wrogth tho he was,
When hys peple faw fuch hurtes purchas,

comes to the rescue, and smites down a Christian to the grass; then he cries aloud, "O ye Christians,

TO thaim focour hym efforced tho,
With gret ftrength And myght his fwerd gan enbrace,
hys fwerd ferfhly fhone, And by gret vertu, lo!
A criftin hath he cafte dōn vppon the grace,
Al deth to ground laid throwen in the place.
After Craquo[1] hily cried And grad,
"O ye criftin, your dethe now here had;

[Fol. 47.]
yon shall all die!" But Raynold strained his brand of steel fiercely, and smote the king with such force that he rent his head to the teeth.

All fhall ye dye, efcape ye ne may,
Forfoth here by me of-fors moft ye dy."
hys langage greuyd moche Raynold that day,
With fpores fmote fafte his courfe[r] bigly,
With hand ftrained hys brande of ftile ferfly,
And wightly went to fmite the kyng Craquo,[1]
By fuch fors And ftrenght hed rent teth vnto.

To death fell the king; and the Saracens stayed no longer, but turned their horses round

Bufteſly And rude the ftroke gan difcend,
Raynold cafte hym don, to deth the king fall;
Wherwith hys peple to difcomfort wend,
No lenger fogerned farifins, gret ne fmall.
With ther courfers ther ways torned all;
When thay perceiued and faw ther kyng flayn,
Thay thaim held tho All difcomfite plain.

and fled openly. In the swift pursuit, all the Saracens are cut to pieces like flesh cut upon the stalls.

APertly Anly Openly torned to flight,
But peiteuins tho purfute after made,
Vppon farifins fmote and bete dōn ryght,
Tham all to-chapped And kerue in pecis fad,
As men don the flefh vppon the ftal had.
Anthony, the full noble foucrayn,
Off paynyms hath ryght manyon flain.

[1] MS. "Traquo."

The farifins thaim held for difcomfight ;
he rent And tare don all he gan attain.
The kyng of Aufois, Alfo A good knight,
He hym bare ful wel And nobilly certain.
All the paynymes ther of trouth were flain ;
When ther perceiued the king Aufois bold
Tho kyng of Craquo[1] ftanded and all cold,

Anthony rent and tare all he could attain to, and at last all the Paynims were slain.

[Fol. 47 *b*]

And of painymes fo full gret fufion,
Ther he commaunded hys peple unto
That unto on hepe put fhuld be echon.
Ryght As he had fayd, fo ther was it do.
The paynyms hepid ftrongly An hye tho,
In euery part put to was the fire,
Ther paynymes were bruled and brend entire.

The king of Alsace bids that all the dead bodies should be laid upon a heap, and burnt; and thus was it done.

Off Sarfons[2] A man fhold venge hym ryght fo,
For of verray trought of Craquo[1] the kynge
like made hys brother to Afkis brend tho.
Anthony And Raynold ther were logging
In tentes reifed which thei were finding ;
The peiteuins ther logged in-ly well,
And farifins difloged eueridelle.

It was in revenge for the way in which the king of Cracow had burnt his brother's body. The Poitevins lodge well in the enemy's tents.

The kyng Aufois lefte[3] thes holy mightes,
Vnto the town went he ther forth A-non,
With hym An hundred of noble knightis,
Of mofte wurthieft being enuiron,
And mofte hightieft goodly of perfon.
Ther fair Eglentine comyng hym Agayn,
What-fo fhe gan do wel be-cam certayn ;

The king of Alsace and 100 knights ride off to the town. Eglentine comes to meet them,

HVmbly And fwetly falute fhe the kyng,
For hir uncle was he naturally,
The kyng gentilly hir ther enbrafing,
After hyr gan kyffe ryght full curtoifly.

and salutes her uncle. He assures his niece that her father's death is well avenged;

[1] MS. "Traquo." [2] MS. "Garfous." [3] MS. "lefte"

"Fair nece," faid the kyng, "here I you affy
That your fadir Deth auenged is well;
Be ye noyht wroth, difpleafe you no dell.

[Fol. 48.] and that she should now comfort herself, since her enemies were fully repaid all their wages,

YE haue fayn hys deth uenged *with* gret fors;
The king of Craquo[1] for hym is ther ded;
Off your fader ne haue mynde ne remors,
Thys faid king Craquo[1] brende haue I in-ded.
Comfort your-felf, that is wit and womanhed;
iff Any demage don haue in contre,
Off ther wages thay truly payed be.

and had failed utterly in their design; so that no shame or reproach now attached to her.

NO more after this nedith noght to doute;
Thay trowed under fote put the contre,
Now haue thai failled of ther art all-oute;
And of fhame no-thyng certes haue not ye,
Wherfor reproche or repref fhold be.
I haue wonnen that nedith you thys houre,
Acquired haue yé worfhip and honoure."

She replies that her heart is sorrowful when she thinks upon her father's death. "Was not he my brother?" replies her uncle;

"HA, fir," fhe faid, "good lord fouerain,
My gentile uncle, and my ful fwet frend,
When I me bethenke on my fader flayn,
A-non my hert *with*in wepingly is tend."
"Was not he my brother?" faid the kyng at end;
"hyt behouith us forow to lete paffe,
Pray we god on hym haue mercy and grace.

"we will perform the funeral rites to morrow, and pray for his soul." A thousand pounds of wax were made for the occasion.

His funerall obfeque to-morn we do,
And for hys good foule to our lord pray we."
Ryght as he fayd, don was al thyng tho.
A thoufand pound of wax fourged and made fhe,
As for the morn to dōn the obfeque,
At fodayn warnyng had thay fuch huge light,
Anthony And Raynolde both were ther ryght;

[1] MS. "Traquo."

Ynly will[1] was don that which fhold be do.
Moche the Brehaignons gan vnto behold
The habilite of thes compaynouns tho,
Thes faid wurthy men, thes to brethren hold,[2]
That myght noght be wery, yonge ne olde,
As thaim vnto fee fo fette verily,
Large, long, gret, ftrong, ftreight, wel thaught truly.

[Fol. 48 *b*.] Then began the Brehaignons to behold these two worthy brethren; and none were ever weary of looking at them.

Ther Abaffhed And ftonde were many
Off thys lyons hurt that thai gan behold,
Setten in the fkin ftrangely, lo! ful hy
Off hir Anthony, brother to Raynold;
For the hurt to thaim Appered ther unfold,
Wherof euery man baffhed was famfayl,
Off gretneffe of it had thay gret meruail.

Many were astonished at the mark upon Anthony's face, as it was very plain to the sight and large.

NEuer to hym faw non like ne egall,'
Then after faid tho of town And cite
That raynold was habill man *with*-all,
As to difcomfite well fhappen was he
A rewme or[3] empire of full large contre;
Saf but that o eye had, thay gan complayn,
Al other membres commanded thay certain.

They also thought Raynold was well-shapen for conquering kingdoms, and commended him for everything but his lack of one eye.

LEnger nedith noght to declare ne tell
his obfeque dōn without doubte Any,
Worfhippfully And honorably wel.
Then the kyng gan hold A parlement truly,
Where had tho was A noble company,
Withe full wurthy men As of Brehaigne,
The king faing, "Barons, underftande me,

The king of Brehaigne being honourably buried, the king of Alsace holds a council,

Hit you behouith rewarde and behold
ho fhall doo gouerne And rule this contre,

[Fol. 49.] and advises them to choose a new

[1] "well" (?) [2] "bold" (?) See note.
[3] MS. "of." See note.

king. They reply that it is his business entirely.

And ho your king fhold be know now ye fhold,
For prefently now *with*-out king ye be."
Ther hym Anfwering, "good ryght is to fe,
But the werke therof fully doth partain
And all the labour in you hole and plain.

as he is the next heir, if Eglentine should die. It is therefore for him to choose whom she shall marry.

FOr gif Eglentyne were ended And gōn,
you to enherite fhold fall the contre;
The purueaunce therof lith you uppon,
Auaunce you now, for hys loue in trinite,
So that thys contre well purueyed be
Off on, chofen by you, that Eglentyne
May[1] marie and gouerne us and our line."

The king inquires whom they wish her to marry. They reply that they leave it entirely to him.

The kyng Anfwered, "to my parte you fay,
To whom behouith my nece to mary?
Or for whom[2] wold ye? you befech All-way,
That ye me fay your Auife fully."
"Sir, at your deuife," the Barons faid furely,
"Ryght As ye will, fo certes will we doo;
No knight will refceiue but at your plefire, lo!

He replies that in that case they shall have for a lord one who is a worthy and famous knight.

All the werke therof we put you uppon."
"Then in goddis name, fires, lete me do"—
(This Anfwered thys noble kyng Anon)—
"On fhal ye haue gentile And curtois to,
A man of goodneffe and of honour alfo,
Whom ye fhall refceiue As unto your lorde,
Is hardy wurthi knight, good of recorde;

[Fol. 49 *b*.] He reminds them that two brothers, both noble kings (knights?), and

NOn other I will certes to you take.
Then to brothers haue, noble kynges to,
And An hye Duke," to thaim thys the kyng
fpake,
"In your grette nede you aid hath alfo;

[1] MS. "Many." [2] MS. "whon."

To thys place comyn ferre contrees fro ;
2400 Deliuerd hath your noble Cite
Fro the paynimes And all your contre."

one of them a duke, have saved their city.

RAynold called forth by the kyng Anon,
Sayng, "vnto you will I couenaunt hold."
2404 The kyng with uois hye[1] faid, hurd manyon,
"Come forth here ! Appere ! come forth, Raynold !
Approche As come nerre, fwete frend, As man hold.[2]
here-beforn I haue you be promyfing
2408 That of this contre make you wold A kyng.

He therefore calls Raynold, and tells him he will perform the promise he made him, that he would make him a king.

Y will not you lye, but to it confent,
For A king ne fhold lye[3] ne be gabbyng ;
My nece Eglentine to wife fhal ye hent
2412 With all rewme And that to it longing.
Will ye hir now take, the land diffending ?
Off hyr And hyrs you lorde fhall I make,
And all longith hir ye As for to take."

Raynold is to have his niece and all the kingdom.

2416 When fir Anthony All thys vnderftode,
he taried noght to Anfwere redy,
he hartly thankyng thys noble king good
That fair Eglentine Raynolde fhold mary.
2420 "Off your fre kyndeneffe And curtefy
The contre fhall diffende, ruling well the lande ;
For werre[4] he can well, knightly is off hand."

Sir Anthony thanks the king heartily, and promises that Raynold shall defend the country well.

When thes Barons thys Anfwere had fong,
2424 To our lorde thankes yeldyng full hyly,
And to oure lady in thar hertes ftrong,

[Fol. 70.]
The barons praise Our Lord and Our Lady when they

[1] MS. "hyr." Fr. text, "en hault." [2] "bold" (?)
[3] MS. "by." Fr. text, "mentir."
[4] Or "werie ;" but "werre" is right.

perceive how strong and large a man Raynold is.

Ther thay perceued hym ſtrong, large, And hy;
The lande to gouerne thought wold peſibilly.
Thys kyng ordayned his nece Eglentine
All that *per*tain ſhold A quene of ray fine.

Raynold and Eglentine, being finely arrayed, are married; and the marriage-feast lasted 15 days.

And Raynold like-wife put hym in Aray[1]
As pertained to kinges hye corage.
The mariage don And finiſhed that day
Beforne the fyght of all the Baronage;
Thys feſt ther roiall fourged by tho ſage;
Hit days fiftene endured largely,
Full noble gyftes ther geuen frely.

Never were fairer presents given than were then given by Eglentine. There were 1000 men there from the country, besides the "townish" people.

NEuer was yeuen more fairer thinges,
Robes, courſers, iew[e]lles forth preſent.
Alſo ther had thes honorous kinges
Iouſtes, tornementes full excellent
In preſence of ladies courtois And gent.
Preſently ther had A thouſand of contre,
Without tho townifhe peple, vnto ſe.

Raynold gained great honour in the tournaments, and is greeted with loud acclaim on all sides.

But Raynold ther thens bare the grete honour
That of Brehaignons lord was tho preſent;
Ther ſaing al with O wis[2] *þat* hour,
"Lif, lif our*e* noble kinge reuerent!
For A man hym know vnto All entent!
And bliſſed be he hym A-place gan bring!"
At feſtene dais end ceſſed the feſting.

[Fol. 50 *b*.] Duke Anthony takes his leave,

PEpole toke ther leue homeward to repaire,
The ladies And damycelles All,
Off whom there was had manyon And fayre.
The Duke Anthony hys leue toke in hall,
In-to way hym fette at that enteruall,

[1] In the margin, *Raynold marr*[*ics*] *Eglentyne, & ys kynge of hrch*[*aine*].

[2] "with O vois" (?) MS. "with .O. wis."

Towarde luxembrough he and hys mayne,
Which were full noble And gentile to fee.

and returns home to Luxemburg.

And in Brehaigne gan to byde And dwell
Raynold the hye kyng, whome gan to honoure
All the wide contre courtoifly And well,
And by hys nobleffe be fuch gouernoure,
Eche man his dedes preifed hugely that houre.
In Frife made gret werre Rainold er he refte
At ortholegne off the grett conqueſte.

Raynold acquires great honour as king of Brehaigne, and carries on a great war in Friesland,

BI hys ftrength Denmarke gan he to acquere ;
In his tyme regned As man pufantly ;
Full goodly leuid hys lif here entire ;
And As that man non here more wurthy
Was not A-thys-fide the romayns truly.
As off hym here no more declare att All,
Off the Duke Anthony talke & fpeke me fhall ;

and also conquers Denmark. We leave him now, and return to Duke Anthony.

Anthony the Duke, And off Aufoys the kyng,
Which were courtois, gentile, connyng, And fage.
Fro Brehaigne tho enfemble comyng,
After at luxemborugh toke ther hoftage.
Ther on fro other parted of viage,
At luxemborugh king Aufois not wold fogourn,
Al ftreight in-to hys contre gan retourn.[1]

Anthony and the king of Alsace arrive at Luxemburg, where they part ; and the king of Alsace returns home.

Anthony with hys wife gan vnto remayn,
For litill while had thai maried be.
Ful moche hir louing *with perfecte* hert plain,
In wil and dede hir loued hertly he,
As any man cowde A-this-fide the fe.

[Fol. 51.]
Anthony remains awhile with his wife, whom he loved heartily.

[1] Here follows the catchword—"Anthony *with* hys wyffe."

They had two children, one named Bertran, and the other Lochier; who freed the passes of Ardennes (?), built Givet (?), and made the bridge of Mezieres over the Meuse.

hys wyfe by hym had to cheldren perfight,[1]
On named Bertran, which was A good knight;[2]

The yonger had to name lochier the gud;
he delyuerd ftraytes all and gyed
As of dardane, which plente had wood,
Many A good knight[3] ther fortefied;
ywon all-ther-firft ther he edified;
Vppon meufe the noble brigge made
Off meifiere, after A-conquefte had

Anthony conquers the Earl of Friburg, and passes through Austria, where he conquers many a region.

MAny other places by hug proweffe;
Of al gret nobleffe thys faid man tho was.
Anthony wered *with* ftrong befineffe
The Erle of Faborugh,[4] conqueft gate by gras;
Paffyng Aritrige,[5] many richeffe made purchas,
And all put in-to hys fubiecc*i*on,
Conqueryng ther many A regyon.

Bertran, Anthony's eldest son, marries the king of Alsace's daughter, and succeeds to his kingdom.

After, Bertran the eldefte fon becam,
Within litell whyile, ful gret And ryght manly;
To wyfe toke the doughter of Aufoys kyng of fame;
A full good knight was, gentile And wurthy,
Entrepreignant, coragious, and hardy,[6]
And more often-tymes then I can you fay;
kyng of Aufoys was after the kynges day;

[Fol. 51 *b*.] Thus he and his brother put

Hys[7] doughter maried, As beforn gan tell,
Which lady tho was of all the contre.
Bertran ther regned and gouerned welle.

[1] MS. "prefight."

[2] In the margin *yᵉ elder Bertran, Anton*[*y*] *sons, & yᵉ younger lochy*[*er*].

[3] "brought" (?) [4] "Friborugh" (?) [5] "Autrige" (?)

[6] In the margin, *Bertran kynge of Aufoys.* [7] MS. "Hhys."

Thes brethren to regned As men fre,
That by ftrenght & myght put vnder fote in fe
All tho which thaim made trouble or noyfance.
Off thaim will I refte me here this inftance.

underfoot all that troubled and annoyed them. We shall speak of them no more.

TO Melufine fhall I retorn Again,
And my mater ayen taken fhall bee,
how that Raymound hym gouerned certain.
Ther full excellently regned he,
In places fele, in many A contre,
By ftrenght of fwerd conquered of corage;
For hys nobleffe All Barons gan do hym homage.

We return to Melusine. Raymond reigned excellently, and all did him homage.

GAffray *with* grette toth becam man full grette,
Ryght myghty, ftrong, fers, whight, & full pufaun*t*;
In werring A ftrong werriour ryght fet;[1]
Dayly his vertu preuyngly gan haunt.
For he conquered Guedon the huge Geaunt,
And by knightly ftrenght hym ther difcomfight,
Which Geaunt wafted the contre don ryght,

Geoffrey with the great tooth became a full great man; and conquered and discomfited the giant Guedon,

EVery man ftrongly gan hym to redoute,
To Rochel toke fauegarde, for all hym drad;
he paceyfed[2] the contre thorugh-oute,
As well in meddes As at endys had.
When Geffray underftod thes nouelles fprad,
And *þa*t hym called *with* gret toth tho,
He fwere hys oth Again hym wold he go;

for fear of whom all men were taking refuge in Rochelle. When Geoffrey heard of this, he swore he would go against him

And in hert thought well hym to difcomfight,
To the fwete plefire of kyng of glory
Which yeuith all tho that wyll victory ryght.
His fader Raymounde full wo and fory,
For the Geant he doubted heuily,

[Fol. 52.] and discomfit him. But his father Raymond was woful and sorry, and in fear for Geoffrey's safety.

[1] "fet" (?)

[2] Or, "pateyfed."

For that he was fo horrible grete ;
Off Geffray in mynde ful huge doubte he get.

Geoffrey arms, and departs with nine others. I shall return now to Melusine, who had yet two more sons,

GEffray *with* gret toth Armed hym full preſte,
hym-felfenn the tenth went to that parte,
Paffyng forth hys way *with*out any ryfte.[1]
Here fhal I hym leue, no more now faid be ;
Retorn Againe fhall to Melufine fre,
The fwet, the courtois, the benigne alfo,
Which after thys bare wurthy children to,

one called Fromont, the other Thierry. Fromont was a great clerk, and loved religion, so that he wished to become a monk

Ryght As we find A litterall feripture,
On called Fromont, Another Tierry.
For-foth fromont was A good creature,
An huge gret clerke ful of clergy,
The Abbey of malers louyd feruently ;
Callyng to god, louyng relygyon,
So that to hym cam of deuocion

In the abbey of Maillezais; and therefore ran to his father, and besought him to consent to his wearing the monk's habit.

IN the faid abbey A monke hym yilding.
Fro thens departed *with*out refting plain,
Vnto hys fader fafte he cam rennyng,
A-non hym ther made thys requefte certane,
Be-fought the uefture of Malers myght attain,
On monke habite A monke hym to make.
When Raymound hurd thys, wo was for hir[2] fake ;

[Fol. 52 *b.*] Raymond marvels greatly, and bids him regard Anthony and his other brethren, who are all noble knights.

HE merueled gretly, to fromont[3] faing,
"Fair fone, how is thys? A! good lord hy!
Wil ye A monke be nedis be-comyng?
Reward and behold your brother Anthony,
And all your bretherin being full knightly,
Which ben fo noble knightes to fe!
Vnto be A monke certes may noght be ;

[1] *Sic ;* for "refte." [2] "his" (?) [3] MS. "formont."

SO god be pleafed, monke fhall ye noght be.
Another ordre to you yiff I fhall,
A knyght will you mak of full hye degre
As your brethren ben named ryght roiall."
Fromont Anfwered to hys fader all
That he neuer wold be in ordre of knight,
Neither armes bere, but ferue god to ryght,

He ought not to wish for the order of monkhood, but of knighthood. But Fromont says he would never take on himself this order,

"Prayng to our lorde, vnto hys hy empire,
For you, my moder, and my bretherin all;
Vnto be A mo[n]ke I you here require,
No-thing fo moche coueyte ne defire fhall
As in maillers Abbay be perpetual.
That place or cite haue I noght in hate,
For ther wold I ufe all my lifes fate.

and covets nothing so much as to remain in the abbey for ever, and spend all his life there.

BEfech you and pray, caufe me not it refufe;
Cherefull fader myne, in you al the hold."
Raymounde faw wele herd was it excufe,
To Melufine fent A meffinger bold
Which As for that tyme the befte gan unfolde;
Then the meffynger gan declare and tel
All that Raymounde had told hir eueridell,

Raymond sees it is hard to refuse, and therefore sends a message about it to Melusine,

[Fol. 53.]

"HOu Fromont A monke of maillers wold be.
Haftily Raymound fent, for ioy of it had non,
To ende that for Fromont ordayn fhold fhe,
If pleafed wold be, A crowne his hed uppon,
And þat clauftrall monke he fhold be made on
In faire maillers, that miniftre roiall,
That lorde for to ferue which is eternall."

to the end that she should make Fromont a claustral monk in the royal abbey of Maillezais.

The fair Melufine Anfwerde hym tho;
"Off my part ye go, vnto my lord fay,
At hys plefaunce all ther-of will I doo,
Me fubmitte vnto hys ordinaunce all-way;

Melusine sends back an answer that she always

submits to her lord's command, and will obey gladly.

At hys plefire be I will, noght fay nay ;
For whatfomeuer pleafith hys hynes,
hit liketh me wel, hou-fo he it dreffe."

The messenger, arriving next morning, finds Raymond ready dressed, and delivers Melusine's message.

Thens the meffinger retorned anon,
No lenger fogorne in that place ne wold ;
Fro thens retornyng vnto Raymonde gõn,
A-morn him found Al redy rayd to behold ;
Al hir anfwere the meffinger hym told.
Ful gret ioy of hert in hym gan furmou*n*t,
Anon Raymounde called after Fromou*n*t.

Raymond tells Fromont that Melusine has left the whole matter at his own disposal, and he will therefore permit him

HE faide to Fromont, "thi fader vnderftande ;
Sir, for the haue fent thy good moder vnto,
Iff it pleafed hir For to be know, and
Where hir will were monke fhold be, or no.
Where-of the charge lefte to me hath, lo !
W*ith* the cure and charge enfeffed hath me.
Wherfor, Fromont, behold And fee ye,

[Fol. 53 *b.*] either to go to the abbey of Maillezais, or to "Merk" minster, or to "Brough-dieu;"

Iff nedis ye will take thys faid habite
In mallers Abbay your liffes fpace ;
Or other miniftre to your appetite,
As in Merkminiftre, which is A faire place ;
Or iff ye will at Brough-d*i*eu by grace ;
In that ye defire A monke for to be,
ye may full well in on of thes thre.

or, that if he wished to be a canon, he should be canon, of Poitiers and also of Tours in Touraine, and of Saint Martin's,

FOrfoth if ye will be A Chanon,
Of peiters a Chanon certes fhal ye be ;
Enherite ye fhall As moche As thre Anon;
Toures in tourayn, pofeede it fhal ye,
Seint[1] Martins with the Graunt efglife in fe ;
All fhall be dõn ryght At my deuyfe,
And therof do make dedes in beft wife,

[1] MS. "Seing."

And of our lady of Chartres alſo.
yff ye wyll of trouth fro parys noght ſcape,
Be noght Abaſſhed in it for to goo,
With the Pope will be quented for A Iape,
That nothyng ſhal be which me ſhall eſcape.
After A Biſſhupriche if it luſt to craue,
Anot[h]er Biſſhupriche Als ſhal ye haue,

and of Chartres also. Or he might go to Paris if he pleased. Afterwards he should have a bishopric, or, if he liked, two,

BE it pareys, Bewuais, or Aras."
Fromont ſaid, "ſhal I be A Chanon?
Nay, nay, but A monke, by our lordes gras,
Off Maillers it is myn entencion.
Other will I noght off wordly good non
Neuer at no day, while lif may endure,
For that place haue I choſin to me ſure."

whether of Paris, Beauvais, or Arras. But Fromont chooses to be simply a monk of Maillezais, and nothing else.

[Fol. 54.]

Thys Fromont outring hys Fader vnto,
"Then off goddis part," to hym ſaid Raymounde,
"Sin it pleſith you, it ſhal bene ryght ſoo.
And loke that For us your prayers in founte."
Fromont Anon Anſwered that ſtounde,
"yff it pleaſe our lord, my power do ſhall."
longer *par*lement of it nedith noght at all,

Raymond at last accedes, and Fromont promises to pray for him.

The habite he toke, clothed opinly,
The monkes ther ſhewid great gentilneſſe;
With huge nobley clothed was to ey
For hys fader loue, Raymounde fothleſſe;
And for Meluſine his moders nobleſſe.
All ther hole couent gret ioy made ther ryght,
And him chered in beſte wiſe thei myght.

He therefore takes the habit, and is richly clothed, and gladly welcomed by the whole convent.

By proceſſe therof ful ill affter came.
Ther-for wer thei all after diſherite
By Gaffray *with* gret toth; After had gret grame,

This was the source of all the evils that afterwards befell the family .

For Geoffrey, in his wrath, set the abbey on fire.

Which in hert was in full dolorous plite ;
For therof he had A full gret diſpite,
Without tarying to Mallers cam he,
hit brende and fett Afire by his cruelte

and burnt there 100 monks on a certain *Tuesday*, the day of Mars the god of battle.

BOth in the monkes, Abbot, and Abbay ;
A hundred monkes *with*in brende he tho.
Thys miſchefe ther had in A tewiſday,
For Mars was the god longing bataill to,
Vail that vail might, the monkys brend ſo.
That don, no lenger ther wold noght fogoūrn,
Fro thens he comyng, fafte gan to retorn.

[Fol 51 *b*.] Meanwhile Melusine was at Vouvent city, whither Raymond came to visit her.

Off this here ſhall leue, ſpeking of meluſine.
At vavuant cite redily ſhe was,
To ſonne And winde puttyng hir robys fine,
Which newly were come by fortunat cas,
Neuer Aforn bonde to ſuch ſeruice bas.
Bi that Raymounde was comyn to þe porte,
And full gladly ſette ther to take diſporte,

They see two messengers come, who bring letters from Anthony and Raynold. Raymond reads them,

Ther thay ſaw come forth meſſingers to,
Which ſele letters brought *with* breffes many
Of Anthony hys part, A puſant man tho,
And of Raynold the ſuffiſant kyng hy.
To Raymounde thai tuke thes letters haſtily,
he thaim reſceiued And the wax gan breke,
The letters gan rede As humble man and meke.

and laughs for joy, and calls Melusine, who thanks him, and rejoices with him.

With a feruent ioy hys hert gan laugh tho,
Meluſine Anon forth-*with* gan to call.
She hid hir right noght, Anon cam hym to,
"Thys letters behald," ſaid he ouerall.
"Raymound, I you thanke, my lord principall."
Then vnto Raymound fair Meluſine ſaid,
"Certes, this goth well at thys houred braid.

I thorughly know all thes nouell tidinges
Full good and fair ben vnto vs this hour,
Wherof thanke our lord the king of kinges,
Which oure fones han put to fuch honour.
Thre[1] of tham ben thorugh knightly laboure
Kynges full myghty, And on A duke ful hy;
yut god be thanked, haue we here full ny

and praises the King of kings, who had raised her sons to so high honour.

On off our fones monke in An Abbay,
Which daily for vs befechith god an hy;
At mallers hath hys byding thys day,
Wher god he praith to focour vs truly,
And that fo myght pray to hys plefance dayly,
That neuer vs haue in obliuion;
For affigned hath will our fones echon.

[Fol. 55.]
She rejoices also to think that one of her sons is in an abbey, and prays God daily to be mindful of them.

Thay bene well taught, inly wife and fage;
Foure of tham yut ben *with* vs here bydyng,
Which in thys houfe ben mery i*n* corage.
Oure lord of hys grace fo thaim be thecching,
That hyly thai may in tyme be regning,
To that fhall thay noght faut no-thyng truly,
So god thaim aide and our lady mary!"

Four of her sons are yet at home; but they will want nothing, if God and our Lady Mary aid them.

The nouell ftreight Aboute enuironee
And knowen ouerall in eche place and cite;
Whereof reioyed euery man to fe,
Fiftene dais were ny in fuche delite,
Making ryght gret ioy, biding the fame plite,
Where-for ther frendes fefte wold merily;
In continuaunce thought do it hertly.

The glad news soon spread throughout every city and a fifteen-days' feast is held in celebration of it.

SO it cam and fill in a fcaturday,
That Raymounde lofte the fair melufine, [lo!]
As at other days don had alway,
But noght enquered hou the dede gan goo;

It befell on the Saturday, that Raymond lost Melusine, as he had often done before on that day of the week.

[1] MS. "There."

To what place fhe went, or qwhat fhe wolde do.
yn abfence but good neuer fhe ne thought,
But all that to hys plefaunce myght be wrought.

[Fol. 55 b.] But that day, his brother, the Earl of Forest, arrived at Vouvant, the day being without wind and clear.

Who it cam and fill As in that mornyng,
That hys brother, which tho Erle of forefte was,
For ther Fader dede long biforn being,
At vavuent that day riuage gan purchas.
The thyme fair, without wynde hye or bas,
The morni[n]g ryght fair fhuwyng, inly clere,
Raymounde his brother faw com drawing nere;

Raymond received him brotherly; and many barons and ladies came to the feast which was then being held.

HE him refceiued uerray brotherly;
But after it cam to gret mifchef prefte.[1]
Vnto this fefte cam Barons full many,
Which notable were And ryght ful honefte,
Ther welcomyng the Erle of forefte,
Als of lades cam grett fufion,
Whos comyng was the feftes enchefon.

Then said the Earl to Raymond, "Bid your wife appear." But Raymond says she shall appear the next day.

When hym faid the Erle of the wild forefte,
"Raymounde, fair brother, now me here entend,
lete your wife appere here at thys faid fefte."
Raymounde Anfwerd, As not wold condiffend,
"To-morne fhall hir fe, chere brother And frend;"
Anon conueid to fitte att the table,
Thys feft plener And ryght delectable.

After the feast is over for that day, the Earl draws Raymond aside,

After Anon As thai dined hade,
And fro the table reifed up tho were,
The Erle of forefte Raymound by hand lad,
A litill drawing fro other apart there,
Thys gan he to fay ther *in* this manere:—

[1] MS. "prifte."

"Raymounde, fair brother, faid is *in* good feith ; and tells him that the people say he is bewitched,
ye be enchaun*n*ted, As the peple feith.

I can noght fay how ye may bere the fhame. [Fol. 56.]
Men fayn ouerall, brother, I you fay, and that he is never so hardy as to ask his wife *where she goes to* on the Saturday ;
ye not fo hardy (in wreth ne in game)
Of your wif enquere, certes, at no day,
(Which vnto you is gret diffame Alway),
To what place fhe torn ne hoder wyll go,
Or in what manere hir gouerneth, lo !

And what knowen ye what fhe doth *þat* day ? also that it is said she is unfaithful to him on that day. He therefore advises him to know the truth,
Men fain ouerall, fo god my foule faue,
That all diforfding is fhe All-way ;
That day hir body Anothir man fhall haue,
To you traytereffe, other fo to craue ;
And fom other fayn fhe is off the fayry.
Go thys day, brother, And know it veryly ;

Putteth payn to haue off it knowleching ; because she ought to hide nothing from him. Raymond blushes for anger,
To go And enquere good is ye do fo ;
For hide fhold noght fhe As fro you no-thing,
I fay it yow now As my brother vnto,
Now do As ye feme befte vnto be do ;
I beleue fhe doth you fhame And outrage."
Raymound bluffhed, changing his corage,

SO malice And wroght, wifte noght what to fay ; and sweats for sorrow. He seizes his sword, and hurries on till he sees before him a door of iron.
For wo And heuineffe full fafte fwatte he.
Anon went thens, hys fwerd fet *þat* day ;
Full well he knew where his wife made entre ;
There he fafte knakked where he had noght be ;
There A dore tho perceiued he certain
Off yre Aforn hym *with* hys eyes twain.

[Fol. 56 *b*.] Drawing his sword from the scabbard, he drove the point against the iron door till he at last pierced it.

IN moche thyng thought, And after thought Anon,
That hys wife had do fom mifdede tho,
And towardes hym fom wrong or trefon.
Then drawing his fwerd the[1] fcaberge fro,
The poynt gayn the dore put he ther-vnto,
So he fhifte And fmote here And ther fo fafte,
That the yren dore perfed at the lafte.

Looking through the hole thus made, he perceived Melusine bathing,

Alafe ! full ill labored was that day !
At the perced hole in beheld *with* eye
To know what ther was befied fafte ay ;
Certes ouerfone know it fhal furely,
And then in hert gret dole fhall haue truely !
At the hole beheld, perceyuing full welle
Melufine, hou fhe bathed euerydell,

her upper part white as snow, and her fashion most fair, but beneath she had a serpent's tail !

UNto hir nauell fhewing ther full white,
like As is the fnow A faire branche vppon,
The body welle made, frike in ioly plite,
The vifage pure, frefh, clenly hir perfon,
To properly fpeke off hir facc*i*on,
Neuer non fairer ne more reuerent ;
But A taill had beneth of ferpent !

It was great and horrible, barred with blue and silver. Raymond, perceiving this, cried to God,

Gret And orrible was it verily ;
With filuer And Afure the tail burlid was,
Strongly the water ther bete, it flaffhed hy.
When that Raymound perceiued this cas,
Which neuer beforn to fight gan purchas
In fuch A ftate to bath, ther hym blified fafte,
Gretly doubted, cried to god in hafte,

[Fol. 57.] though he could scarcely utter a word. In order to stop the hole, he cut a little piece of cloth, and

But noght-for-that fo moche of drede had,
That vnnethes myght outre wurde ne fay.
But to Ende the hole were ftopped & fafte made,
A litell cloute cute he *with*-out delay,

[1] MS. "ther ;" Fr. text, "*du fourrel*."

With wax melled, ftopped the hole Alway,
That by it myght noght man perceiue no-thyng.
Fro thens departed he tho, fafte going.

fastened it in with wax.

Towarde hys brother thought he to repaire,
Dolorous of hert, full of wrath that ftounde.
Hys brother the erle knew at hys retrair
That he better wo in hertte had profounde,
Trowing uerily that his wif had found.
"your wife, had fhe don gain you As men faid,
In fom difhonefte place where he[1] fhold no braid?"

He returns to his brother, who, seeing him sad, asks him what he has discovered, and where he had found her.

Then Raymounde gan fpeke *with* vois full hautain,
And hym faid, "therof ye lye vntrewly,
By your fals throte And youre teeth plain!
In An ill houre here ye entred in furely;
Fro my hous ye goo *with* [y]our felony;
Off my lady no more[2] fpeke ye for fhame,
Sche is pure And clene Als *with*out diffame.

Raymond tells him he lies in his throat and in his teeth, and bids him depart; for that his lady is pure.

Amore wurthier woman is ther non,
ye haue made me do fuch A manere thyng
Torñ contrary will Again my perfon.
A-non part here; hens, foule rebaude being,
For, by my feith, full litill is failling
That *pre*fently here that I you not ſle;
Forth depart you hens, by concell of me.

He tells him that, unless he departs, he will slay him; and that he advises him to go at once.

Curfed be the hour that euer heder came,
And that tho wurdes faide were Any wife!
Neuer toward me retorn noght for fhame!"
Raymounde femede all witlefe to deuife,
All merueled that gan it aduertife,[3]

[Fol. 57 *b*.]
He curses the hour in which his brother came, and seems all witless. The Earl, sore amazed,

[1] "fhe" (?)
[2] MS. "nomore."
[3] MS. "aduerfite," *a curious inversion.*

That to his brother fo fpake and faide.
The Erle, Abaffhed And foule difmaide,

departs home, cursing the hour in which he thus spoke out. He laments bitterly that he has made Raymond so wroth.

There thens retournyng in-to his contre,
Full often cruffing[1] the hour and the day
That thes wordes feapid or mouthed he.
hys brother perceued he haue fhold ne may
Neuer pees ne lufe for this gret affray ;
More neuer ne[2] was woer at no ftounde
Then off that he hade wrethed fo Raymounde.

Afterwards Geoffrey came, and slew the Earl, and gave away the country he thus gained to one of his brothers.

HE ftroied And made exile the contre ;
For when Gaffray *with* gret toth it knew,
Ryght deliuerly ther Ariued he,
Sette it Afire, the Erle gan fle ther trew
Full vilouſly *with* huge fhame to vew ;
After the contre yaffe of the Forefte
To on hys brother, fo gete by conquefte ;

But to return to Raymond. He wept and wailed, and waxed pale, having no end of his grief.

Off the forefte Erle made hym entirely.
Off Gaffray *with* gret toth leue fhall now *pre*fent,
And retorn I fhall to Raymounde fully,
Which *with* heuineffe fore hym doth torment.
He wepte, he wailed, wofully lament ;
Wonder pale he waxe, wanting his colour,
For ende hade he none of this grett dolour*e*.

[Fol. 58.] "Alas!" he cried, "there is no poorer man on earth than I am! Alas! Melusine! I have lost you!

"Alas! alas!" thys ther faide Raymounde,
A more purer man in the wordle ne is
Off verray trought then I Am this ftounde!
Alas! Meluſine! this day haue doñ Amys,
That by my diffaute you haue I lofte this!"
(For forow therof fo quaked and fwat),
"Alas! fhall I you leue, loue delicat,

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] "he" (?)

MI fwet hert, my good, my loue, And my life?
By the full dolorous fortune
Now fhall I lefe my ioyous thoughtes penfif,
Which me haft made fuch As I contune.
I fhal, lo ! cafte me in fom pitty hume.
What fhal I now doo, lord god glorius ?
Neuer fhal I lagh,[1] neither be ioyous

Now shall I lose my joyous thoughts, and cast myself into some pit. Never shall I laugh again ! "

With that fwete lady whom I loued fo.
She was my folas, my ioy in ech ftede,
My plefaunce, my comfort, my delite to !"
Ther hym difpoilled, entring in his bed ;
But flepe myght he noght when that he was led;
he fighed, foghed, wepte *with* teres many,
" lord, wat fhal I doo, lord ?" faid, " lete me dy !

Concluding his lament, he undresses and goes to bed; but cannot sleep. He sighs, and cries,

HA ! fwet Melufine, yf I you this lefe,
I fhall go vnto fom defert Cite,
hermite or reclufe become, god to plefe,
yn fom forain place where non enchabite.[2]
ha ! Melufine, my hertes Appetite,
Fair lady, my hert, my loue, my plefaunce,
That you this fhold lefe by fuch ill mifchaunce !"

"Ha ! Melusine, if I lose thee, I shall go to some desert place. Ha ! Melusine ! that I should thus lose you ! "

[Fol. 58 *b*]

THe hier off his hede tere of with gret pine,
With fift his breft fmote, heuily gan mourn,
Full ofte wailled, by-weping Melufine ;
In his bede turny[*n*]g, And efte gan retorn,
In on eftat ne myght he noght fogourn ;
here on bakke laide, efte the bely vppon,
Torning And wendyng euer enuiron.

He tears the hair off his head, smites his breast, and wails. He turns from side to side on the bed.

THen in-to chambre Melufine made entre ;
When fhe was comyng, forth-with Anon
Swetly all naked hir difpoilled fhe,
Courteifly fhe went ther the bede vppon,

Melusine then returns, undresses, and lies beside him. She embraces him, and finds his neck cold,

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] *Sic* in MS.

With Raymounde fhe lay in concluſion;
She enbraſing hym, collyng amoureſly,
Fynding his nekke cold *with* all the body

as he was all uncovered. Softly she whispers to him, "Are you feeling anguish? Tell me the truth, I pray.

A cauſe that he was All uncouered tho,
And that by greuous beting And turnyng,
Full ill was he raid, plonged for in wo.
In baſe wife Meluſine ther hym fayng,
"Dolour or anguiſh be ye ought feling?
An ouer pale colour haue ye to eye;
Me fay ye the trought, beſech you hertly.

Am I not your love? tell me all. Confess if you feel any ill, and I will cure you."

Alas! Am I noght your loue eueridell?
Fro me ſhold ye noght hide no maner thing.
Say me how it is, hele you ſhal I welle,
For no wordly thyng not your-ſelfe hyndryng.
Confeſſe ye me if Any il be feling,
Delyuer you ſhall A-non openly,
All hole ſhall ye be here now prefently."

[Fol. 59.] Hearing this, he rejoices, thinking she knows nothing. Yet she knew all, but would not speak of it, seeing his repentance.

When Raymound tho wourdes with eres gan here,
Reioyed merely, thought no-thyng ſhe knew
Off all that dede which had do entire;
yut knew ſhe it wel, thow noght faid of-new,
For he diſcouered noght (but kepe it trew)
The dede vnto no *per*ſon that inſtaunce,
And that therof he had uerray repentaunce

Raymond says, "I have felt great heat, and now the fever has changed to a shivering."

A hundred tymes more then I can ſay.
Raymound hir faid, "gret hete haue I had
In maner of continuaunce alway.
Now is this brennyng whereof Am Adred
Torned and changed, into coldneſſe lad."
"helth ſhall ye purchas," unto hym faid ſhe;
"Stoned ne baſſhed of no thyng be ye."

She embraces and kisses him, and he feels at ease.

She embraſed hym And ſwetly gan kiſſe,
Where-*with* Raymound approched gret eaſe.

long tyme he regned in fuch ftate of bliffe, must now leave them.
And fuch lif gan led, ech other gan pleafe.
Off ther beyng here will I leue and ceafe,
To declare and fay make me will redy,
As of my famplere to procede plainly.

Then this to my mater here retourne I. Geoffrey goes to Guerraud to seek the giant, and at last sees the rock whereon his castle is built.
Gaffray with long toth gouerned hym fo,
That to Guerrande[1] Gaffray fafte gan to hy,
Demaundyng the way the Geant vnto
Where he myght be founde, to fight *with* hym wold go;
The Roche perceiued myghty and pufant,
Wherto repaired thys cruel Geant,

[Fol. 59 *b*.]
CAlled Guedon,[2] that fo orgulous was, Geoffrey alights, arms himself, and again mounts, making fast to his saddle-bow a steel mace.
Gret, thikke, longe, ftronge, meruelous to fe.
Gaffray fro his hors difcended apas,
Armed hym A-non, lenger bode not he.
When Armed he was, to hors lepe a-ye,
The geant doubted noght, A ftaf toke of ftile,
Which at hys arfon made fafte for A-whyle.

And fin After fefid his fhild and fhoke, He takes also his shield and his iron spear, and leaves his men, commending them to God on high.
Which befides it had fhildes many.
After his fpere of fharpe yren toke,
Sauyng goddys grace, gret thyng toke furely.
hys men commaunded vnto god an hy.
But for thare mafter wepte thay in *þat* place;
Thay trowed neuer fe hym in liffes fpace.

GEffray thaim faid, "ftil you, noght difmay; He bids them farewell, and departs alone, ascending the mount to reach the castle.
I beleue I fhal this Geaunt difcomfight
By aid of god And hys moder this day."
Anon than Geffray parted fro thaim ryght,
Adieu tho thaim faid, thens went Alone to fyght.

[1] MS. "Gueruande."
[2] MS. "Suedon;" see l. 3011.

The Roche paſſed he, goyng vp Anon
Vnto the caſtell, fette the mount vppon.

He waits at the drawbridge, and in a shrill voice defies the giant.

Unto the brigge cam, with thil uois gan cry.
"Where Art thou, fals traytour, where Art thow?
To deth ſhalt thou be caſt by me truly.
Which in my contre And in my lande now
So long were haſte had: to goi I A-now,
Neuer here-hens ſhal I depert no day
Till uenquiſhed or dede haue the I may."

[Fol. 60]
The giant, hearing him, rises and puts out his head, showing his visage and his chin.

On A donlon hil was this huge Geaunt,
In the Galaries being ther *with*-in.
The uois hurd of hym noble and puſaunt,
haſtily Anon vp riſing gan to win;
his hede put he out, uiſage large and chin,
(Which was All ſo gret As A bole his hede),
Gaffray *with* gret toth be-held hym in-ded;

The giant thinks himself sorely disgraced that a single man should wish to fight him, and at once arms himself.

Horrible gret was. A forwoxen groome.
Such An other neuer had he ſain;
Which his goddis ſwere that full hym come
Sore uilloined gan hym hold certain.
When a foule man luſt *with* hym were plain.
And into hys hous to feke hym comyng.
lightly hym armed, Anon diſcendyng;

taking a fal'chion of steel, three flails of iron, and three great sledge-hammers. He lowers the drawbridge, and issues out.

A Fauchon of ſtele went he unto take.
Well grounde or whet, but tendre was it noght;
After ſtaelles thre[1] of yre toke for hys ſake,
In hys boſom put thre gret llegges wrought;
The bridge Aualed, to iſſue out thought.
Ful gret and large was formed of body;
When in his being muſtred unto ey,

[1] MS. "ther;" Fr. text, *trois*.

Fiftene fote long this Geaunt was expreſſe :
And when Gaffray nehed hym in-dede,
Strongly merueled of his huge gretneſſe,
But yut for all that of hym noght gan drede,
Neither fere had for gretneſſe, lenght, ne brede,
But that Anon diffied hym boldly,
And towarde thys Geaunt drew hym lightly.

He is fifteen feet long; yet Geoffrey fears him not, but defies him boldly.

"What art thou?" ſaid Guedon, "truſſe hens," ſaid he.
Hym he anſwered, "ſir," ſaid *with*out blame,
"Gaffray *with* long toth ſo men callyn me ;
At no day ne hour neuer hid my name ;
Thine[1] hed come to haue, diffende ꝑe for ſhame!"
"Caytiff," ſaid[2] Guedon, "wat caſte thou to do?
The will ſle[3] Anon *with* o foule ſtroke or to;

[Fol. 60 *b*]
"Who art thou?" asks Guedon. "I am Geoffrey with the long tooth." "Wretch," says Guedon, "I will slay thee with one sole stroke."

Hens ye now retorn, my fair ſone," he ſaide,
"Off the in my hert renneth gret pite,
your yongly perſon ſeing at this braide,
And that ye er or[4] gret habilite ;
Gaffray, go hens of frendlyhede," ſaid he.
hym Anſwered he, "ſoly, is no nay ;
haue thou pite non but of thi life this day.

"I pity you," says Guedon, "and advise you, as a friend, to depart." But Geoffrey bids him rather pity his own life,

For *with*out diſſaute ſhe ſhall ende Anon.
Fro keruing of my ſwerd here now diffend the ;
In mortall deth dye ſhall here thi perſon ;
Eſcape maiſte thou noght in no wyſe fro me."
Thys Geaunt noght told of hym in no degre,
Gaffray cam faſte contring the Geaunt then,
As moche And As faſte As hys courſer myght ren.

which should soon end, as he cannot possibly escape. Geoffrey advances to the encounter,

[1] MS. "Thime." [2] MS. "And" [3] MS. "ſhe." [4] "ar of" (?)

and overthrows the giant. The giant, astonished, rises up, and tells him his stroke shall be repaid.

NOw god hym focour! in brefte ther hym fett,
Thys cruel Geant A fers ftroke yaff he;
By hys wurthineffe fo gan do and bette,
*With*out any demage he cafte don to fe.
All aftoned of that aduerfite,
Thys Geaunt roffe vp; "haft thou noght," he faid,
"Take me fuch offering, it yild fhall be this braide."

[Fol. 61.] Being wrath at having been thus struck down by a single blow, he seizes his steel falchion, and cuts the legs off Geoffrey's horse.

On fote hopte he up, malice and wroth was
That don to grounde fo cafte in that Ile
By A foule ftroke of knyghtly manace.
Then he in hand toke hys fauchon of ftile;
As Gaffray wold torn, fogernyng no whyle,
The fauchon of ftele, the Geant in hand,
Off Gaffray curfer the legges trenchand.

The horse falls, Geoffrey leaps off, and at a blow nearly severs the giant's left arm.

The courfer fill don, fro hors lepte[1] Gaffray,
No-thyng hym lette, Fro fcaberge his fwerd drew;
To the giant went *with* raundon gret that day,
The finiftre Arme fmote he vppon trew,
Ryght As belonged to knightly uertew.
hys fauchon he made to fall the hand fro,
That neuer After ned had non ther-to;

But Guedon, to end the fight, deals Geoffrey a blow on the helm with his flail, which almost fells him.

FOr Gaffray fuch ftroke fette, he failled noght;
In the hanche four hurt greuoufly he was,
But to hym Guedon Approched ny, thought
So that mortall were ther hym gan purchas,
his flael ther toke myghtly A-place,
To Gaffray therof gaf on the helme hy,
All Aftoned Almofte At ground truly.

Geoffrey runs and fetches his steel mace,

Into his fcaberge the fwerde put Gaffray,
To his courfer ran, his ftaffe ther takyng,

[1] MS. "lepete;" but see l. 3079.

To thys Geant cafte A huge ftroke that day,
Stager And ftomble made *with* hys fore ftriking ;
hys Flael fro hand caufed ther fleing.
On off hys [s]legges[1] Guedon[2] toke in hafte,
To Gaffray wightly And fharply it cafte,

and with it strikes the giant so that he stumbles and drops the flail. Guedon seizes a sledge-hammer,

With the faid ftroke caft of myghty vertew
Off Gaffray the ftafe or axe gan attain,
Fro hys handes made to fle and remew.
This Giant lepte forth, the ftafe toke certain ;
To Gaffray noght had twixfte hys handes twain,
But Gaffray his fwerd gan to draw Anon,
And vppon the Arme it fett of Guedon ;[3]

[Fol. 61 *b*]
and with it knocks Geoffrey's mace out of his hand, and then picks it up. Geoffrey draws his sword,

And fo huge A ftroke geuyng hym was tho,
That quite clene the arme fhare off throughtly.
Gaffray full ma*n*lly ther Auenged fo
Off Guedon[2] the Giant ftrong and myghty,
Where Arme, ftafe, or Axe, done fill hym ryght ny.
Where-tho*r*ught for wo the faide Geant fuatte,
For Anguiffh And forow lefte his Arme & bede.[4]

and shears Guedon's arm completely off. Down fall all his weapons.

Full moche the Geant was Aftoned tho,
When off hys Armes on had lofte of-new ;
haufed his fwerd, trowing Gaffray fmitte to ;
But the ftroke noided And fomwat *with*drow,
A litell blenched enmyddes the medew,
Vppon his legge fmote *with* fwerde wonderly,
A meruelous ftroke gaffe, Ato carf[5] hys thy.

The giant strikes at Geoffrey with his sword, but he slips aside, and with a marvellous stroke cuts his foe's thigh right in two.

This Giant fill, crying his goddis aide ;
Gaffray A ftroke gaffe tho his fculle vppon,
he offeryng fo, the helme rent And foulle raide,

The giant falls. Geoffrey cleaves his head to the teeth,

[1] MS. has "legges," a notable blunder.
[2] MS. "Gouedon." [3] MS. "Suedon."
[4] Indistinct. [5] MS. "craf ;" but see l. 3092.

and, seizing his Saracen horn, blows it loudly.

The helme cutte And rent till the teth Adon ;
The fwerde fo cuttyng, the hede carf Anon.
After that hys horne farifin toke he,
hyly it blowyng times to or thre.

[Fol. 62.] Geoffrey's men come up, and find the giant slain. They marvel at his length and breadth.

HIs peple the founde full wel vnderftode,
To hym hied, taried noght certain ;
Enmyddes the medew founde where he ftode,
Thys cruell Geaunt which þat he had flain.
When this meruelous Geant ther was fain,
Off his faccion Aftoned thay were,
hys lenght, his brede was fo ouermette there.

The lords compliment Geoffrey highly, and tell him he has done "an inly good deed."

TO Gaffray the lordes toke vnto fay,
"Off this Geaunt huge mifgouernaunce
ye vnto thys man meued were thys day,
As hym to uenquifh thought in remembraunce,
Thys enemy difcomfite this inftaunce ;
Truly ye haue doñ An inly good ded."
Gaffray Anfwered ther, "faire lordes," fed,

Geoffrey says he has but done his duty. They enter the castle, which is well built and fair.

"Hit us behouid, were it wrong or ryght ;
For it putt abake I ne myght, parde ;
My lif to diffend I fhold, yff I myght ;
And fo haue I done, our lord preifed be,
hym conquered haue here As ye may fee."
Thay entred there, to caftell gan repare,
Which was well billed to fight, And full faire.

Huge joy is made both by small and great, because the giant was discomfited and stone-dead.

MEn all this knew thorugh that region,
For-why fhold we then fpeke therof more?
huge ioy and folas therof made and don,
Bothe tho gret and fmall gret ioy made therffor,
That the Geant was by Gaffray don bore,
So difcomfite, ftandede, And all cold ;
hug[e] ioy and gladneffe in contre tho hold.

[Fol. 62 *b*.] Geoffrey is made lord of that country. A messenger tells the news to Raymond,

Off this lande made lorde he by this viage,
Wherby manly had ended the werre tho.
Ther-thens to vavuent A man fent in meſſage,
Which full courtois was, inly wife alſo;
Thys ſaid meſſinger Raymounde ſaid unto,
That by Gaffray the Giant fers and bold
Was defcomfite and put to deth, he told.

who laughs; and Melusine gives the messenger a rich gift. He next takes paper and wax to his secretary, and dictates a letter,

RAymounde laughed tho, hym preiſing faſte there.
Meluſine *with*out othir tarying
Made right good chere vnto the meſſinger;
When hym chered had *with* all maner thyng,
A ryche gifte hym gaffe; Raymounde tho writyng,
Paper And wexe toke to hys fecretory,
Anon A letter conceued haſtily,[1]

which he seals and sends to Geoffrey in Guerrand, telling him how Fromont had become a monk in the abbey of Maillezais,

The tenure of which was well deuyſed;
By Raymounde feled were thai in *þat* place;
So forth fend by Raymounde, ſo auiſed,
Vnto Gaffray which in Guerrande tho wace,
"hou that Fromount his uefture gan purchace
At Maillers, And ther refceiued gan fay,
And that A monke was in that faide Abbay;

where he would spend his life in prayer for his friends. Alas! this letter was written in an evil hour, for thereby did Raymond lose Melusine!

Where that he wold uſe All his liffes ſpace,
And for his frendes pray to god An hy,
For that it was an inly deuout place."
Alas! thes letters il hour wrought truly,
For thai torned to the contrary.
He therthorugh lofte the fair Meluſine,
Whom that he loued *with* parfite loue fine.[1]

[Fol. 63.] I shall leave the life of Raymond and Melusine,

NOw ſhall we leue at thys time the lyffe
Of Raymounde the fwete And courtois only,

[1] Here follows the catchword—"Now ſhall we leue at *þis* time."

and speak of Geoffrey, who was now in Guerrand country,

Of Melufine als hys ful noble wyfe,
Which at þat hour was A woman worthy.
Of Gaffray with gret toth declare fhal I;
After thys I fhall you outre and fay;
In Guerrande contre tho was Gaffray,

where he was royally feasted for killing the giant. While he was there, came a messenger from Norbelande to him, and having found him

All the contre hym fefted roially
For thys Geant fake that he diftroid there:
Gret ioy ther had of peple ful many.
With that cam to hym ther A meffengere,
To gaffray comyng in humble manere,
Fro Norbelande After Gaffray demaunding
Where þat he was; many hym fhewing,

and presented his letters, he proceeds to tell of a giant who had come to Norbeland, savage, cruel, and dangerous,

To Gaffray prefented thes letters there.
"My lord," he faid, "for goddys hy mercy,
That it myght you ples me vnderftande here.
Vnto Norbeland is comyn truly
A man more gretter then other Any,
Which is A Geaunt, wonder meruelous,
Ouerthwart cruel and ryght perilous;

and had brought war on all the country. He begs Geoffrey to help them speedily, as the nobles of the land have great trust in his might.

He hath brought were [on] all our contre.
Wherfor I am come to feke you thys hour,
Here requeryng you for all loue may be,
ye of Gentilleffe wold be ther focour;
Tho of contre, the lordes of honore,
In your perfon haue ryght gret affiaunce,
Wilnyng you to come haftly thys inftaunce.

[Fol. 63 *b*.] Urging him he adds that all the country will be given up to him, as he may see from the letters. The people trust wholly to him to destroy the giant.

So that ouer-lang ye mow noght tary;
For you will thai yild all the hole contre,
Ther landes to hold of your eftate hy.
For fothe your letters, if opened be,
ye may wel know the trouth And ueryte.
Thay haue cafte ther loote certes you vppon,
Off thys ftrong Geaunt caufe diftruccion."

GEffray the letters After breke and rayd,
Fro[1] wurde unto wurd, And fithen hym faid,
"Meffinger, trouth is, no ly on you had;
By the holy croffe fwere I you this braid,
That men cal Geffray *with* long toth difplaid
hens wold noght remeue for lande ne hauour,
But for the contre only to focour.

On reading the letters, Geoffrey swears that he will go, but it is not for lands or possessions, but for the sake of helping the people,

FOr off the peple haue I gret pitte,
For the good zele haue to criftine entyre,
Wherin I haue grette affinite:
Als honour And worfhip to acquire.
Off me the werre the Giaunt doth defire,
Anon fhall I go hym Affail quikly."
To thys forth-progreffe Geffray made redy.

on whom he has pity, because he has great zeal for Christianity. Also he would win honour; therefore he prepares at once.

AMeffynger the men tyme gan difcend
Off hys fader part, forth-*with* hym taking
The letters, al which that he hym fend.
Geffray thaim rad, And when he was knowing
That his brother was A monke hym yilding,
leuer had hym be honged were As thef;
Wherof to hert had dole of gret myfchef:

Meanwhile a messenger from his father brings him letters to tell him that his brother has become a monk, at which he is angry and sad.

HOu-were-it that ioy of hys fader had,
And of Melufine his moders welfaire,
Thay were hole and founde, of *þat* was he glad.
When of hys brother Fromont hurd declare,
That he monke was fhorn, dole had And gret care;
Off the difpite hys witte gon And lofte,
Vermail rede As blode, *with* wreth tende hys gofte;

[Fol. 64.]
He was pleased to have good news of his father and mother, but he lost his wits at the disgrace of Fromont being a monk, and he grew as red as vermilion.

Off malice And wreth had in his body
he uomed And fwatte, A fwine refembling;
Neuer man non hym beheld ueryly
But of huge drede ther he were tremblyng.

Fuming like a swine with rage, he made all afraid who came near him.

[1] MS. "For." Fr. text, "de mot en mot."

Then in his passion he exclaims, "These vile monks

"Ther tho ill," he fayd, "thys lechorus being,
Thes fals monkes, which full uicious be,
Thay haue now, by the holy trynite,

have surely enchanted my brother, to make him turn monk and have a shaven crown. But they shall suffer for it. The errand into Northumberland must be put off a while.

My brother Fromont haue enchanted fure,
A monke haue hym made, certes, in ther town.
To thaim might yut come fom mifauenture:
hym haue thay fhorn *and* made to bere A crown;
In fhall tham put into gret mifchef down.
Of this other erande bide Awhile will I;
Thys monkes will fe, long er that I dy.

I will go at once and burn up all these monks together." He bids the messengers from Northumberland await his return, when he will go with them as he promised.

FErre of fhall noght be or to that place go,
Thaim fhall I brenne to-geders in A fire."
Tho meffengers of norbelande faid to:
"you commaunde al abide me here entire,
For fhortly with you go wil at defire,
That cruell Geaunt As to difcomfight,
So fhall it be don As graunted haue ryght.

[Fol. 61 *b.*]
They promise to guard his house in his absence, and to wait till his return. He sends them away without further parley,

Thai, which durft noght with-fay hys hy renon,
hym Anfwered: "we will, lord honourous,
Sin it plefith you, it is good refon:
In your abfence, fchall warde and kepe *þis* hous,
Without departing, to be laborous
Till the tyme approche A-gane you fhal fe."
Geffray anfwered: "wele faide here haue ye;

and summoning his people, rides with all speed till he reaches Maillezais Abbey on a Tuesday.

GO forth," faid he, "with-out fayng-Again."
To hys peple faid, "vnto hors ye goo;
I fhall nothyng fpare ualey ne montain,
Till that I come Maillers Abbay vnto."
Then Geffray hym put forth on hys way tho,
Thys fers, cruell, hardy, the Tewifday,
So rode that he ryued at the Abbay.

The monkes were in their chapitre-hous,
And Geffray Anon entred ther within :
When thes monkes knew thys man honorous,
To ryn him Again Alfafte gan begin,
As wel gret As fmall towar[d] hym gan wyn,
All the hole couent ther hym faluting,
Full gret ioy thay had As of hys comyng.

He finds the monks in the chapter house. They are delighted at his coming.

Then to the abbot, which that balled was,
hath Gaffray fpokyn rude and buftefly,
As A man chaufed[1] *with* yerfull manace.
"Ha! dan Abbot," toke hym to fay an hy,
"Abbot, forwhy haue ye made folyly
My brother A monke in thys faid Abbay
To leue chiualry, takyng your ordre Ay?

But roughly and angrily he demands of the Lord Abbot why they have so foolishly made his brother leave chivalry and turn monk.

IN good feith, full is mufed and thought,
For your mortall deth ye tho gan purchace :
ye fchal dy for your wykkydneffe wrought,
Both ye And all your couent in thys place."
Then fore he grint And ftrayined his teeth apace.
All tho which were the Abbay within
Thai had gret drede, feing hym fo begin.

[Fol. 65.]
He threatens them all with death, and grinding his teeth savagely, puts them into great dread.

Thes monkes wepte, And fighed ful fore there
Of the fereful drede which that time thai had.
Then dan Abbot of the hous gan anfwere,
"Sir, by me noght was it forth broght ne lad ;
By hym-felfen was it, trow I fhall ful fad ;
he fo meued *with* good deuocion
As Entre into this religion.

They weep and sigh for fear, and the Lord Abbot declares it has all been done of Fromont's own free will.

HEre Fromont may fe ye, lo! perfonally,
yff it like or pleafe you hym demaunde, lo!"
Fromont thys hym faid, "brother, verily

He may see Fromont, who, coming to his brother, bears

[1] MS. "chamfed." Fr. text, "eschauffez."

out the Abbot's account, and adds that he will be nothing but a monk.

By non is it wrought, but by my-felfe do :
A monke for to be, Am, And fhall be to ;
Wher within for you to our lord fhal pray,
To other dedes attende wil no day,

His father and mother, he says, had consented, and were glad that he should enter on this life, that they all might benefit by his prayers.

But only to god, to whom I am yild.
hit pleafed my fader, to hym acceptiff,
And to Melufine, my good moder milde :
Full gladly thay wold I fhold ufe my life
here As for to pray our lord celeftif
For thaim and for you in efpeciall,
That in paradife he vs do put all."

[Fol. 65 *b*.] Geoffrey, almost mad with rage, replied to him sadly. Then departing, shut the doors, and savagely orders fuel to be collected,

GEffray vnderftode Almofte in wode rage,
Thaken[1] with A meruelous corage tho,
Moche ther refceiued to hym delefull langage.
Fro-thens deperted, the dores after drew to,
All tho within clofid and fhitte alfo,
After fend to fecche, of ferofite,
Straw And berres[2] wonder gret plente.

which he has piled about the Abbey, and then sets it all on fire.

TO all ilneffe do luft had and talent,
Thys brufchet made put in-to on hepe,
What caufe eche merueled, in ther entent.
Fire hath he taken and put in therto ;
That in litell while fe fhold not man, lo !
For the fmoky fume fmortherting fo was,
The Abbay it toke, fore gan it enbras.

The Abbey, the Abbot, and a hundred monks, are consumed.

The fire fo kindled thorugh all certainly,
The monkes all betrapped and forfhend,
That neuer on foule[3] fcaped outwardly.
The Abbot And A hunderd monkes brend
On tewfday, by fortune, fo ther end :

[1] "Taken." Fr. text, "Esprins."
[2] "breres" (?) Fr. "busche." [3] MS. "foule."

All that ther within wafted to huge grame,
To gret forow And wo, vnto full huge fhame ;

3312 And als the mofte parte of thys faid abbay
By hym ftroied, bruled and fcorched tho :
Ther not lefte ne bode o foule man that[1] day,
Thorughly brende it was to gret fhame and wo.
3316 When better remembred[2] hys diffaute, lo !
With fhill voce cried *þat* time hautaynly,
" Alas, caitife !" faide, " doñ hafte folily,

Most of the building is destroyed, and not one soul escaped. Geoffrey, on coming to himself, laments what he has done,

[Fol. 66.]

Which thys minftre undo and fo brend."
3320 his brother ofte bement dede fo, noght in graue ;
After the Abbot And all the couent.
Foltifh he was, For tho thaim might not haue,
Neuer for golde ne for hauour craue.
3324 he thaim complained And waymented fore,
Off pite fighed, lamenting euermore.

the burning of the minster, and his brother unburied, and the Abbot. For there was no getting them back again.

Fro-thens departed, on his courfere lepte,
He right noght fparyng ualey ne montayn,
3328 In paynfull wo was, muſing thoughtes kepte,
Of his brother brende fore hym gan complain ;
So god[3] religious As he was certain.
Then to hym-felfe faid ; " fair god lord an hy,
3332 What may me become or what do fhall I ?

Leaving Maillezais, he rode hard, thinking much of his good religious brother; and then upbraids himself,

NE to what ende come, certes, know ne may
Neuer man born fro Adam to thys hour
Ne war fo well wurth to be dampned ay !
3336 Wel fhewith I am An ill fals traitour,
I here more wurfe then Iudas the fynnour.
Neuer fhall I fee, vifage to vifage,
Off god our Fader femyng in corage.

that he is more worthy of damnation than any man, even than Judas Iscariot, and shall be shut out of God's sight.

[1] MS. " thai." [2] MS. " remenbred." [3] " good " (?)

He prays for death. In this sorry frame he reaches Guerrande, and finds the messenger waiting for him.

MOrtall deth, now com bering me away!"
Such difcomforth had Gaffray in corage.
Forfoth fo rode An eafy pace that day,
That to Guerrande came forth fo in viage,
Full malice And wrogh[t] of thys huge damage
Which that tyme had don, And fore gan complain.
The meffingere lefte contred hym Again:

[Fol. 66 b.] Geoffrey is pleased to see him, and goes at once, taking but ten retainers.

WHen Geffray hym faw, in hert was full glade;
Fro-thens departyd vnto vnderftande.
Of no creature demaund leue ne had.
he ther-thens wende towarde norbelande,
Where-hens the meffinger of the faide lande
Which to Gaffray cam requiring hym then:
And off his maynee had he but ten.

He was feasted by the people before he went on board. With a fair wind he sets out at once on his voyage.

HE thought he wold noght ouer flow to be:
Anon As he Approched the port there,
Men hym made gret fefte or fhippe made entre;[1]
And off the contre the faid meffynger,
Which condute this knight the way and manere.
The faill reifed vp, the winde fofte gan blow,
Anon difancred the fhippe in a throw;

The people bless them as they start, and with a fair wind and good ship they go on their way. I shall now leave Geoffrey and speak of Raymond.

THe maryner thaim put in-to the fe,
And at departfon thaim bleffed all tho.
The winde was good, the fhippe welle failled fche,
In a litill while ferre paffed And goo,
A kennyng thaim was but A Jape vnto.
Ryght thus of Gaffray fhall reft and ftill me,
And declare And fpeke of Raymounde the fre.

He was living merrily at Vouvant with his wife, Melusine.

RAymounde at vauuent lad a mery[2] lif;
Wher hym gan to hold, As long As he myght,

[1] MS. "entire." [2] MS. "amery."

With fayre Melufine hys full noble wyffe. At dinner one day a great piece of ill news is brought them.
Thys gentill Raymonde was A courtois knyght.
At vauuent were both, as[1] refon was and ryght.
Anon had thay full dolorous noyfaunce ;
As at diner fate, at ther owñ plefaunce,

A ferrom thai faw com A meſſingere, [Fol. 67.] Afar off they saw a messenger who humbly saluted them; but in doubt about how to give his message, he changes colour. Raymond bids him welcome.
Which in humble wife thaim were faluting ;
But hys colour changed fodainly there,
For thys caufe that he the dede was doubting
Of that meſſage behofull hym doing.
And Raymound to hym tho ther faid anon :
"Gentill meſſingere, welcom to vs echon."

Off noueles Anon gan hym to enquere ; They inquire his news. (Alas! I must utter strange news, for which I am sad, for the message is right naught,
Where-hens he cam ; And fro what place þat day.
(Alas ! outre mofte noueles in ſtrange manere,
Tham vnto declare wo is me alway ;
For fuch tydinges And nouels ſhall fay
Which ben full ill, ryght noght, full of yre,
And ryght hiduous, Any man to hyre.

Where-thorugh Raymounde ſhall leſe the company owing to which Raymond shall lose his wife's company.) Then he tells them
Off faire Melufine, fro that for all-wais,
Neuer after *with* hys wife be truly :
Where ſhe no point had off diffame no dais.)
Then the meſſinger ſpake *with*-out delais,
"Sir, vnderſtande, my wordes and entent
To fay behouith, wherof Am dolent ;

On of youre children take hath mortall." that one of their children, Fromont, is dead, and Raymond asks if he
"Which is he?" faid Raymounde : "ſir, Fromont it is."
"hou is he dede? good ſir, fay me all.

[1] MS. "os."

is interred in our Lady's Abbey at Maillezais.

Is noght the body bered of hys?
On his foule mercy the lord do of blis!
Entered in churche is of our lady
In Abbay off Maillers full follemply."

[Fol. 67 b.] But the messenger replies that Fromont had not been buried, but burnt by Geoffrey in the Abbey.

Thys meſſinger ſaid with ſhill vois hautain,
"That bliſſed man neuer had ſepulture;
Wilbelouid ſir, this you ſay ſertain,
Aforn all will declare the Auenture,
hou Gaffray hym put to ſhameuous oppreſſure,
Fired and byrnde, ſtroyng the Abbay
Off Maillers, for Fromont hys ſake Alway,

The abbot and monks were all scorched and burnt to ashes; Geoffrey shut them in and burnt them, out of spite against Fromont.

The Abbot And monkes conuentuall,
That ther o foule man eſcapid noght,
But ſcorched and brend were to Aſkes ſmall;
And hou the doures made ſafte As cowde be thought;
For drede non durſte fle, to-geders brende and brought,
For the gret diſpite which in hert he had[1]
Off Fromont, that *in* monkes wede was clade."

Raymond, at the news, bathes his heart in sorrow, but sternly commands the messenger to be sure he is not lying.

When Raymound it knew, bliſſed *with* ryght hand,
In forow And wo hys hert bathed he.
yut Another tyme he gan to demand,
Commaunding hym ſtraitly As myght be,
That he hym ſay the trouth and verite.
"Se here," he ſaid, "gret cruelte ſhewyng,
Is it this? ward the that thou ly no thing!"

He replies that he saw it with his two eyes. Raymond, in great dolour,

HE hym anſwerd, "ſir, it is ryght this;
I dare wel ſay this, ſo god me do aid;
With my eyes to ſaw it, ſoo haue I blis!"
When Raymounde it hurd, colour changed *þat* braid,

[1] MS. "hed."

leaps upon horse-back,

For ende had he non in his dolour laid.
To hors lepe he tho *with*-out tarying,
In hert was ryght wo And full fore mornyng.

[Fol. 68.]
and rides at once to Maillezais. There he hears men complaining, and sees the abbey reduced to a ruin.

IN penſif muſes hym ſafte beſeying,
He reſt noght to ryde, ſo to Maillers cam.
Such A pace rode, yut ther the fray finding,
Raymounde perceiued the gret loſe[e][1] And ſhame.
Ech man complayned on Gaffray by name.
The Abbay ſaw brend And woxin defert,
Which cauſid gret wo hym to haue at hert.

Much enraged, he swears that Geoffrey shall die in a cruel manner, if he can but get hold of him.

HE beheld Aboute euery part ſure,
Seyng the Abbot And monkes brend were ;
Als ſeing the meruelous auenture,
"By god died in croſſe," Raymound gan ſwere,
That "Gaffray ſhold dye in cruell manere,
yff atwixſt his handis he hym haue myght,
He wold make hym ende, And ſhameuous deth dight!"

Again he mounts his horse, having no wish to stay there, and rides fast homeward.

There lepte vp Again hys courſere vppon,
So inly malice, full of wrath and yre,
In ſhuch cAs broght, wiſte not wat ſay ne don ;
To fogern̄ At Maillers more wold not deſire.
Fro-thens departed, tornyng hole entire
hamwarde in iournay ryght full beſily.
Al day ther he rode ſafte And ſpedfully,

He reaches the fort of Vouvant, and alights from his horse. He enters his chamber, and shuts the door.

So the myghty ſtrenght attained he was
Of vauuent caſtell, entred in and wend ;
hys courſere As the wynde forth went apace.
When *with*in was, After gan diſcend ;
lenger wold he noght bide ne attend.
In-to the chambre entred he Anon,
The dores to hym drew And cloſyd echon.

[1] See l. 3608. Fr. text, "perte."

[Fol. 68 b.] Then he begins to lament and wail, saying, "Ah! Fortune! thy dealings are too manifest, thou art not secret enough.

There began he wonder waymenting;
Complaynyng, wayling, And lamentyng to fee.
"Ha!" he faid, "Fortune, to riue art being;
Ne hafte thou not be with me full preue.
Aboue All other hafte[1] thou hated me!
Alas! this for-whi haft thou me in hate?
To tech me were thou contrary *þat* date,

When I put Earl Amery to death by moonlight, thou wert the cause. Alas! he was a peerless man!

When thou me madeft that murther to do
Off the noble Erle of peiters being,
Amery the good notable knyght tho;
I hym put to deth by the mone fhynyng.
By the, lady Fortone, thou were it caufing!
Alas! he was man in tyme full worthy!
Hys pere noght founde Athiffid Rome truly!

And next, thou madest me marry this infamous serpent; and one of my ten children by her, a holy monk, is dead,

After me made by thy will and uolente
To take this woman of the Fayry,
This[2] here diffamed ferpent vnto fe;
I am not wronged[3] thow it bewayle furely.
Then[4] fair children haue I had hir by;
But on is dede, whereof Am I penfiffe,
Which was A monke leuyng holy life.

and his brother slew him. Her children will do no good. I could not have believed it, had I not seen her in the bath.

Her now his brother hat[h] put hym deth to.
I trow thes children which that fhe bare
In this worle ne fhall no maner good do.
The begynnyng noght, of trouth to declare,
And, by the teres off uandofme hys fair,
hit I to beleue is but fantefy,
Ne hade I hir fain in the bath only;

[Fol. 69.] I saw through the hole in the door that she

I not ferre fro thens, the trouth vn-to tell,
By the litell hole of the dore gan fe
Fro the hed adon vnto the nauell

[1] MS. "baste." [2] MS. "Thes." [3] "wrong" (?)
[4] "Ten." Fr. text, "dix."

A full fair and gent woman there was fhe;
But under was A ferpent of verite,
A taill burled had of filuer and Afure,
Ther bete that all the water flaffhed fure,

was a woman from her head to her middle, but beneath a serpent, with a tail striped with blue and gold.

Full grett hiduou[s]neffe to my hert made.
Neuer was ther man if hir gan to fe
In the eftat that I ther faw hir clad,
But that wold Anon Away fro hir fle;
For it was thing dredfull As myght be.
God me ward and kepe fro werk diabolike,
And ftedfafte me hold in feith catholike!"

No man could have beheld her as I did, and not have fled for fear. God keep me from diabolic works!"

FAir Melusine tho the dore gan unfhit,
Well cowde it vnloke, in gan fhe repaire,
Alfo to the dore the key had of it.
Knyghtes, ladeis, damicelles full faire,
Squiers, yongmen, maydens debonair,
With Melusine ther entre made *þat* ftounde
Into the chambre where Raymound was founde.

Melusine unlocks the door, and brings with her into the chamber a company of squires and maidens.

In the faide chambre entred thai Anon.
Raymounde faw hys wife, marred was he tho.
Ther hauing no[1] point of colour hym vppon,
There be-gan of-new hys dolorous woo.
Off Raymounde And of hys fair loue alfo
Ther ftrange depa[r]tfon approched full ny,
Ryght As ye fhall hire declared fhortly.

Raymond is much vexed at the sight of her, and begins to lament anew. The moment of their parting wa now nigh at hand.

[Fol. 69 *b*.]

When Melufine faid to Raymound hir houfband,
"hauith not your hert fo marred for wo,
For *þat* ye may noght amend at no ftonde.
Men fhold fuch forow lightly lete flip and go.
yff Agayn our lord Gaffray haue myfdo,
And *þat* he hath diftroid that faire place
Off Maillers by hys mifdoing, percas

Melusine says to him, "Be not vexed. Even though Geoffrey has thus sinned, and has destroyed the abbey, he may yet, perchance,

[1] MS. "to." Fr. text, "neust point de couleur."

make his peace with God by repentance, and suffer pain in the body; for God's mercy is at all times ready.

Yut may he his pees Full wel do to make
Towardes our lord by grete repentance,
And for his trefpas pennaunce may he take,
Therfor fuffer pain in bodyly fubftaunce.
For goddis marce is[1] redy ech inftance,
So in hym he haue good contrecion,
And efter veray pure confeffion.

For God willeth not the death of a sinner, but that he should live to repent and to do good."

Off verray trouth my beleue is foo
That our lord god on hym will haue mercy,
For of the fynner wold not deth fhold go,
But louith better that lif fhold truly,
To haue time And fpace, being here wordly,
To effecte And end that he fhold repent
And to All goodneffe alfo to Affent."

But Raymond was spiteful and angry, and his reason awhile departed. Soon shall he say a word which he shall never retrieve.

Thys lady wifely And fagely gan to fpeke,
But Raymounde malice And full angry was;
At hys hert gret noyfaunce gan he fteke.
Refon deperted tho fro hym apas.
Such A word fhal fay, repent can not purchas;
Neuer fhall ne may, vnto þat he dy,
Conquere that he fhall And mofte leffe ther-by.

[Fol. 70.] With fierce look, proudly wroth, he spake plainly his foolish thought, uttering aloud the fatal word. "Ha! SERPENT! Behold and see

Off A fers behold, orguloufly wrought,
Als *with* the behold of his eyes twain,
And when that he had A litell thought,
his foley thought fpitfully fpake plain,
And afore all faid he *with* nois hautain,
"ha! ferpent! thy line in lif no good fhall doo!
Se here now A noble begynnyng, lo!

what Geoffrey thy son hath done! He hath scorched and burnt a hundred monks, of

What Gaffray *with* long toth thy fon hath doñ!
A hundred monkes feroched[2] and brend plain,
And after fro-thens made he departfon.

[1] MS. "his." [2] *Sic* in MS.

Where-of on was Fromont thi fon certain,
The which to cherifh euer was I fain!
Alas! thes monkes flain hath thi fon Gaffray.
But thay died noght Al cold, I may fery,[1]

whom Fromont thy son was one. But they died not all *cold*,

Euery of thaim fo gret An hed[2] had.
I haue ther be, I saw it verily,
Thaim al hath he brend, Gaffray thi fone made!"
Alas! the forow don fo difordinatly
Off that wurde which he *pronounced* openly!
For ther-in gan do gret ill and fin plain.
Melufine Anon lofte, neuer faw Again.

but every one was *hot* enough. Geoffrey, thy mad son, *burnt* them!" Alas! the sorrow caused by that fatal word, which lost him Melusine!

When Melufine hurd thys faid wurde this ftounde,
After hir fuftain forfoth fhe ne myght.
Zownyngly fhe fil wofully to grounde;
The forow fo gret, the hert fro hym-felf ryght.
Well ny fo half hour fhe lay, this fwet wight,
Proftrat to the erth, ftoned, fo zownyng
For that heuy word he was ther outring.

When Melusine heard that word, she swooned away, and lay in that swoon a whole half-hour, prostrate and astonied.

The barons ther cam, vp gan hir redrefe
Goodly, without hurt or blecere Any.
Anon A knight Approched hir hineffe,
hir vifage moifted with frefh water goodly,
Trowing A fiftene times or twenty.
By that reforted hir good hert Again,
Vnto Raymound faid foberly certain,

[Fol. 70 *b*.] The barons raised her up, and a knight moistened her face with cold water. She revives, and exclaims,

Forfoth to hym fpake full peteuoufly,
"Alas, alas, alas, Raymounde, this day!
Ill faw I the euery times any!
Ill faw I the beute of the, I fay;
Ill faw I thi ful gracious Aray,
Ill faw I the vppo[*n*] the Fontain,
Ill faw I thy vertuous demenyng playn,[3]

"Alas, Raymond! Ill for me that ever I saw thee! Wo is me that ever I saw thy beauty, thy array, thy virtuous conduct.

[1] "fay" (?)
[2] "het" (?) Fr. text, "chault."
[3] MS. "playng."

Alas that ever I saw thy precious body, that ever I loved thee! Evil was the hour and season

Ill faw I thy werking amerous,
Ille faw I thy precyous body,
Ille saw I thy iourne dolorous,
That with the was in loue Amouroufly!
Ille faw I thi fair contennaunce truly,
Ille faw I thy gracious body gent,
Ille faw I the hour And mene feafon prefent

wherein I first saw thy treason and falseness! Thine unmeasureable language has condemned me to eternal pain.

That the faw firft, thi trefon, thi falfneffe!
Thy fals vntrew fpech, thy huge cruelte,
Thy fals tonges unmefurabelneffe,
Me put to paynes perdurabilite,
That frothens neuer fhall I depart me,
But full moche pain fhal I fuffre Alway,
For pain fhall I haue vnto the lafte day,

[Fol. 71.]
Never shall you see my face again, O false, perjured traitor, murmurer, liar, betrayer, and false knight.

That it like or pleaffe our lord foueran
To come iuge And deme tho both quikke and dede!
Neuer fhal ye fe my clere uifage plain,
Moft fals traytour And fals forfworn in-ded,
Replet with uices, full of murmerhed,
Fals amerous, fals lefingmonger ryght,
Fals betrayer, And in-ded A fals knyght!

Thus hast thou caused us huge loss. Yet I could forgive your seeing me in the bath, because you told it to no one.

Full ill hafte thow, lo! my couenaunt hold,
That thow me promyfed in the begynnyng;
Thou hafte made us haue huge lofce many-fold.
yut myght I all this full wel be fuffryng,
Off that in the bath me fo were feyng,
Acaufe ye ne it faid no creature.
The fende knew it noght, the mifauenture.

Your revealing it has brought misfortune. Had

As fon As made was reuelacioñ there,
knawen was A-none For it fhalt miffall;
Yf that my[1] body to the Abode here,

[1] MS. "by." Fr. text, "mon corps."

Thow fholdeft perceiue ryght brefly *with*-all
All thy full fals periury difceiu[e] ![1]
yf truly ye had the couenaunt hold,
Vnto Mortall deth me to haue ye fhold,

you kept your covenant truly,

Ryght As A woman born̄ here naturall,
A feminine thyng, woman at al houres,
To end of my days here terreftriall.
By me[2] myghtefte haue had huge focoures.
After the hy kyng, full off honoures,
Wold haue born̄ Away the foule of me,
When that Fro body departed were fhe,

I should have been a woman at all hours, and, at death, the King of glory would have borne away my soul,

[Fol. 71 *b*.]

After beried in facred fepulture,
And *with* gret honour entered fhold be.
Alas! my fortune now putt Away fure!
In payn, in wo, in tormentes cruelte
Till day of iugement to fe.
By thy-felfen difceiued art in all,
Thou art fro hineffe into lowneffe fall.

aud I should have been buried with great honour. Alas! I must now suffer pain till doomsday.

Knowith thys, to you fhall come greuous pine,
Ne neuer goodneffe fhal refceiue certain;
All-way thy dedes fhall go to decline,
Ne neuer fhal be wrought ne made again,
And thi land fhal be, After thi difceffe plain,
Parted in partes I beleue fhal be,
Neuer to-geders hold in feueralte,

Thou too shalt suffer pain, thy great deeds shall decline, and thy land, at thy death, shall be divided.

By A foule man neuer maintayned be;
Many of your men fhal fall, fir Raymounde,
Neuer it acquire As in certainte.
Som of thaim fhall lefe both ther land and ground.
By fin fors of werre *with* many A wound,
Fro ther dwellyng full fafte fhall thay fle,
Neuer fhall reforte A-gane to contre.

Some of your! posterity shall lose both land and ground, and never return again home.

[1] See note.

[2] MS. "my."

Remember thy sons, for I shall be with thee no more!" Then she draws three barons aside, speaking to all sensibly in an under-tone.

REmembre thy fones, the befeche And pray,
For I fhal neuer hold the company,
To whome haue hert peteuous and tender ay,
I may no langer Abyde ne tary!"
Thre[1] of the Barons Apart drew haftily
Off mofte grettefte, fayng in wyfe pefible
As woman full fage And ryght fenfible;

[Fol. 72.] "Raymond, it behoves thee to beware of Horrible. If he live war shall never cease, nor bread nor wine increase,

"RAymounde, underftande, horrible thy fone gete
Do hym for to dy, neuer be he found.
Off it houith the to entremete,
Thre eyes fhal bere he vppon the grounde.
yff he life, werre neuer fhall faill noftounde
In all the contre off peiters to deuin,
Shall neuer encreffe neithir brede ne win,

for he shall lay waste all the country. He will destroy all I have made, and bring his brethren to poverty.

All the contre he fhall wafte, vnderftand,
So that no-thyng encreffe fhal ne may.
And all thes places that I gan do make,
Diftroy And undo, certes, is no nay;
And hys bretherin to porete put alway,
All tham, of trought, and all of the lyne,
Wherefor I you pray, lete hym dy *with* pine.

Thy sorrow for Geoffrey's deed is needless; it was a punishment upon the monks for their misdeeds.

The dole that thou hafte for Gaffray thy fone,
That the monkes brende fo difordinaitly,
knowith thys, that it was for punic*i*on
Taken vppon tho of religion hy,
For ther mifgouernaunce wroughten fo dayly,
Off our lordes part, for *þat* thai do wold
Many of thingys that they do ne fhold,

It is for that reason they are scorched, exiled, and destroyed.

NE ought of ryght ne of refon doo.
In that place our lord example hath fhewed.
Off goddis parte is thai ben fcorched fo,

[1] MS. "Ther;" but French text, "Trois."

All dede, exiled, And foule diftroyde.
3680 Many *with* lechery haue hym fore noyed;
Fals monkes, fynners, holdyng at no day
Ther ordre ne lif of the faid Abbay.

They have harmed themselves with lechery.

[Fol. 72 *b*.]
Iff your fone be dede with thaim outerly,
3684 I haue ye no routhe, ne of thaim neuer mo.
ye know what men fain mofte, lo! comynly,
For A fynner perifh fhall An hundred, lo!
An hundered hath brend, nombred vs unto,
3688 *With*out the Abbot which nombred is noght,
Which maifter is of thaim, As of refon ought,

If your son be dead with them, pity him not. A hundred men perish for one sinner's sake. So here 100 died, besides the abbot.

Iff ther were caufe, parcas he myght be.
Iff Gaffray tham haue fo deftroed all,
3692 It may be by hym reftored, parde,
A more fairer miniftre fourge[1] and make fhall
Then that which he hath caufed fo to fall.
This faid Abbay full wel may he reftore
3696 With many mo monkes then were before.

If Geoffrey have destroyed them, he may easily rebuild a fairer minster, and place in it more monks than before.

Off trought fo he will in ryght good manere,
Which then fhall be good peple verily,
Prayng for the line *with* myght and powere;
3700 Which church he fhall welle redyfy;
The place fhall be to fight more plefantly,
And more better then euer was before;
Thys Gaffray fhall doo gret goodneffe euermore,

There shall they pray for our lineage, and the place shall be fairer and better than before.

3704 MOfte fpecially when he comyth to Age.
But A thing I fhall you declare truly,
Ar I me departe fro your compernage,
To ende that all therof haue memory
3708 Which after An hundred yere furely
That yut ben unbore fhall hir fpeke of me;
Off trouth in the air thar men fhall me fee

But, ere I go, I tell you one thing more. In order that men may remember me, they shall see me in the air.

[1] MS. "fourgee."

[Fol. 73.] I shall be seen whenever the castle is about to change its master; if not in the air, on the earth, or by this fountain.

ABoute the caſtell off luſignen ſo,
Thre dais beforn in the ſame yere ryght
That the caſtell ſhall change hir maiſter, lo !
yff in the air men not ſe me myght,
And that thay mow not perceiue me to ſight,
I ſhall me Appere vppon the erth playn,
Or at the leſte beſides this Fontain.

For, as the castle was baptized after my name, it may be considered as my goddaughter.

KNow thys, Raymounde, for ſo ſhall it be,
Aff longe As thys ſaid caſtell ſhall endure,
For with my name baptiſed was ſhe,
And ſuch As it is deviſed I ſure,
My goddoughter I may calle [1] hir in vre.
Fule wel may it ſay Aforn peple All,
And, for Meluſine men me do to call,

Three days before the castle changes its lord, I shall certainly appear.

LuſignEn named, to name doth calange.
yut will I now ſay *with*out tarying,
When that of the lord ſhall come þe eſchange,
Thre dais be-forne me ſhall be ſeyng;
Certainly I ſhall ther be appering.
But loſte is now al my ſolas and eſe,
Sin ſo behouith me it leue and leſe ;

Raymond, when first we loved, we had all joy and solace; but now is our solace turned into vexation.

FOr now may it be in non other wiſe.
Raymounde, vnto you then at beginnyng,
When ye and I entreloued in louers giſe,
Al maner pleſance we were finding,
Joy And ſolas As loue And louer hauyng ;
Alas ! contrary now ſe thys inſtance,
Our ſolas torned into gret noyſance,

[Fol. 73 b.] Now is our good fortune turned to mischance, and our surety is in doubt.

And in to forow tranſport our gladneſſe,
Our huge uigour to febleſſe this inſtance,
Our pleſire into diſpleſance expreſſe,
Our full good fortune into gret miſe[h]ance,

[1] MS. "called."

Our vertuous goodnes into curced chance;
In doubte is all our furete to deuiſe,
And our noble And bliſſed franchiſe

Is full ſtrangely changed into ſeruice,
By peruers fortune labored and founde,
Which on reiſith, Anothir don briſe,
But noght gain our lorde þat cauſyng me þis ſtound;
ys only by your dedes, ſir Raymounde,
Als by your labbyng tonges iongling,
ye ſhall leſſe your loue for your large ſpeking.

Our freedom is turned to service by perverse fortune, and all owing to the jangling of your blabbing tongue.

NOw more lenger here may I not to dwell,
Fair loue, me behouith hens As for to go.
your miſdedis god perdon euerydell,
Whereof Agayne me ye haue ſo myſdo,
For by you ſhall ſuffer torment And woo,
vnto the dredfull day of Iugement;—
And by the I was fro[1] forow ex[e]mpte,

Now must I go. God pardon you for being the cause of my suffering torment."

And into yoy entred!—Alas! wo I Am,
For now Am I caſte into dolorous woo,
Fro-whens[2] that I iſſewed and came!"
Such ful ſory dole Meluſine lad tho,
That body off humayn creature, lo!
Which hir complaint hurd *with* huge ſighes ſore,
Ne ſhold withold fro weping euermore.

Such grief had Melusine that none that heard her could withhold from weeping.

Raymounde heuily wrang his handes twain,
Such grenaunce toke tho, Almoſte gan he dy,
So was he take *with* heuy wurdes plain,
That o foule wurde coude not bryng forth truly.
She hym Approched enbraſing ſwetly,

[Fol. 74.] Raymond was so grieved at her words that he could say no word himself. The two kiss each other sadly.

[1] MS. "for." [2] MS. "For whens."

To-geders kyffing thes to Amerous
In o torment ther were both dolorous.

They both swoon away, and the barons trow they are both dead and cold.

Fvl greuous Anguiſh in ther hertes loke,
That for heuineſſe both gan fall to grounde,
zowning ther full long A maner dethis ſtroke,
Without takyng breth or wynde any ſtounde.
The Barons trowing Meluſine and Raymound
That thes louers to were both dede and cold ;
For long ſpace And tyme ſuch wife gan thai hold,

Recovering from the swoon, they sighed and wrang their hands. All the whole rout who see them, weep.

And when fro zowning that thai came Agane,
And that thai myght breth, to ſigh be-gan fore,
To waile, to wepe, to forely complain,
Ther handes wrange And ſtrained euermore,
Non knew the forow by thaim lade and bore.
Whereof all thay wepte ſtanding ther Aboute
With teres many, All the ful hole route.

Raymond entreats Melusine to pardon him, but she says that this cannot be.

And meluſine, to whome was full greuous,
Ryght piteuoufly ſhe releued tho.
Raymound hir praid, as man generous,
Ther knelyng, that ſhe hym pardon wolde, lo !
Off hir courtefy, that he hade myſdo ;
Which by gret miſchefe don gain hir hath he.
Thys lady hym faide that it myght not bee,

[Fol. 74 *b.*] She bids him especially think of his son Raynold, for that he should be Earl of Forest.

Hit pleaſe ne wold the king celeſtiall.
"But, fair loue ! I you here beſeche and pray,
Thenke on your loue here terreſtriall,
your ſone Fromount in obliuy put ay,
And in Raynold loke ye thenke Alway,
For of the foreſte Erle ſhall he be, lo !
In all goodneſſe thenke, And wel ſhall ye doo.

The Earl of Forest would soon die.

The Erle of foreſte here long ſhall not byde
In this worlde here After my departſon,

3804 Alfo will thenke for Thierry to prouyde,
For yut fhall he [1] doo thynges manyon.
At norifh pappes yut is his perfon ;
Fro[2] partenay to Rochell the lande fhall iuftice,
3808 An inly good knight fhall he be and wyfe.

He is also to provide for Thierry, who would afterwards rule the land from Partenay to Rochelle.

And all which fro hym linially iffew,
Shall be knightes good, hardy, and wurthy,
Full of gud corage and of all uertew,
3812 And his linage fhall longe endure truly.
Fair loue, know thys well, that noble Thierry
Wurthy and hardy Alfo fhall he be.
I fhall thenke on you, fwete loue, pray for me

Also Thierry's lineage should be good knights, and long endure. She asks Raymond to pray for her,

3816 All dais while lif in worle here haue ye.
Off me fhall ye haue both ayde and comfort
In all your nedes of neceffite.
Off aduerfite en-gree[3] take the porte.
3820 Neuer in femine forme to you fhall reforte,
Neuer fhall ye fe Melufine truly,
That fo was wont to hold you company !" [4]

for that she would aid him in all his needs. He must bear his adversity well. She now must go.

[Fol. 75.]
Innepee fhe lepte the feneftre vppon,
3824 Aboue beheld fhe uerdures floureffhing ;
Without taking leue Away wold not gon,
For the Barons, of whom after fhall be fpeking,
Off lades, damycelles, knightes beyng,
3828 Squiers, And maydens, off all leue toke fhe,
For whome euery man wepte of pette.

She then leaps upon the window, but will not yet depart before she has bidden all farewell.

Afterwarde fhe faid, "adieu ! fir Raymounde,
Whom I fo loued with hert Fyn And plain,
3832 Neuer fhall youe fe at no day ne ftounde.
Adieu, my hert ! Adieu, my loue certain !

"Adieu ! Sir Raymond, my heart, my sovereign joy, my gentle jewel !

[1] MS. "ye." Fr. "Il fera."
[2] MS. "For."
[3] MS. "engree."
[4] At the foot of this page are the catchwords, "innepee fhe lepte the."

Adieu, creature, my ioy fouerain !
Adieu, myn entire loue mofte gracious !
Adieu, my gentile Iewell precious !

Adieu ! my sweet nurse, my grace, and noblest debonair youngling !

Adieu, my fwete norifh And norriture !
Adieu, my plefaunce And gladneffe worly !
Adieu, full meruelous fwete creature !
Adieu, my grace ! Adieu, my ioyes hy !
Adieu, what that in worle loue mofte hertly !
Adieu, the mofte good ! Adieu, the mofte faire !
Adieu, the nobleft yongling debonair !

Adieu ! my sugar-sweet sovereign lord ! To God I commend you, to keep your sweet life.

Adieu, the befte ! Adieu, fwettefte All Aboue !
Adieu, my gracyous fpouce of recorde !
Adieu, I fay, myn owne vertuous loue !
Adieu, fuete houfbonde by louis concord !
Adieu, my fugret fuete fouerain lorde !
Adieu commaunde, my ioy and boldneffe !
Adieu commaunde, your fuete lif to driffe.

[Fol. 75 *b.*] Adieu ! Lusignan ! And adieu, sweet sounds of instruments !"

Adieu, my folas And iewell roiall !
Adieu commaunde all peple here, fothlefe !
Adieu, lufignen, fourged fair in all ;
Adieu, al that which may A lady plefe !
Adieu, the gladneffe, mirthes ioy and efe !
Adieu, the fuete found of ech Inftrument !
Adieu, I fay, difportes reuerent !

Thus having said, she leapt out of the window, and so passed away.

Adieu, wurthiefte ! Adieu, *with* all honour !
Adieu, my fuete loue prented *in* hert fad !
Our lorde the aide And be thi concellour !"
With-out more fpech A lepe ther fhe made,
(Seyng the Barons all that ther were had),
Thorught A feniftre fo paffed and wend
When of hyr wurdes thys had made an ende.

She was at once changed wholly

Thourgh the feniftre in fuch wife gan fle
Melufine *with*out taring Any.

In-to A ſerpent changed tho was ſhe, into a serpent, striped with argent and azure.
Of huge grettneſſe and lenght was verily,
Wherof all were Aftoned ſtrongly ;
With ſiluer and Afure ther burled was,
Thys fairy woma*n* ſuch tail gan purchas,

Which prefently was become A ſerpent ; Three times she went round the castle, uplifting a loud cry at every turn.
Whereof Raymou*n*d bement hir hugely.
Thre tymes the caſtell enuironee went ;
At euery tour A ffounde yaf ſhe hyly,
Wonder meruelous caſt ſhe vp A cry
Full ſtrange vnto hire, And ryght piteuous,
Hyr cry full heuy, wonder dolorous.

Which I writte is trouth, therof ly no thyng. [Fol. 76.] This that I write is truth; I lie not. Raymond tears his hair and curses his hou. of birth.
She thens forth went, vnto the air gan ſle.
Ther hir loft Raymound, " Alas !" lowde crying,
Ful moche complained And ther wailed he.
Hys heres[1] faſte drew, fore hir bement, parde,
Curſing the houre that euer he was born̄,
Raymound, out fro wit for wo almoſte lorn̄,

In[2] hy ſhill uois the Barons ſaid before, "Adieu !" he cries, "my fair mistress, my joy, my goods, and my surety !
" Adieu, my lady, with heres yowlowneſſe ![3]
Adieu, all debonerte for euermore !
Adieu, I ſay you, my fair ſuete maiſtreſſe !
Adieu, my ioy, my grace, And my richeſſe !
Adieu, my goodes and all my ſurete !
Adieu commaunde, all the diſporte of me.

Adieu, my iewell ! Adieu, my ſolas ! Adieu ! my jewel, my sweet flower !
Adieu, you ſay, my lady precioufe !
Adieu, the fair whilom the prife gan purchas !
Adieu, my wife ! Adieu, my trew ſpouſe !
Adieu, my lady verray gracioufe !
Adieu, I you ſay, my full doucet floure !
Adieu, my lady of full gret valoure !

[1] MS. "heree." [2] MS. "IIn." [3] MS. "yow lowneſſe."

Adieu! fair rose, fair violet!

Adieu, fuete throte of foundes clereneffe !
Adieu, fair Rofe ! Adieu, violet [1] alfo !
Adieu, the tree of louers feithfulneffe !
Adieu, I fay my gentile lady vnto.
Adieu, my glory ! Adieu, my ioy, lo !
Adieu, the fair that fo hath loued me !
My goode days gon, fhall I neuer you fe."

[Fol. 76 *b.*] What shall I now do? Never had man such sorrow!

Ryght this Raymounde bewaled and bement
his noble wife, for whom felt dolour,
Which thorugh the Air hir flight tho hent,
Wherefor he hath A fory hert *þat* houre.
"Alas!" Raymound faid, "wat do fhall or labour?
For certes I haue forow ynow at hert,
Neuer man had at the full fo fmert.

I myself made the ditch wherein I now fall; now am I sadder than any 'ghost' alive."

FOrwhy fhold I noght be A plain man,
yff I fele at hert noyfaunce mondiall?
Hit to declare good refon if I can,
For the diche haue made wheron now I fall.
Now Am I Acurfed, to wo am made thrall,
Now I am dolorous And full penfiffe
More then Any gofte felt in his life."

His barons comfort him, and bid him bear his burden softly.

But ther had he A noble company,
Which full gentilly gan hym to comforth,
And many hym faid And fhewed hertly,
That thay hym wold gladly recomfort,
That foftly fhold bere that dolorous port,
Many examples to hy*m* exort faid,
Caufyng fumwhat leffe hys forow *þat* braid.

A baron advises him to slay Hor-

After hym faid A fenfible Baron̄,
"Of your fon horrible behouith, lo!

[1] MS. "violent."

To ordain As ordained to be doñ
Meluſine, when concell you gaffe vnto.
Anon þat men ſhold make hym to deth go,
Or periſh he wold the contre and grounde."
"My lordes preſent," ther tham ſaid Raymounde,

rible, as Melusine suggested.

"YOu beſeche And pray tary noght ne bide
As therof do ye hir commaundment,
So he be dede, I charge not how no tyde."
"To pleſire, And will do all your entent;"
Thay wold no lenger ther tary, but forth went.
Raymound, which ſtrongly wroth angry was
For thys forowfull And miſcheuous cas,

[Fol. 77.] Raymond commands them to do so, and they depart to find him.

Wich that ceaſon conquered was and gett,
As A fory man thens gan he renew,
Into A chambre ther made he retret,
hit unſhit entring, the dore after drew,
Ther lamentac*i*on be-gan he of-new
In this ſaid chambre ther, all foule, aloñ;
No more of Raymound, but paſſe forth and goñ,

Raymond retreats into a chamber alone, and there renews his lamentation.

Off the Barons hy fay ſhall of contre.
Full ſenſible were, inly wyſe and ſage,
Orrible toke by on Aſſent and gre,
In A caue hym ſhitte w*ith*-out othir damage,
Off moiſty hay made bring to thys uiage,
The fire put w*ith*-in, ſo with fumy ſmoke
Was the caue Anon full As myght be ſtoke.

The barons shut Horrible up in a cave, fill the entrance with moist hay, and set fire to it,

Then loſte horrible both breth and power,
Stifled he was Anon w*ith* ſmoky fume fure.
After thay hym put into A faire bere,
Nobly beried, hauing ſepulture.
The obſequie[1] doñ And compleſhed pure

so that he was soon stifled. Then they put him into a fair bier, and buried him nobly.

[1] MS. "obſequire."

After the wurdes And noble doctrine,
As lored and thaught had good Melusine.

[Fol. 77 b.] They then commend him to God, depart, and return to Raymond.

Entered in church, non for hym can mourn,
After vnto god thay hym commaundyng.
Fro-thens departed without other fogourn ;
Again to Raymounde were thay retornyng,
Which dolorous wo At hert was feling,
With eyes fore wepte he in mornyng plite,
A man can ne may hys fory dole write.

Raymond again laments, saying, "It was all through my cousin that I became a forsworn man.

MAny tymes ofte, "my fwete loue," fayng,
"The haue difceiued And betrayed, lo !
By the exort of vntrew man makyng,
Al this me hath made my cofin to doo.
I Am by hym fals And als forfworne to,
Ful of vice am and of Iniury ;
For ill chaunce me fell unfortunatly

I was unfortunate at first, when I slew my sovereign lord; and, secondly, when I was false to my lady.

At my firfte gynnyng And commencement,
When in the wode my fouerain lord fly.
A gretter mifchef neuer men gan hent,
And fithen when me fewed periury
Off that I had fworn to my fayr lady,
That fo loued, by whom good and honour had,
By whom I was fufteyned and lord made ;

False fortune's cruel envy has brought me to this, whereby I have lost all my riches,

By whom all goodnes me cam fuffifantly,
By whom, vnder god, lif had and comforth.
But the Fals fortune, by cruel enuy,
Me hath brought to thys full fharpe & hard port,
Wherby [1] lofte haue I all my hole difport,
Where like-wife lofte my mirth and gladneffe,
Wherby Alfo loft my hole rycheffe ;

[1] MS. "Bherby."

Wherby lofte haue I yoy of eternite ; [Fol. 78.] and eternal joy. Melusine always loved me; my heart trembles with pity.
That is, Melufine the fair fuete wyght,
Whom I loued wel, As myfelf, parde,
She allwais loued me *with* hert parfight,
And the dede thereof fhewid fhe to ryght.
In time togeders we haue be enfemble,
Where-of of pete my hert doth trimble ;

When I bethenke the trouth and verite, I had rather die for evermore than suffer so grievous pain.
Therof fhold I well haue gret pite,
And fo fhall I haue all the lif of me,
Of whom holdeth he to non end fhall go.
I luf better to dy for euermo
Then for to fuffer fo greuous A pain
vntill fo be that ende fhall attain.

Full cruell pain I haue, but yut fhall not end, My sorrow will never end till I die.
Ne yut fhall not ende Al myn ille truly
Till I diffynid be, and fro[1] the worle wend.
Time is for I may no lenger fructefy
As in thys worle, neither edefy
Thyng but that it goth vnto decline,
Rather or later to an endly fine.

For Melufine, whom god do warde and kepe, For so Melusine told me." Raymond is sore tormented.
Me ther faid full well at hir departfon,
Which caufith my forow in hert part and lepe."
Parcelly, As the heres of eyes don,
With teres makyng fpraucles manyon,
Ryght fo is Raymound tormented full fore,
Sore wepyng, teres making euermore ;

For Melufine, the woman off Fary, [Fol. 78 *b*.] But Melusine came often by night into
Which thar-after cam full many A nyght

[1] MS. "for."

Thierry's chamber, and often dressed and fed him. She was often seen by the nurses,

Into the chambre right full fecrely[1]
Wher norifhed was Terry fuetly to ryght,
That fhe Full ofte hym raid and dight,
Chaufed, milked, And rechaufed Again.
Ther many tymes by the norifh fain,

who told Raymond of it, to his great joy.

But thay durfte noght in no wise vp-rife,
Neither o foule wurde to outre or fay,
But vnto ther lord told the maner wife,
Wherof Raymond had full huge ioy alway.
In hys hert faid with fofte vois that day,
"That yut Melufine hope and truft to haue;"
Full ill in hys brefte fuch thoughtes gan craue.

Thierry grew more in one month than other babes in four, but it was due to his mother's nursing.

VAnifhede is fhe fro hys fyght for ay,
Remedy non, gold, filuer, ne honour.
Thierry cherifhed Amendid Alway,
(Men merueled gretly off it that hour),
In a moneth more then other in four.
Hys fwet moder on hym fuch wyfe thought,
Norifhed *with* hir milke And forth full wel brought.

She was often, too, in his father's chamber. I must now leave speaking of Raymond,

OFte in his fader chambyr fhe was;
To norifh no pappe like moders neuer-mo,
As beforn̄ is faid, ho many it purchas.
here ceffe I and leue now, ferther will not goo
Off wofull Raymounde And hys fones two,
here thys time not fay vnto your prefence,
But vnto declare will do my diligens

[Fol. 79.] and tell you about Geoffrey. Remember that I am

OFf Gaffray with long toth you outre And fay.
Where I ly or no, god knowith An-hy;
I lerned it noght certes at no day;
A lier to be founde fhame were outerly.

[1] MS. "fecerly."

Gaffray went noght ouer taryinly, not lying. Geoffrey sailed swiftly on,
Thorugh the fe went, ouer pafe rowing,
By fors of people fo forth ther failling.

HE tho ariued And taried noght and reached Northumberland, where the giant made war. The barons come to greet him,
In norbelande, fefing both land and ground,
Where this Geant were procured and wrought.
And when Gaffray difcended was þat ftound,
The Baroñs bode noght, gain hym went hole & found,
Gretteft and wurthieft of the faid contre,
Comyng to hym, *with*-out excufed to be.

The gret, the meene, the litell, foth to tell, both great and small. A baron tells him how their country was enthralled by that fierce, huge, troublesome, and proud giant.
Approched And cam to hym, gret and fmall.
A gret Baron then, witty, were, and fell,
Ther hym reherfing the Geant dedes All,
Ther liberte lofte, ther contre made thrall
With that fers Geant huge and comerous,
Horrible, myghty, ftrong, And orgulous.

IN A iournay, to certefy you all, In one day he slew a hundred knights, and could as soon slay a thousand as one.
An hundered knightes of this faid contre
Diftroed and flain, put to deth mortall.
So orgulous fette, full of cruelte,
Gret uengaunce gan do to the comynte ;
As curfedly fly A thoufand As on,
The ft[r]engeft mortal efchew wold hys perfon.

GAffray Anfwered, "then is he a Fend,[1] [Fol. 79 *b*.] Geoffrey answered, "Then is he a fiend, but nevertheless I will soon destroy him. I must find this soldier.
A dredful deuill full of cruelte.
But noght-for-that fro hym me will diffende,
By me fonly diftroed fhall he be.
hys byding place fhewith unto me,

[1] MS. "affend."

For non othir caufe comyn Am this houre,
But only to fynde this faid foudiour,

He shall fare ill ere seven weeks pass. Provide me a guide, that I may see him to discomfit him."

Which fo goth Aboute, you fore diftrufſand.
This knoith uerily, ill fhall he betide
Or wekes feuyn ben paſſed to comaunde.
Do me vnto take here fom maner gide,
To this place and ſtede me conuey to ride,
So I may hym ſe for to diſcomfight."
As he defired, like gan to hym dight,

Geoffrey takes a debonair guide, and commends himself to God.

A gide hym taken, knowing the contre,
With all the places where-to gan repair,
Where this Geant was wont dwellyng to be,
hys habitac*i*on And manc*i*on fair.
Such A gide hym toke which was debonare,
After hym commaunde to our lordes grace.
Gaffray went thens, departing fro *þat* place.

He and his guide at last spy the giant under a tree, sitting on a marble stone.

HE And hys gide Apace forth riding,
Till that on full hy thai gan well Auiſe,
Both of tham faſte ther courſers ſporing.
Then ny approched, Aboute gan deuiſe.
Vnder A tre fate this Geant in ſtrange wiſe;
On a marbre ſtone at that ceaſon fatte;
The Gide for gret drede trembled and ſwatte.

[Fol. 80.]
The guide is frightened. Geoffrey laughs at him, and says he has not been misled. The guide wishes to be off,

HE fore Abaſſhed, changing his colour.
Gaffray it ſaw, and gan to laugh fad;
After in laughter faide to hys Gidour,
As for ryght noght drede and fere he[1] hade,
For thought ſhould not miſtriſte god to be miſlad.
"Good be in pees," faid to Gaffray the gide,
"Behofull is me to uoide and go wide.

[1] MS. "the."

as he has shown him Grimold the giant; and he assures Geoffrey that remaining there is no jape.

FOr all richeffe and gold worly being,
More nerre wold approche noght this faid mountain,
Ne lenger with you be here fogernyng,
Sin to you haue I fhewed here certain
Grimold the Geant moft meruelous plain.
Sir Gaffray," he faid, "here this is no iape,
To god you commaunde, me will hens faft fcape."

Geoffrey laughs, and asks him to remain and see the battle, which will be soon decided.

Gaffray laughed fafte, after to hym faid,
For all loues defired and befought,
A litell while bide hertly hym praid,
That he wold behold what wife that thai fought.
"For in litell fpace knowlich fhold be wrought
As ho of us to the better fhold haue,
And at this iournay ho hym beft can faue."

The guide says he does not care to see it. Geoffrey laughs sweetly, and again begs him to wait

This gide anfwered, "no charge of your bataill,
you gided haue to point, lenger will noght bide;
yff ye win, no part wil ne to myn auaill.
Fro[1] you will depart, Again wil I ride."
Gaffray therof laughed fuetly that tide,
Then to the gide said, "now vnderftande me,
In thys place abide vnto that ye fee

[Fol. 80 b.] till he sees who gets the best of it. He can then return and tell the others. The guide consents,

Ho bering hym beft and ho better haue;
That fain And don, torn my men vnto.
Without Any doubte yut may ye go faue,
Our Army dedes declare, all we doo,
And al my gouernaunce telling thaim alfo."
Then hym faid the gide, "do fhall your entent,
My lord, I am at your commaundement.

[1] MS. "For."

but declares he is in great dread, and that if Geoffrey knew the giant as well as he did, he would think twice about it.

DEliuerly to hym ye procede,
Affured am noght, ne haue hert non bold.
Of verray trouth I haue fuch fere and drede
Of this horrible fende, Geant Grimold,
That almofte my herte faillith lif to hold,
And if ye knew hym lik-wife As I doo,
Auifed wold ye be or to hym wold goo."

But Geoffrey promises that the giant shall die. Now our Lord aid him.

GAffray anfwerd, "of hym haue ye no doute;
Grimold here fhal dy, no-while fhall endure."
But yut Gaffray fhall fynd hym ftoute,
Ful ftrong was Grimold in werly feomfiture.
Our lord Gaffray gyf aid and[1] conforture.
Nedfull was to hym at that ceafon ryght
More then euer had Any other knight,

Grimold had, singly, slain a thousand or more men. Never was there a worse man seen.

Which fwerd gan bere or garde *with* Any.
For[2] A thoufande or mo of contre
Grimold the Geant flain had he fowly.
Where-for peple had wonderly to fe
huge heuineffe And gret iniquite.
Neuer wurfe man fain, truly to rehers,
For meruelous was in dedes diuers.

[Fol. 81.] Geoffrey mounts, leaves the valley, and rides up the mountain, leaving the guide below.

Then Gaffray hafted, A horfebacke ryding,
The montain gan take, leuing the ualay,
Which that vppon was A fantain walling,
leuing the medew And the playnes ay.
Als the gide lefte ther in that place alway;
God wold not *þat* ill Grimold fhold hym doo,
Which fo was to doubte in euery ftour tho.

Grimold, perceiving Geoffrey, wonders how one sole

GAffray on hym toke vp go the montain;
Grimold perceiued it, moch gan he meruaill

[1] "werly" is repeated after "and." [2] MS. "Fo."

That O foule man greithed hym to attain,
As to that place come hym For to aſſaill,
Sayng hym wold hate without any faill.
But when in muſing A litell had be,
he ſaid, "this worthy man cometh to me

man dare come to assail him, but he thinks he must be coming to propose a peace.

HEre, As I beleue, for to trete A pees."
The path went he up wonder buſtelly.
"Off fine fors," thought he, "mofte ſpeke, not tonge lefe,
Such on entreth vp, don ſhall haſtily."
A huge leuer toke in handes plainly,
To fight femyng noght no body humain.
hym *with* for to aide, this leuer ſhoke plain

Grimold says he shall soon go down again. Then he takes in his hands a huge lever,

In ſuch maner wife As man A ſtaf wold,
Or A lytell body of fixe or fef[1] yere age,
And better then, I ſay, feff[2] tymes fold
As a *pro*per ſtaf to walk in viage.
For the which after his ſtrenght & corage,
Ryght noght is to fyght *with*-ſay again,
But that the ſtafe[3] was more then Any fain,

which he uses as a staff, or as a little child would a stick. Without gainsaying, the staff was huge,

Which lightly ne wold to bow ne aply.
yut it behouith that A ſtaf ply ſhold
To the pley of ſuch at ſom tyme truly,
When in his handes this ſtafe gan to hold.
Seing that Gaffray towarde hym come wold,
In ſhill hautain uois toke hym lowde to cry,
"how comeſt thou now me As to diffy?

[Fol. 81 *b*.] and could not easily be bent. Seeing Geoffrey coming, he cries aloud, "How comest thou here?

"What art thou, ſay me, what goſt thou to feke?
Off deth no warant neuer ſhalt thou haue."
Gaffray anon An anſwere oute gan breke,

Thou shalt have no warrant from death." Geoffrey answers, "Ribald,

[1] MS. "of fef." [2] MS. "feff." [3] MS. "ſtafte."

look that thou save thyself; I shall smite off thy head."

"Therof ſhall the werñ; Rebaude, loke the ſaue;
For to ſcomfite the fouly I the craue.
Off thi hed ſhall ſmite; dy ſhalt thou by me
Mortally Anon, now here diffynde the,

Grimold, hearing this, began to laugh, and ironically asks Geoffrey to spare his life. But Geoffrey sternly replies,

The unto waran*t*, certes, thou ne may."
Grymold, this hiring, to[ke][1] hym to laugh tho.
Ther hym ſaid Grymold, "you beſeche and pray,
Fair ſir, ſaue my life, lete me on-lif go,
Taking this peple to ranſon alſo!"
Geffray vnderſtode, "cherle!" ſaid haſtily,
"Scorneſt thou w*ith* me? certes thou ſhalt dy!

that he trusts to rend his head to the teeth. Geoffrey braces on his shield, and shakes his spear, being no coward.

HEre lo! ſhalt thou dy; I limite thi place,
Neuer Ranſon take ſhall I to thy charge;
But doñ to the teeth the ſhall rent by grace."
Ther had was A place, inly gret And large.
Gaffray that tyme, enbraſing ſhild and targe,
By malice And wreth his ſpere Faſte he ſhoke,
his courſere ſpored, no ſentiſe on hym toke,

[Fol. 82.] Riding straight at the giant, he deals him such a blow that only his steel hauberk saved him.

FOr noble loos And proweſſe to acquire.
With the Forhed plain gain hym went, & ſmote
Enmyddes the breſt under the pappe with yre.
Such A ſtroke hym dalt ther vppon hys cote,
Ne had the hauberke ſmal mail be, god wote,
Als hys breſt of ſtile, ille hym hade come ſure;
For Grimold ther was at ille auenture.

Grimold fell on the ground,

NOght-for-that yut vppon the hard ground
Tombled Grimold enmeddes the mountain,

[1] Fr. text, "*si prent a rire.*"

hys legges reifed up an-hy that ftound,
Wher-*with* Grimold was ftrongly greued plain.
Full wightly tho releued hym fertain,
In hys hert gan fele full dolorous woo.
That Gaffray this faw, ther difcended tho

throwing up his legs. But soon he got up again, while Geoffrey alights

That hys hors fhold noght myfcheuously fle,
As vnder hym to mortall deth noght caft.
Grimold the Geant, lenger bode noght he,
But vp hym Reifed, Gaffray beheld fafte[1];
So but litell faw hym don to thrafte,
Als in fo litell body fuch uertew,
Ther hym demaunding, "what art thou? fay trew,

that his horse may not be killed under him. Grimold looks at Geoffrey, and in wonder asks his name.

That fuch a ftroke me toke? neuer felt fuch on,
My lemys fo caft vp; yut know I noght the
Wherehens thou art, ne what is thy perfon.
But off the me uenge fhamed fhall I be;
And yut, fo I am; but yut, fay thou me,
What thou art me fay, I the here require;
No gentill knyght art but graunt my defire."

He says he never threw his limbs up like that before, yet he is ashamed to revenge himself, and again asks his name.

GAffray Anfwerd to [t]hys baculere,[2]
"My name wil not hide by ryght non engine,
Gaffray *with* the gret toth named am awhere,
In many contres know the name of myne;
For I Am Gaffray, fone to Melufine,
Off lufignen borne of *þat* good lady,
And of lufignen, know thou wel, am I."

[Fol. 82 *b*.] Geoffrey answered this bachelor, "I am Geoffrey of Lusignan, Melusine's son."

When thys had fpoken vnto hym Gaffray,
The Geant hym faid, "I know the full well;
Full moch haue I hurd fpokyn of the aday,
And of thy gret proweffe eueridell.

The giant says that he knows him now, for that

[1] MS. "fafte." [2] MS. "baiulere."

he had slain Guedon his cousin, for which he will now pay him off.

Guedon thou flyeft, my cofyn', foth to tell,
In guerrande lande ; thy guerdon for to haue,
To this place ert come it to fpeke and craue.

The giant thought he was speaking truth, but he was nearer lying. Geoffrey tells him that desire of revenge will increase his hurt.

Hit fhalt thou haue by fors of myghty were,
For of that fhall I here now take vengance."
he trowed fay trouth, but lied more nerre.
Gaffray hym faid, "trowyng this inftance,
Such fuppoffe to uenge ther huge fhame perfchance,
Which ofte creffith hurt, men may wel it fe,
In fondry places conceyued may be."

The giant strikes at Geoffrey with his lever, but Geoffrey blenches, and the lever makes a great hole in the rock.

Thys cruell Geant ne myght hym *with*hold
When fo hym faw fcorn, his leuer haufed hy,
Gaffray to fmite trowyng tho he fhold.
Apart Gaffray uoided full warly,
Somwhat blent, the ftroke fo forth paffyng by,
With hym noght mette; the leuer doñ to ground
With-in the Roche made A grett depe trowe *þat* ftounde ;

[Fol. 83.] It tears the rock a foot deep. Geoffrey lends the giant a stroke on the elbow.

For it throwen was wonder buftefly,
And *with* fuch rudeffe gan it to difcend,
That A plain fote large the roche tare ftrangely.
Gaffray hys fwerd drew hym for to diffend,
On the elbow [1] the Geant fmote at end,
Such a ftroke hym lent, to full huge maruell,
That of the hauberk brek many a maill ;

The grass round about becomes red. The giant again raises his lever.

Fvll litell fauted, fouled had noght be.
The vermail blode doñ ryn wonderly,
The herbes Aboute becam [2] red to fe.
This fers Geant tho to Gaffray cam wightly,
With full malice yre And cruell enuy

[1] MS. "ellow." [2] MS. "becan."

The gret leuer reifed vp and hy brought ;
Full heuy was, but it greuyd hym noght ;

GAffray thought fmite, but he noyded place.
Ther the ftroke fill don thre foote in-to grounde,
So in harde roche fmote he ther apace ;
Whereof the Geant was full wroth that ftounde.
With that ftroke his arme Aftoned tho founde,
And thys faid leuer to-rent thorughly,
And Amidward broken outerly ;

Geoffrey again blenches, and the stroke tears the ground three feet deep, so that the giant finds his arm stunned and his lever broken.

Wherof Gaffray thankes to godd yilding.
Ther Gaffray hym fmot *with* hys fwerd full fafte,
Hys grett ftrenght And fors ther manly fhewing,
An-hy hym fmoth vppon the feul in hafte,
The Geant *with* that ftroke Almofte doñ cafte ;
To whome *þat* ftripe was greuous manyfold.
For forow And wo An-hy hys hand gan hold,

Then Geoffrey shows his strength, and smites the giant a grievous stroke on the skull.

GAffray forthwith fmote vppon the hed an-hy ;
Off that greuous ftroke Gaffray greued fore.
The Geant his fufte lete to fle ftrongly ;
Gaffray *with* his fwerd fmote hym euermore,
To whom belonged fight in knightly lore,
Vppon hys fhuldre A ftroke gaffe of meruell
That he rent and brak both hauberke & maill.

[Fol. 83 *b*.] Next the giant smites Geoffrey on the head, but Geoffrey returns him a marvellous stroke on the shoulder, which rends both hauberk and mail.

Plain pawme of hande the fwerde made entre ;
The fanguine blode doñ ran the belay,
Anon all made purpurat rede to fe.
Thys Geant, of whom we declare and fay,
hys goddys [1] corfed, hys goddys gan renay,
Enleffe thei [2] wold gif hym Aid [3] or focour,
Both Margot, polin, Bernagant that houre,

The giant, severely wounded, curses his gods and abjures them, both Magot, Apolin, and Ternagant.*

[* *Sic* in Fr. text.]

[1] MS. "goodys." [2] MS. "ther." [3] MS. "And."

But his great wailing was useless. Geoffrey will conquer at last, but will have much trouble first.

MAhounde, Iupiter, And als other mo ;
hym-felfen bement forily expreffe.
But for ryght noght was his gret waling tho ;
But Gaffray at end his wil fhal redreffe,
Noght only anon but er þat he ceffe.
But yut fhall he haue I-now anguiffe grete,
Er the victory be conquere[d] and gette.[1]

The giant leaps at Geoffrey, and grips him fast by the reins, and they wrestle together.

THe Geant faw come towarde hym Gaffray,
Adrad, afferd of hym was gretly.
Anon forth lepte, enbrafing hym alway,
Teryng, drawyng here and there befily,
As he which was takyn curfidly.
Gaffray gripte he there fafte by the raynes,
Ech of thaim both fuffryng there hug paynes

[Fol. 84.] They hurtle, beat, and pull each other till they at' last separate, and then Geoffrey smites him on the haunch

THat thay almoft lofte ther breth outerly.
Strongly went Aboute, fo faft hurteling ;
Il to-geders went As were egally,
Such wyfe hurteling, beting, and drawyng
That fro other fondred efcaping.
Atwixfte thaim yeuen many ftrokis tho,
And Gaffray hym fmote vppon the hanche fo

with a knife which he held in his sleeve, piercing through his coat of mail. The giant flees for his life.

WYth A coftile which in hys fleffe gan hold,
that his Iefferon failed and breke to,
Thorewly paffyng the coftile-yre cold ;
Haftily the blode lepte out and ran tho.
The Geant bakwarde lepyng Gaffray fro,
Ther-thens fpedfuily takyng the montain.
Gaffray hafted after, hym to attain,

The giant enters a chine of the

TO take leue of hym, but fafte he gan fle;
In litell time and fpace ferre was he thens.
In A chine of the Roch made he entry,

[1] See line 3492.

For gret doubte had of Gaffrayes uiolens.
Gaffray fory that uoided was ther-hens,
Thys cruell Geant whom he fo had lofte,
To hys courfere cam, lepte vp, made no bofte,

rock, being greatly afraid. Geoffrey mourns that he has lost him,

TO hys gide went, declaryng hym and told,
Fro worde to worde, All thar werke indede,
like As thay had doñ ; And how this Geant bold
Thens into a caue[1] fled for fere and drede,
Within the quike roche for all hys manlyhed.
The gide vnto hym approched full ny,
Which there wondred and merueled ſtrongly,

but returns to his guide, and tells him all the story. The guide marvels strongly,

HOw that Gaffray had ſuch hug hardineſſe.
Hys[2] helme wafted fore, rent And broken all,
And hys hauberke difma[i]lled all expreſſe,
In many places holes gret And ſmall.
The gide ſaid, "ſo god me aid eternall,
I perceiue full well And ryght certanly,
That Gaffray is full of proweſſe and hardy."

[Fol. 84 *b*.] beholding how Geoffrey's helm was broken, and how full his hauberk was of holes. He compliments Geoffrey.

COmyng thay ſaw of peple gret ſuſion,
Many nobles *with* other of contre,
As ſone As the dede vnderſtode Anon,
Demaundyng ſuetly of Gaffray the fre
Wat was his name? and thaim declared he.
And after thay had demaunded hys name,
Then whens he was, off wat renon & fame,

Many nobles approach, and ask Geoffrey his name, and whence he came.

And that to tham wold the verray trouth ſay,
(For ſain wold thay know, And he all tham told),
On of the Barons then ſaid, "lord, you pray,

One of the barons addresses him,

[1] MS. "came," altered to "cauee." [2] MS. "hyis."

and tells him the giant will not return to fight him for any worldly wealth,

here vnderſtandeth what you ſhall vnfold ;
Be ye in certain, for all worly gold
Thys cruel Geant, (that god hym confound !)
Again you will noght retorn at no ſtound,

for that he knows he is predestined to die by Geoffrey's hand. Geoffrey declares he will never depart till he finds him.

WEl knowen is hym he ſhuld nought eſcape
Fro your handes twain, yf he were in hold;
That his mortall deth labour wold and ſhape,
For ſo is hym predeſtinat [1] of old."
"By the Trynite," ſaid Gaffray the bold,
"Fro contre ſhall I neuer, lo ! departe
Till that I hym finde by ſom maner art."

[Fol. 85.] One of the barons tells him that the mountain is enchanted, and that the noble Helmas, king of Albany, was enclosed therein with his three daughters,

"My lorde," ſaid on of thaim, "beth noght in doute;
This montain wheron this Geant is truly
Full of the fairy is it all aboute.
The noble helmas, king of Albany,
With hys doughtres thre ther was verily
Enclofed *with*-in, nawhere myght iſſew,
By ſuch werkes wroughten incongrew,

because he had wilfully beheld their mother in child-bed, after distinctly promising he would not do so.

FOr that there moder, the lady preſine,
lying in geſian wilfully had fain;
Which hym diffended that by non engine,
Vppon this diffence that ſhe hym made plain.
Noght-withſtandyng went to ſe hir dedes ſolain,
Which therof with hir made had couenaunt
Goyng ne comyng to hir wold noght haunt,

She had at that time three fair daughters. This fair lady's name was Presine, and

As toward hyr whyle in geſian lay;
Wher if ſo gan do, at end miſchef ſhold.
With doughtres fair in lay ſhe that day,
Thys ioly lady, preſine, to behold,
Doughtres thre had childed and vnfold.

[1] MS. "perdeſtinat."

helmas forfworn, periured, and comerd to,
The couenaunt hold *with* prefine made tho

Helmas had made her the above promise;

FOr-foth he failled; wherthorugh he loft
Prefine hys lady, As after fhall hyre;
hyt declare And[1] tell fhall my werfom goft.
With thes doughters thre he clofed entire,
For ther moder loft, the foth to acquire.
In this hy montain fhitte up were thay tho,
Neuer was knowen to what place were goo.

but he failed to keep it, and he and his three daughters were enclosed in the mountain.

[Fol. 85 *b*.]

FOr-fothe helmas neuer iffued oute;
Ther were thay fhitte vp fro *þat* heder-to.
But in this montain, *with*out any doute,
hath euer fith be an hug Geant, loo!
Wardain, *with* meruelous ouercomyng fo
That men ne durft noght it to approche ny.
Tyll your comyng now no man fain truly,

Ever since a huge giant had been their warden, and (till Geoffrey's coming) there had never been a man

BUt that this Geant put to deth mortall;
So was he myghty and meruelous ftronge.
This contre hath he put to mifchef all,
Our kyng which we hild mofte chefe vs Among
litell hath fro hym deffended our wrong.
To grimold vs hath of Fors made yilding,
Euermore fithen that helmas our king

whom the giant had not slain when they fought together. All of them had been forced to yield to Grimold the giant.

INto fuch felowfhip was put and caſte.
Thys Grymold is the fifte Geant found,
The fixte, or the fefth of thaim hath be last,
Wafting thys contre both the lande and ground,
To All men making werre full habound
Vnto the time of your bleffed comyng,
The which ben welcome to vs here beyng."

Grimold was the fifth, the sixth, or perhaps the seventh of these wardens who had made war abound to all men.

[1] MS. "Ant."

When Geoffrey heard the news, he took an oath that he would die as a recreant or else discomfit the giant.

When that Gaffray hurd thes new nouels told,
Full good and fair bene thes tydinges truly.
Ther A gret oth made As man inly bold,
Aforn thaim prefent to all openly,
That he wold be dede ful recreantly
Or difcomfite wold this cruell Geant;
He doubted no-thyng, the man fo pufant.

[Fol. 86.] Next day Geoffrey leapt on his courser, and went up the mountain spurring him nimbly.

The night paffed, the fair day appering,
Aforne thes Barons full twenty and mo
Gaffray wightly on hys courfere leping,
The Geant neuer doubted for no wo.
leue toke, after went vp the montain tho;
Full gret pain he had to go vp an-hy;
Hys courfere fporing that ceafon wightly,

Perceiving the hole in the rock where the giant entered, he descended and looked in;

That to the Roche cam, fo fpored and fmote.
Tournyng enuyron, the hole perceyuinge,
Auifed and knew, well gan it to note
That thys huge Geant ther had made entring.
Fro hys courfere doñ Anon ther leping,
A-foote difcended, in-warde gan behold.
But to fee within ne myght noght be[1] told;

but saw no more than he would in an oven. "I wonder," says he, "how he got in, seeing he is so wondrously 'corporal,' much more than I am.

NO thyng he faw more then in a ouen he.
Gaffray tho faid, "Aftoned am in all
Wherby the Geant now here paffed be,
Sin þat gret thikke is, wonder corporall,
Moche more then I am fourged perfonall.
I knaw well that here or there entre made,
Noght that way, but this, ran he full fad.

See here the cave. This is the great rock wherein the

SE here now the place where he made entre,
Se here now the caue, without Any doute,
Where thys Geant entred in to fe;

[1] MS. "he."

Thys is the gret Roche openly all-oute,
4464 Where grene graſſe hath noñ growing there Aboute.
The caue was hewin *with*in large and brode
So As he myght ren *with*out any bode.

cave is hewn, and it is big enough inside.

FOr he was full huge, moche gretter then I ame.
4468 But, ſo ihe*s*u crift me warde fro noiſaunce,
Whatſomeuer approch me of grame,
Me wil not withold by no gouernaunce
But hym here *with*in will feke þis inſtaunce."
4472 Entre made he tho ther in-to the grounde,
For-ſoth ther *with*in thought feke hym that ſtounde.

[Fol. 86 *b*.] Whatever happens, I will seek him inside." So he enters the cave.

IFf that he be there, truly ſhall hym fynd.
The ſpere lete doñ, ren the hed, be-forn lete goo;
4476 After ny ſewed, derkly, As man blynd.
Put hys feet before, noght drad, in went tho,
Shittyng vp hys mouth *with* hys teeth alſo.
Adon the ſpere lowe aualed he,
4480 Till he cam vnto the botme and entre.

Letting down his spear, he pushes the spear-head before him, and follows it, clenching his teeth. Thus came he to the bottom.

WHen at the botme was, hee gan take hys ſpere;
Off An herd wode was, breke[1] wold not fothleſſe;
Man better timbre neuer ſaw nawhere,
4484 For broken wold, ne had be good expreſſe;
Inly good it was, to no breche gan dreſſe.
Ny the hed the ſpere gan he take full preſt,
And forth went apas, lenger wold not reſt.

His spear being of a hard wood, such as could not be broken, he seizes it near the head, and goes on.

[1] MS. "bbreke."

pushing it always before him, testing the way. At last he arrives at a fair chamber.

After, Aferrome faw he hug clerneffe,
When a litell while forth ther he had go.
The fpere euermore Aforne hym gan dreffe
In taftyng the way, vntill that he tho
Ariued and cam A fair place vnto,
Where A chambre founde full fair wroght & well,
There fourged and made was it of nouell.[1]

[Fol. 87.] It was carved in the rock, with no place of egress, and was full of all kinds of riches.

She myght in no wife, lo! more fairer be.
In ryght fide And lifte wrought by good auife;
Coruen in the roche full frefhly was fhe;
But o going oute perceiue myght no wife.
Ryght fair it was And gentile to deuife,
The rycheffe gret prife, hard to attain,
That in this chambre had was tho and fain.

It was adorned with pure gold and rich jewels. In the midst was a tomb, supported on six pillars of fine gold.

She[2] All betan was with fine pured gold
Full of riche perrey, made[3] to gret maiftry.
Enmyddes A tombe of this chambre told.
Thys tombe fette vppon fixe pilours hy
Off fyne maffe gold, with perles many,
A man fhold not finde nawhere more fine;
Precyous rich were, of huge medicine.

Above it was a king, well formed of chalcedony, and beside him a fair lady of alabaster.

Above was had A knightly armed kyng,
Off caffedony will formed and made.
Vppon this faid tombe was he ther ligging,
Refplendifing fair in this chambre fprad.
Ioynant ny ther-to A fair lady had,
Being in eftat (who beheld with ey)
Off Alabaftre was this noble lady.

[1] Here follows the catchword—"fhe myght in no wife."
[2] MS. Sfhe." [3] MS. "perreymade."

TO conſtantinoble fro-thens is no faill,
Ne myght ymage finde *with* it to compare.
Off this full ſtrange ſight Gaffray gan meruell,
An huge tablet this fair lady bar
In hir handes twain all this to declare,
Reſembling to be fourged all of-new.
In this tablet wrete As here ſhall enſew.

Geoffrey marvels at this, but obſerves a tablet which the lady bare in her hands, on which was written the following:

"Her[1] light ſir helmas, the full noble king,
Which me hath lofte by hys gret deray
Wherof I was And had huge eſtonyng.
Thys noble kyng was full Amerous ay;
Couenaunt me had, er ſpoufed were Alway,
That neuer day, whiles he gan endure,
The time that I in Geſian ly ſure,

[Fol. 87 *b*.] "Here lieth Sir Helmas the king, who promised me ere we were wedded that, whilst I lay in child-bed,

HE ſhuld noght enquere by no maner way
Off my dedes, neither no wife me ſe,
Towardes me noght come ne go no day,
Till ceaſon And time I reiſed ſhold be.
Tho it fel and cam, of my belay thre
Full faire doughtres had in this fame yere,
Which right gracyous And full hable were.

he would never inquire about me, nor see me, till I was recovered. Then it befell that I had three fair daughters at once,

HElmas ſo gan do that he me gan ſe
In ſuch wife As I in my childbed lay.
Anon ther fro hym I uaniſhed me,
Such wife departed and thens fly my way;
Neuer knew what part went I my iournay;
And my doughtres thre forth *with* me lad,
Al thaim noriſhed vnto gret age had,

and Helmas contrived to see me; whereupon I vanished and took my daughters with me, and brought them up.

FVll well amended And right well gan growe.
With my mylke tham fed, and milked all thre;
After thaim told, when fiftene yeres gan owe,

When they were fifteen years old, I told them how I

[1] MS. "Hher."

had lost their father. The eldest, Melusine, was very vexed about it.

The maner how I lofte ther fader fre.
In[1] Auoblon the fairy contre,
The eldefte of birth, maried fhe was,
Melufine called in euery plas.

[Fol. 88 *being lost, its place is here supplied from the French text, beginning on* Fol. 103 *b.*]

[With her two sisters, as was right,
they talked over every circumstance,
and told me, who was their mother,
they wished to avenge me on their father.
The three daughters agreed
to bring a fate upon their father,
to avenge me of the great misdeed
that he had foolishly done against me.
To this they all assented,
and enclosed within the mountain
Helmas, who was their father,
and who had broken his promise.
When he died, I buried him
beneath this tomb, and enclosed him there,
and caused this tomb to be thus made,
thus sculptured and painted.
Thereon I caused my likeness to be put
that there might be remembrauce of it
in him who should read the tablet.
For never should man enter here
except he were of the lineage
(in Avalon and the fairy-country)
of my three daughters, of whom
you may hear tell when you will.
I bade the giants to watch,
from the hour I set them there,
that none should enter by this passage
except he were sprung of our line.
I provided gifts for my daughters,

[A fes deulx feurs, felon Raifon,
Compterent toute la chaifon,
Et dirent moy, *que* fuis leur mere,
Me vouldroient vengier de le*ur* pere.
Les trois filles furent daccort
De Iecter fur leur pere vng fort,
Pour me vengier du g*rant* meffait
Que p*ar* folie euft vers moy fait.
A ce toutes fegfentirent,[2]
Et dedens le mont enclouirent
Helmas, qui leur pere eftoit,
Et qui menty fa foy auoit.
Quant Il fut mort, Ie lenterray
Soubz cefte tombe, & enferray,
Et fiz cefte tombe ainfi faire,
Ainfi figurer & pourtra[i]re ;
Deff*us* fiz mectre ma femblance,
Affin quil en fuft Ramembr*ance*
A cellui qui le tableau lyroit ;
Car ceans homme nentreroit,
Sil neftoit de la lignie
En avolon et en fairie
De mes trois filles, dont pourrez
Oyr parler q*uant* vous vouldrez.
Les geans a garder commis,
De celle heure q*ue* cy la mis,
Que nul entraft en ce paffaige
Sil neftoit yffu du lignaige.
Ie ordonnay dons a mes filles

[1] In the margin, "*Auoblon y^e fayre contre.*"

[2] faffentirent (?)

Qui gentes furent & abilles ; who were beautiful and fair :
A mellufine la maifnee, to Melusine, the eldest,
Qui moult eftoit faige & fenee, who was very wise and prudent,
Ie luy donne don a fa vie, I give her a gift for life
Depar lordre de faerie, (according to the order of fairies),
Tant q*ue* le fiecle dureroit, that, as long as her life lasted,
Le fempmedi f*er*pent feroit ; she should be a serpent every Saturday ;
Et qui la vouldroit efpouf*er*, and, whoever would marry her,
Delle ne deuoit addreff*er* must not approach her
Ce Iour, mais foy garder m*ou*lt bien, on that day, but take good heed,
Quelle part quel fuft, fur toute Rien ; wherever he was, and in every thing.
Que en cil eftoit ne la veift, He must not see what she then was,
Ne qua nulluy ne le dift. nor tell anybody of it.
Et qui celle Regle fuiroit, And, whoever followed this rule,
Mellufine toudis vinroit to him would Melusine always come
Ainfi comme femme mortelle, just like a mortal woman,
Et poure femme naturelle ; as women naturally do.
Puis mouroit naturelment, Then should she die naturally,
Comme les autres proprem*en*t. and as others usually do.
Melior, la fille moyenne, To Melior, the second daughter,
Qui tant fut belle creftienne, who was so fair a creature,
Vng don lui donne de faerie, I give a fairy-gift,
Bien eft Raifon q*ue* le vous die. and 'tis well that I should tell you what.
En vng chafteau fort & maffis, In a castle strong and massive,
Qui en armenye eft affis, which is situate in Armenia,
Voire, en gr*an*t la armenye, (in great Armenia, verily,)
Ie luy ordonnay q*ue* fa vie I bade her that, during her life,
Tendroit leans vng efpriuer ;] she should keep a sparrow-hawk there ;

[Fol. 89.] Whoever wishes to ask a boon of her must watch there three nights, and he shall have it ; but he must not ask for *herself*.

Where it fhall behoue nightes to wacche thre
As ho which off hir demaunde A yifte wold,
And what he defire I-graunted fhall be ;
The firfte demaunde demaundith ther haue fhold.
But not hir body defire haue ne holde ;
Off it Melior loke he noght require,
Neither by no meene hir not defire.

But if he yield to somnolency, he shall be her prisoner for ever. Such is the gift I give her.

NO knight wake ne ihold but of hye birth were;
And ho-fo do flepe in tho nightes thre
(Wher lytell or mochc) in fampnolence there,
Alway perpetuall there abide fhall he
In the paleis with melior the fre
As prifonere in prifon alway:
Such gifte I hir giffe As this tyme dyfplay.

Palestine, the youngest, shall have this destiny: she shall dwell in a very high mountain, where men's hearts fail them,

PAlatine[1] the yongefte fufter tho was,
So named and called was at that day;
To whom I defteined to purchas
Such A maner gyfte As I you fhall fay:
That in coinqs[2] the hy montain ay,
Where failled hert haue men full many,
Enfuffering full ofte ryght gret mifery,

and shall there guard her father's treasure, till a knight of our lineage comes and takes it by force, and afterwards conquers Palestine, the land of promise.

THher to warde and kepe hir faders trefoure;
Enduryng hir life, in that place to be,
Till fom approche and come, of linage our,
To that hy montain by fors and ftrenght he
To afcende an-hye Aboue the hill to fee,
The trefour cafte oute, and after fhall conquere
The lande of promiffion by hys powere.

[Fol. 89 *b*.] This mountain is situated in Arragon. Thus Presine avenged herself on her three daughters,

THho was the monte of whom we fpeke and fay
Sette in Arrigon of trouth verily,[3]
Which that is a thing knowen well be may.
This prefine to hyr doughters thre furely,
Which were full hable and ryght faire to ey,
On thaim the moder auenged that brayd,
By the maner that Aboue is faide,

[1] The *A* being indistinct, it looks like "Prllatine;" see l. 5049.
[2] Very indistinct.
[3] In the margin—*Palestine yn a eastell yn aragon.*

FOr ther fader helmas king of renon,
That thay enclofyd by ther wrong derain
With-in the montain ther of Aualon ;
For by my faith I loued þat fouerain,
how-be-it þat he mifdede me Again ;
Off feith and of trouth I loued hym hertly
With all the fprites of my body."

Because they shut up their father Helmas in the mountain in Avalon. For I (Presine) loved him heartily though he sinned against me."

RYght thus was And went the fcripture faing ;
And when Gaffray, uaillant man and wurthy,
Had ralde thys tablet, he moch meruelling ;
But yut he knew noght uerray certainly,
But fantred and doubted uerryly
Wher on was or no of this faide linage.
Fro-thens went Gaffray with full fers corage,

Such was the writing on the tablet. After reading it Geoffrey greatly wondered whether he was of Presine's lineage or not.

IInly fafte cerching als both low and hy,
Where that Grimold in Any place finde myght ;
So thens departed paffyng ouer lightly.
Al the wais toke and fought thys huge wight,
Grimold myght not fynde ne of hym haue fyght.
Streight Aforn hym A fair feld gan behold,
Ther perceyuyng A fquare tour, A ftrong hold.

Passing thence he searches for Grimold everywhere, and at last sees a fair field with a tower in it.

[Fol. 90.]

THe gate faw open, the barreres[1] undo ;
Into the hous Gaffray went Anon,
.. Stifly And bigly his fpere holdyng tho.
In a gret latife be-held manyon,
Al prifoneres where in warde thai echon.
Of hym wondred And merueled ftrongly,
And on of thaim faid, "go hens ful quikly !

The gate being open he enters and sees a number of prisoners behind a great lattice ; they warn him off,

IConcell you," faid, "depart hens Anon
That this huge Geant in no wife you fe ;

lest the giant should destroy

[1] MS. "barrores."

him. But he laughs, and asks where the giant can be found,

Or in-to fom hole go, uoyding his perfon,
Or *with* the Geant diftroed fhall ye be!"
Gaffray laughed; after demaunded he,
Which on his necke bare A fpere full grete,
Iff that the Geant he myght funde or gette,

for he is come to fight him. One of the prisoners again warns him to go, but Geoffrey tells him not to fear,

With hym thought to fight, hys purpos uerily.
On of thaim hym faid, "fe hym fhall Anon,
And I beleue ye will it fore aby
iff he you fe, for ftrong is of perfon;
To deth will you put forfothe er ye gon."
Gaffray to hym faid, "my ryght full fuete frende,
haue ye no drede but of your felfe at end;

as he can fight the giant alone. Just then the giant came up, and, perceiving Geoffrey, fled into a chamber hastily,

Alone fhall I bere the ftrokes And dedes,
For Alone I haue take this entreprife."
yn the fame moment, places, and ftede
Gaffray *with* long toth the Geant gan anife,
That iuged was to deth, wel gan adu*er*tife.
he ftrongly ther fled As he myght goodly,
A chambre perceiued, in went rabbifhly,

[Fol. 90 *b*.] and drew the door after him. But Geoffrey follows, and bursts the door open with a kick, and enters.

THe dore after drew; Gaffray gan it ffe,
After fped Apace, yroufly being;
Smiting haftyli, the dore gan vp fle,
With þat ftroke the dorn[1] Anon unbarring;
Withe the fole of fote was he tho fmiting.
Into chambre floure the doure made fle lightly;
For all barred was, entred he wightly.

The giant smites Geoffrey with a mallet, and would have slain him

A [s]quare maillet the Geant gan hold;
Vppon Gaffray hed ther-*with* yaf wightly.
With that ftroke he was ftoned manyfold;
Ne had hys helmet[2] be full ftrong and myghty,

[1] "dore" (?)

[2] MS. "helyet." Fr. text, *heaulme*.

Gaffray had be flain, fo caufed to dy.
And yut not-for-that Gaffray tombled there,
Anon releuing in wighty manere,

but for his helmet Geoffrey falls, but rises again,

THen hym faide Gaffray, "of the haue full fair,
But Anon I fhall yilde it unto the,
With my fwerde the teere, not will make retrair."
Gaffray drew hys fwerd, harde well ground to fe,
Withe the bakke went, fo harde the Geant fmote he,
Gaffray his good fwerd fo put thorugh hym tho,
Thorugh the brefte the croffe was it unto;

and says, "I received then a fair stroke, and now I will repay it." Drawing back he lunges at him, driving the sword through him up to the hilt.

Fro part in-to part hym *per*ced ouer all.
The Geant to grounde our-torned tho,
Which fo ofte had made many men full thrall.
No-thyng was he wurth, right noght myght he do,
Where curfedly had don *with* his maillet foo.
A meruelus cry vp he caft *þat* ftound,
All the toure founed when he fill to ground.

Then fell the giant who had so often made men thralls. He cast up a marvellous cry, and all the tower sounded.

THys Geant tho fall to mortal deth colde
With that mighty ftroke Gaffray hym yeuyng.
Gaffray drew hys fwerde ther oute fro Grimold,
Into hys fcaberge Again hym puttyng.
Ther ryght no lenger wold he be byding,
To the prifoneres fro-thens Anon went,
And to demaunde thaim was full diligent

[Fol. 91.] Then Geoffrey drew his sword out of Grimold, and put it in the scabbard. Then he went to the prisoners,

IF of Norbelande thei were As was told,
And what maner thyng gain hym hade mifdo,
And wherfor in prefon he tham gan hold.
Anon on faid, "for trewage was it tho
That the gret Geant yeuen had vnto;

and asked if they came from Northumberland, and why they were in prison. They said it was because they had not paid

the giant the tribute they owed him.

The which, ſir, is noght yut hym paid no wyſe,
Wherfor this now bide All his tirandiſe."

"Rejoice then," said Geoffrey, "for ye are struck out of his papers, and I have acquitted you of your tribute by killing him."

GAffray Anſwered, "ioyous And glad be,
Now Full merily demene you Amonge,
For of his paupires ſtrike oute plain be ye!
Here hym haue I ſlain And put to dethe ſtronge;
Neuer ſhall he you At no day do wrong.
Of trouth mortall deth haue I put hym to,
your trewage haue I now here aquitte ſo."

Then they were glad and asked Geoffrey to let them out. So Geoffrey searched till he found the keys, and coming to the 200 prisoners,

WHen thes nouels hurde, ioyous therof were;
Gaffray thay beſought thaim deliuer oute.
He Anſwering ſaid, "do ſhall my powere."
Tho cerched, enquered, And went Aboute,
Till the keys Founde *with*-out any doute.
And when he thaim had reforted Again,
Where too hundert were And mo in certain,

[Fol. 91 *b.*] undid the lattice, and gave them leave to go. Geoffrey leads them to the chamber where lies the giant.

THe lateis unſhitte where-in priſoned were,
Preſently thaim al gaf he leue to go.
Fro-thens iſſued thay *with* gladſom chere,
That nouelles pleaſed and greed well to
That eſcape ſhold thys painfull priſon fro.
Into the chambre Gaffray tho thaim lade
To ſe this Geant dede and cold ther had.

All wonder how Geoffrey could kill this monster, of so "unfittiug" a stature.

EUery man hym bliſſed of Gaffray,
Ther meruellyng gretly of this auenture,
Hym to haue in ſuch herdineſſe Alway
To aſſail ſuch A hiduous creature
Off ſo wonderfull unfittyng ſtature,
Thys gret monſtre, huge, large, and cruell,
Which ſo meruelous was, felenous and fell.

They all said they had never seen such a man

EUery man bliſſid, euery man ſaid
That neuer ſuch a man ther dais gan ſe.

To thaim faing Gaffray, "hire me now þis braide,
Here now ye Barons acquitail haue by me;
Vnto this Geant no more owe fhall ye.
Full moch good hath w*ith*in thys dongon;
Barons, you it yeue into your bandone,

in all their days. Geoffrey tells them they now owe the giant nothing.

And all that is here you it gyffe frely,
Both gold and hauour here, all that his wace.
hit reioys and take, for noght haue will I;
here you will commaunde to our lordes grace,
Take all þ*at* here is in this tour and place.
To tary or byde certes will noght here,
To labour will go in place ellyfwhere;

but that they may carry away all the treasures they can find, for he would have nothing for himself.

Lenger will noght bide, dwelle, ne tary."
"your mercy and grace," thai to hym gan fay,
"So it myght you pleafe off your courteffy,
Euery of us you befeke and pray
Wherby ye come in to fay us your way,
Where for the Geant non durfte make entre,
That dede and recreant here lith now may fee."

[Fol. 92.] They thank him greatly, and ask him how he came there, where no one dared come for the giant.

There Gaffray thaim declared all and told.
When thay had hym hurde, on faid hym vnto,
"Neuer fro this Roche iffued man fo bold
Excepte this Geant ligging ded here, lo!
And his cruell anteceffoures alfo,
By whom to greuous torment put we be;
Exiled and wafted haue thai our contre,

Geoffrey tells them, and they all say that no man so bold ever issued from that rock, except the giant and his anteces-sors,

Both tho gret and fmall haue thay had in hate;
Diftroed alfo all that thai finde might,

who had slain 400 knights. They said too that they

would accompany him till he found his own people.

Foure houndred haue ſlain, preuyng well þis date.
Now our forow ye haue vnto an ende dight,
And Als put to end the fary work ryght.
With you ſhall retorn, going vppon way,
Till that your peple approche and fynde may."

Then they set the giant's body up upon a cart, to which it was fast bound and attached.

THes Baroums thaim made tho full redy
To put this Geant ther a carte uppon;
An-hy hym dreſſed As for to cary,
Neuer ſaw man to ſightes uiſion
So gret As was this Geant enuiron,
Euery man bleſſed that hym gan ſe;
Well bounde and tacked to that carte was he.

[Fol. 92 *b.*] Wherever they went all men marvelled at the monster, and blessed the hour when Geoffrey came there.

THorugh the contre went, hym carying;
Wherouer thai rode and paſſid full faſte.
Of this ſaid monſtre al men merueling,
Wherof the peple Abaſſhed and agaſt.
Forſoth euery man bliſſed thaim in haſte
The hour that Gaffray ariued at *þat* coſte,
That thaim deliuerd of this curſed goſte.

They would gladly have made Geoffrey their king, but he would in no wise longer sojourn there.

GAffray conueed to his peple that houre,
huge honour and gold hym ther preſenting;
And full humbly gan do hym ther honour,
So As for ther lorde thai hym holding,
For paſſed And dede was their noble king.
But he wold no wife lenger ther ſogourn̄,
But to luſignen wold he tho retourn̄.

Then he leapt upon his courser,

Off ther huge honour wold he take no-thyng,
Retourn̄ wold ther-thens *with*out bode any.
Gaffray, which no man [1] neuer was doubtyng,
Vppon his courſere anon lepte lightly
As he which was both doubty and wurthy.

[1] MS. "noman."

"Adieu," tho he faid, "Adieu you commaund, and bade the barons adieu.
ye noble Barons prefent of Norbeland,

TO you leue the warde of this contre."
Fro-thens deperted, femyng ther to longe,
With hym his peple ridyng As fhold be.
Ther rode A gret ftour, waloping ful ftronge,
Till to fe cam; A barge gan he to fonge,
Defiryng to fe his fader of blode,
And Melufine his gentile moder goode.

Then he and his people galloped fast till they came to the sea. There he took ship, desiring to see his father and Melusine.

HE taried noght, failled And rowed foo,
That he approched Guerrand tho full ny;
The winde was good, he ftrongly failled tho,
That in litell while to port cam furely.
And when Gaffray had hauyn ueryly,
Anon A-land he defcended ryght,
And ther Ariued certes þat fame night.

[Fol. 93.]
The wind was good and he soon came to port. Then he disembarked and arrived at Lusignan that same night.

All the wordle anon wenten hym Again,
Men, wemen, children, of ech fide mofte and lefte;
The Barons fefted this hy fouerain,
hys fader Raymounde vnto hym cam prefte.
Gaffray hym falute As man mofte vmblefte,
Wightly Anon hym Gaffray gan enbrace,
Neuer at more eafe of hert he ne wace;

All the world came to meet him, and Raymond with the rest. Geoffrey salutes him humbly, embraces and kisses him.

His uifage and mouth ther gan he to kiffe.
Into a chambre both thai made entre,
Wherof many thinges fpake thai, I-wiffe,
Many tales told ther Gaffray the fre,
And Raymound to hym that in mynde wold be
hou hys moder loft he had and lete.
With malicious wreth Gaffray gan fuete;

Then they entered a chamber and talked together. Geoffrey told his father many tales, and next he is told how he had caused the loss of his mother.

He knew it was for his sin in burning the abbey of Maillezais. Then he remembers the tablet he saw in the mountain of Avalon,

Well Auifed hym it was for his fyne
That his fader had wrethed heuyly fo,
By monkes he hade ftroyed maillers yn ;
With flammes of fire thaim bruled and brend to,
An hundred ther were in that minftre tho.
Then on the tablet hys thought & mynde gan draw,
Which in the montain of Aualon faw,

[Fol. 93 *b*.] upon the tomb of king Helmas. Then he knew that Melusine must be Helmas' daughter.

Fro wurde to wurde al thorughly *in* hert be[1] rad
Vppon the tombe of noble king helmas.
Tho knew he Full well where melufine was hade
Doughter to the kyng which lay in *þat* place,
And that helmas, this noble kyng, wace
Fader to Melufine his moder good ;
Where-vppon he thought long while he ther ftoode.

When he knew that Raymond had been tempted by the earl of Forest, he sware an oath that he would go and kill him.

When he vnderftode, knowing it clerely,
hou that [2] Raymounde his noble fader tho
By erle of forefte his brother naturally
Toward Melufine had made diffautte fo,
With An hautain uois Gaffray faid, wold go,
(Wher-to he fwere full faft his gret oth),
That fhortly he wold diftroy hym for foth.

Away he goes with ten chosen knights, who were worth twenty others, and the result was this :

SO fro-thens *with* wreth Gaffray partid then,
his fader [3] his parte went right heuily,
With full wurthy noble knightes ten,
Stronge, hable, and light, men fad and myghty,
Tho ten wurth well other knightes twenty ;
here you fhal declare by fortone hou gan fal.
Gaffray fo ftrongly ther rode forth *with*-all,

[1] "he" (?) [2] MS. "thai." [3] MS. "brother;" Fr. text, *pere*.

SO on way fafte fped, fo forth low and hy,
That he approched the erledome vnto
Off the foreft, where was this Erle wurthy,
Which in a caſtell abiding [1] was tho.
Gaffray to that parte drew hym faſt to goo
Where the Erle ſhold haue ill hanſell anon,
In-to thys ſaid ſtrenght entred his perſon,

they rode till they came to the castle where the earl was; then Geoffrey entered that fort

[Fol. 94.]

Within he entred vnware ſodenly,
Off no creature perceiued at all.
With full yrous wreth Gaffray meued hy,
He ſalute non, ne ſpake to gret ne ſmall,
But diſcended doñ A-forn the gret hall,
The grees Aſcended, many to accounte,
hys uncle the Erle ther, named Fromounte,[2]

ſuddenly and unperceived. Moved with wrath he neither saluted any nor spake, but ascended the steps of the great hall,

Enmyddes his peple hym ther gan find,
Which were full noble And ryght gentile to,
Wice, ſage, And wele taught As any to mynde.
Gaffray As wode man drawing his ſwerd tho,
Ther crying, "traitor, thy lif loſt And goo!
By thy neclygens my moder haue loſte!"
Thys Erle it hurde, his blode gon almoſte,

and found his uncle Fromont there amongst his people. Drawing his sword, he declares him a traitor,

His mortall deth ſaw; being in ſuch fray,
Gaffray he doubted in hert that inſtaunce,
Knowyng well by hym tho wurdes gan fay
Wherof Gaffray had to hert ſuch noyſaunce.
Fro-thens he fly *with* huge comeraunce.
Neuer-for-neuer ſtode he in ſuch drede,
The tour entred, the dore founde ope in dede,

and terrified his uncle, who fled away in great trouble. Never had he been so frightened; he entered the tower

THe grees Aſcended ryght ſo As he myght;
But ſo gan noght do As his hert tho wold;
For After haſted Gaffray As man wight,

and ascended the steps. But Geoffrey hastened after

[1] MS. "obiding."

[2] In the margin—*geffre kyld hys v*[*ncle*] *erle of foreſte.*

him, pursuing him so fast that the earl had to flee alone;

Which purfued hym, chaufing to that hold,
Strongly hym fewed And fharply manyfold,
Openly after other gan to fle;
With hym had the Erle non of hys mayne

[Fol. 94 *b.*] for all ran down the steps as if they were mad; being greatly afraid of being caught.

Af man that fo was gentile ne fo goode
Which *with* hym fro-thens in no wyfe wold go;
The grees defcended, fered as were woode,
Eche hym-felfe to faue in beft wife cowd tho,
Ther liffes to faue Gaffray criing vnto.
For fere of taking full fafte thay fle,
Thay fore doubted left taking fhold be.

Thus the earl ran up into the tower and got to the top as soon as he could. Geoffrey sware that he would not spare him.

GAffray fly After thys Erle haftily,
Sweryng that he fhold dy ther *with* gret fhame.
The Erle Afcended into this tour quickly,
As fone As he myght to hieft ftage came.
Gaffray fwere his oth, for linage ne fame,
Wold fpare hym to flay, lif take fro his goft,
Syn his m ›der good by hym fo hath lofte.

In extreme terror the earl leapt up to a window and, missing his footing, fell on his head upon the rock.

FOr drede the Erle fwatte And fore trembled tho
When that he faw, brefly vnto fay,
That by no men myght ferther paffe ne go.
At A feneftre lepte in that affray
Vppon the hedde, failling foote that day;
Fro that place glint *þat* full hy tho was,
Don vppon the Roch A fall gan purchas.

Thus this earl of Forest died by his own folly, and Geoffrey caused

In that point was he mif[c]heuofly dede
With dolorous wo And full heuy fhame,
Thys Erle of forefte in faid place and ftede.
Alas! by hys owne gret folay it came,

hys body to be buried, and proclaimed

hys peple[1] hauyng hug forow and grame.
The body Gaffray made vnto entere ;
After do made cryes in ech ftede awhere,

[Fol. 95]
his own brother Raymond the lord of Forest. This done, he returned to Lusignan, and soon

As vnto the Erle beforn had thay do,
To Raymounde his brother in like wife homage,
All enheritors of the contre tho.
And As thaim had faid Gaffray the fage,
Euery accorded vnto his langage.
Ther Gaffray wold noght lenger to fogourn̄,
To-ward lufignen fafte gan he retourn̄,

came to his father who was sore lamenting the earl's death. Raymond exclaims,

In fhorte and bref tyme parted fro that place.
Vnto lufignen entred, faft ridyng,
Where his gud fader tho dolorous was,
Which full heuily was ther waymenting
For that noght unknow, (full for lamenting),
How hys brother diftroyed was *þat* day ;
Raymound faid, "of it gret dolour haue may,

"All is due to my sin and vice: I will quit the world and its fame, and make a pilgrimage to the holy apostle at Rome,

An my wife haue loft, exile my contre,
By my cruell fin And my wicked vice ;
Ihesu crift my foull warde and kepe to the,
Fro[2] thys worle me will put by good auice,
Neuer feke no-thyng to conquere franchife.
To confeffe my fyn wandre fhall and goo,
With good hert fhall fay the hole Poftell to

whom men call Leo. I will then become a recluse in a strange country and spend my life in prayer."

Off Rome, that lyon men do name and call,
After, fo god will, chefe fhall my dwellyng,
Reclufe and fhit vp in ftrange contre fhall,
In which ftede will not be know for no thyng.
In that place fhall I my life be ufing
In deuoute prayers And in orifon,
All vnto acquire my fauacion."

[1] MS. "pepll." [2] MS. "For."

[Fol. 95 *b*] Geoffrey, alighting from horseback, tarried not at the dismounting stone, but sought his father and craved his pardon,

Ryght As Raymounde hym fore complayned, [lo !]
In plaintes, wepinges, he bathed was ;
And when that Gaffray was defcendid tho,
At the perron longe bode not in *þat* place,
At caftell finding hys fader by grace.
But hys moder noght founde, ne faw *with* ey,
Wherefor to hys fader cried mercy,

bitterly repenting his wickedness. "It needs not," said Raymond, "to mourn longer: you cannot bring your mother back again,

With hert fore contrite therof repenting
Off that he had don fo moche wickedneffe.
On knees mercy ther hym fafte crying,
Raymounde fore wepte *with* eyes bitterneffe :
"Hyt nedith noght," faid, "more haue penfifneffe,
I know well that ye by no mene this day
your moder recouer certes ye ne may.

nor can I restore the dead to life. You must rebuild the abbey which you burnt in your folly."

I can noght," he faid, "werke ne labour foo
As tho mortall ded ther lif to furrend.
The Abbay and mynftre fourge and make moft, lo !
Which fair place ye haue diftroid and fhend.
An hundred monkes *with*-in alfo brend
By your meruelous And wondre corage,
As by your folay and full gret outrage."

Geoffrey promises to do so. Raymond says, "It should be built up so as to be fairer than before;

GAffray Anfwerd, "fire, I fhall it doo
Within ryght bref tyme, fo our lord pleafe may."
Then Raymound hym hild in hert content tho ;
"More fairer fhall be then Aforn was ay,"
Raymound hym faid, "appere will it alway
That which ye will do men full well fhall fe,
Perceyued to ey, knowen well will bee.

[Fol. 96.] but I must leave you now, for I go

HEre will you leue, to good ende come may.
A litell way me mofte go in pilgrimage,

Which promyfed haue god aforn this day,
Put ther-to haue both hert, wyll, and corage,
My contre you fhall leue, warde it as the fage.
Non other will I of it haue the garde,
your yongeft broder wyll loke þat ye warde,

on a pilgrimage. You shall guard the country and take care of your youngest brother.

PArtenay hym gif *with* thes caftelles echon
Off vavuent, Ayglon, And also Meruent,
He thaim to hold in hys fubiecc*ion*
In pees *with*out contradiccion hent;
Anon to Rochel[1] my wife wold fo went.
For gretly of hym fhe gan fpeke and fay,
That contre he fhold iuftice alway.

Give him Parthenay, Vouvant, Aiglon, and Mervent, and all the country as far as Rochelle; for so Melusine gave direction."

IHym make my proper enheritour,
For yut fhall he be wurthy terrenly."
Gaffray Anfwered, "I grant to will your,
Alway your plefur fhall I do furely,
Full well fhall I warde my brother Thierry;
In that doubte ye noght, in no maner point,
Sin ye me commaunde, gree to fuch a ioynt."

Geoffrey promises to do so, and tells his father he need not fear its not being done.

RAymounde his ui[a]ge Full fafte made redy,
When he redy was, taried ne refte;
Of uitaill and wyn toke fufficiantly,[2]
Al hys peple commaunded to god preft.
At the departfon fughed fore in brefte.
Hys leue gan he take *with* amyable loue fine,
Towarde Rome hys way hild he ftreight As lyne.

Raymond, all being made ready for his journey, sets off. He takes leave of his people and goes to Rome.

[Fol. 96 *b*.]

GAffray and Thierry fuetly on the way
long fpace and tyme thare fader conueing;
In ther forth-progreffe told and faid Gaffray,
hou that good helmas the full noble kyng

Geoffrey and Thierry go with their father; and, on the road,

[1] MS. "Rachel." [2] MS. "fufficiantily."

Geoffrey relates how he found good king Helmas within the rock,

Within the Roch founde, wher non durft be commyng
Enleffe he were ftrong, wurthy, wyfe, and fage,
And that iffued oute of hys linage;

and how he had seen Helmas' tomb, and Presine's image in alabaster, and the tablet which her hand held.

TOlde where the tombe was pight and fette truly
Vppon thes riche and gret pilours of gold;
Of prefine told he alfo veryly,
Hou fhe portraed was in being, told;
At foote of helmas tombe hir figure vnfold
Of Alebaftre compaffed and made;
And of the tablet that fhe hild and had;

Raymond rejoiced to hear Melusine was of such high descent, and seemed in his joy a foot taller. Afterwards Geoffrey tells about Presine's gifts

ANd then all that hurde Aboue haue ye.
Raymounde reioyed hys wife doughter was
Off fyre helmas, king which Gaffray gan fe,
And of prefine, the courtois, full of grace;
For gladnes A foote[1] in hithe gan purchace.
After declaryng went by witty engine
All the gyfftes that ther gaf prefine

to Melior, Melusine, and Palatine, and how Presine loved Helmas dearly. Raymond again rejoices.

Unto Melior and to Melufine,
And to palatine, wemen of fayree;[2]
And, As men Affermeth by fcripture fine,
That Aboue all helmas louid hyly
Prefine, aboue wrete verray perfectly.
When that Gaffray had All thes thynges faid,
Raymounde hertly glade reioyng that braide,

[Fol. 97.] Thus his two sons brought him on his way, and bring him at night to his lodging.

That Gaffray gan hire voluntarily.
After thes fones too hym conueyng,
With hym vppon way went full merily.
At nyght when thai cam vnto ther loging,
Hys fones of hym the morñ leue taking,

[1] MS. "Afoote." [2] MS. "fayrer."

To-geders kiſſed at the parting leue,
And ſo the mornyng departed in breue.

Next morn they take their leave,

RAymounde ther Fader ſped hym on hys way ;
Ther no creature but watry teeres ſhad ;
The Fader wepte, the fones Als that day,
Euery of thaim in miſery had,
Raymound thens went ; Gaffray Terry with hym lad,
Thay retorned to Approche ther home,
And the Fader went ſtreight forth vnto Rome.

and there was great weeping on both sides. Then Geoffrey and Thierry went back ; and Raymond went on to Rome.

Ryght thys departed ther wais thes thre,
Ther-thens to luſignen went Gaffray.[1]
To partenay went Terry that contre,
yonge, lufty, ioly, inly frefh And gay,
Hardy, myghty, fers, entrepreignant ay,
To ladies ſwete was amyable,
huge of body, wel formed As man able.

Geoffrey went to Lusignan, and Thierry to Partenay. A description of Thierry.

MAny were ther noght with hym to compare,
For he was An in beuteuous fair knyght ;
Strong, myghty, wourthy, And light to declare,
And off All peplle douted was he ryght ;
Neuer put A-bake, manly was of myght ;
A notable man was he of corage,
A good werriour, ſubtile, wiſe, And ſage.

The good qualities of Thierry are here enumerated.

[Fol. 97 *b*]

DOubted of all, wher by[2] fors, were, or wit,
Euery man obbeid hym lowly
In all hys marches, where wrong or ryght were it.
In noble Bretain gan he to mary,[3]
Affyed and fured to A gret lady,
Which diſcended was of ryght hy lynage,
And als ſhe hauyng full huge heritage.

Thierry married a lady of high degree who came from Britain, and who was very wealthy.

[1] In the margin—*geffrey lord of lusygnen & terry lord of* [*partenay.*]
[2] MS. "wherby."
[3] In the margin—*terre maryd a lady of bretayn.*

From Thierry descended the line of Parthenay, a line which is still distinguished for virtue,

THerry feignoried A full large contre,
Hattyd of no man ; of hym gan iffew
Of pertenay the lyne of verite,
As in this hiftory doth to enfew,
Which hyly regneth yut in huge vertew ;
God wold fuch heires of tham fhold come
That the line noght faill to the day of dome !

according to Melusine's prediction. It were tedious to relate all their great deeds.

RYght As declared And fayd Melufine
That the faid line fhold haue long endurance,
And that thay fhold do good dedes and fine ;
And fo haue thay done wel to rememberaunce
In many placis, wherof refte I this inftaunce;
Ouer long wold be to declare and tell,
Ther wurthy dedes vnto fay or fpell.

Geoffrey sent everywhere for masons, who rebuilt the abbey of Maillezais which he had burnt.

GAffray tho made Aboute for to fende,
Mafons of iche ifid come *with*-out delay ;
He rought noght what theron fhold difpend,
For in thought wold reftore the Abbay
Off Maillers, that was brend *þat* oder day.
Off euery part mafons ther comyng,
Ther wages well paid, content *þaim* holdyng.

[Fol. 98.] It was rebuilt so as to be fairer than before: so that men marvelled, and said that Geoffrey had become a monk after all!

FOurged and made was in A fomer tide
More fairer then euer it was before,
Off whom men fpeken, talking large and wide,
Hym ofte mocking And faing euermore,
" Gaffrey is become A monke for all hys lore,
Neuer trowed man for to fe that houre
A wolfe to become An herdly paftour !"

I return to Raymond, who confessed all his sins

I leue fhall Gaffray ; of hys fader fay,
Which to Rome to the holy fader came
Hys confeffion to declare alway ;

In concluſion ſpared for no ſhame,
Neuer no-thyng hid, but all gan proclame.
The holy fader wondred on that he told,
Off tho merueles that ther gan vnfold.[1]

in full to the pope, who wondered at the strange things he told him,

Wherefor ſhold I hold long tale this inſtaunce?
For his fynnes gaff penaunce full ſharpely.
Raymound ther it toke to right gret pleſaunce,
Promittyng he wold do it full gladly
Or he entre wold in peyters fuerly.
To hys holy fader ſaid *with* all his hert,
And that thens wold go in-to fom defert,

and appointed Raymond a penance, which he promised to perform before returning to Poitiers.

SO in wild exile all hys lif uſing
For fair Meluſine his loue, wife, and ſpouſe,
In many ſomers And winters being,
Which that he hath loſt by dedes ſhameuous,
And ſerpent become wondre hiduous;
Sayng, neuer wold hir put in oblyuy
Ne in that contre neuer entre furely,

He undertakes to live a hermit's life for Melusine's sake, saying that he would never forget her,

NEuer-For-neuer in hys life no day,
Where hys ſuete loue loſte by hys owne ſpeche;
Which in oblyuy *with* hym be ne may.
This holy fader gan pray and beſeche
That of his illes he wold be hys leche.
The pope, that time named and called lyon,
Said to hym, "where is your deuocion

[Fol. 98 *b*.] nor return to the place where he lost her. He craves the pope's pardon; and Pope Leo, accordingly,

FOr to go and do ioyned pennaunce?"
Raymound Anſwered as man deboner,
"At Montſarrant bide is my hole pleſaunce,
Ther become hermite *with*-out any retrayr,
To goddis honour And ſeruice repair.

asks him where he thinks of going to. Raymond answers, "To Montserrat in Arragon, where

[1] MS. "vnfuld."

there is fair sojourning."

For ellefwhere can I noght me hold,
Full fair fogernyng ther is, me is tolde.

Leo bids him go; and Raymond sets off, soon coming to Toulouse.

"There is A deuoute folitary place."
"Go[1] where plefe may our facred lord anhy,
That your fauac*i*on ye may purchace,"
This lion the pope faid to hym fuetly.
In bref terme Raymound parted thens truly,
So ftrongly he rode, paffyng forth the way,
That within Thoulouſe cam without delay.

where he bids adieu to his men, sending them all home except a yeoman and a chaplain.

Full moche peple Again hym tho went;
He ther yeuyng leue to hys mayne plain,
Ech fatefied *with* goodes fufficient;
With hym A preft had, An honest chapelain,
A yeman alfo for hys owne demain.
More had ne toke at that entreuall,
Ther unto our lord commaunded hys me*n* all;[2]

[Fol. 99.] Next he has hermit's robes made, and goes to Arragon, and so becomes a hermit at Montserrat.

HErmites Robes full fafte lete doo make,
In Arrygon toke hys logge and repair.
At the Mont-farrat manſon gan to take,
yilding hym hermyte As man debonair,
God to ferue *with* orifons and[3] praiers fair;
Properly to take for hys heritage
his byding in this wild montain fauage.

His yeoman and chaplain lived with him there, and thus Raymond forsook the

WIth hym hys yeman And full noble preft
In this hermitage toke habitacion,
With full greabill hertis in ther brefte,
Ther being in fore huge affliccion
long time and fpace *with* good deuocyoñ.

[1] MS. "So." Fr. text, *Alez y done.*

[2] At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Hermites Robes full."

[3] MS. "and and."

The worle all forfoke at that houred ſtound, world, and lived there devoutly
And full deuoutly liued ther Raymound

TIll ende approched, to mortall deth went. till his death. Three days before his death, the serpent was seen going round Lusignan; so that more than 20, who had well heard Melusine say
But dais thre aforn full well *per*eeuyng
Aboute luſignen to vew the ſerpent,
Where lande and rent Aforñ was renonſing;
Whom moch peple ofte haue be ſeing;
To knowliche nombred mo then twenty
That of Meluſine will hurde ſay truly—

The time and ceaſon departing thaim fro— that she would thus appear, know that they are soon to have a new lord.
That when the caſtell change ther lordes ſhold,
Aforne wold ſhe appere to ſight, lo!
Thre days aboute thys ſaid caſtell wold
Off fair luſignen, full beuteuous hold.
Wherefor many ſain in ther willd reuell,
"After appArens, ſhall haue A lord nouell."

GAffray tho lorde of this ſaid caſtell, [Fol. 99 *b*.] Geoffrey was then lord of the castle, and held it in peace. Then came to him the barons whom Raymond had dismissed,
Which ſo fair was, and lord of contre;
That hy honour and ſeignory full well
Peſibilly in pece it hold gan he.
Tho fro Thouloufe made baronage & mayne
That Raymound *with* hy*m* lad when to Rome went;
Excepte yeman and preſte all home he ſent.

THai vnto Gaffray declared and told, and told him how his father was now a hermit and had sent them home. Geoffrey sends for his brother, and, leaving Lusignan in his charge,
The trouth and verite ſaid thay outerly,
hou his fader an hermite was and hold,
And hou fro tham departed wilfully,
And hou his goodes parted gentilly.
Gaffray vnderſtode, hys brother after ſend,
All contre to hym gan he recommend.

departs for Rome, to accomplish all he had to do. It were long to tell all.

FRo-thens departed, *with* hym peple few,
Gaffray the corteis, gentile and connyng.[1]
lenger wold not bide, toke hys leue by rew,
hafted to complefh his dedes doing.
Miftre ne nede non more be declaryng,
But to tary time and long wold it be
Euery thyng to put in hys certainte.

He confessed to the pope, and was very penitent for the wickedness he had done in his youth.

Unto the pope cam, And hym gan confeffe
With gret repentaunce full deuoutly;
Off his fynny cr[i]me lefte[2] not more ne leffe,
Full dolerus was and repentant truly
Off his wickedneffe doñ confentyngly,
And *þat* he had doñ in his youthneffe foo,
With fore hert contrite all confeffed thoo

[Fol. 100.] The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

PRoperly all that in confcience finde myght.
The pope affo[i]led hym ther benyngly,
When declared hade hys dedes vn*per*fight.
To fourge the abbey charged hym gretly
Off Maillers *with*out tarying any,
Such pennaunce charged hym his fynnes fore,
With monkes it ftuffe, montance of fex fcore;

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

With rentes endowing to haue brede and wyne,
That lacke and faill non winter ne fomer tide
To wat neceffiite or nede to incline.
Again the abbay to forge loke prouide,
That diftroed haue And difherite wide.
Gaffray anfwerd, "fir, I fhall do all,
The mi*n*ftre and churche appareill fhall

and says it is begun already. The

BEtter then euer Appered to eye;
For fothe fhe hath A good commencemen*t*."

[1] MS. "comyng." [2] MS. "lofte." Fr. text, *laissa*.

"yut the churche ye haue ſtroed wickedly;
Agan it to make ye moſte be deligent."
"Sir, carpenters, maſons, yiftes ſhall hent,
Ther ſtate ſhall remitte to our lordes grace;
More fairer ſhall be then euer it wace."

pope again charges him, and he promises to obey.

"THys reſon," ſaid the holy fader at ende,
"For your brother ſoule ye be in danger
That ye crufedly[1] bruled ſo and brende
When thys mynſtre and ſchurch deſtroed there.
And yf ye of your fader luſte enquere,
At mont-farrat finde ſhall þat man of fame,
Which noght long Agoñ toward vs he came,

The pope tells him he is in danger for his brother's soul, because he burnt him; and that he would find his father at Montserrat.

HErmite is become, holy lif leding."
Gaffray vnderſtode, with eyes wepte ſore;
Off pope[2] leue toke, to monte-farrat going,
Strongly rode apace beſily euermore,
Till the regiat way founde hym before,
But Anon As he app[r]oched the montain,
Vp went he an-hy, finding Raymound plain,

[Fol. 100 b.] Geoffrey sets off for Moutserrat, and soon finds the highway to it. He then ascends the mountain,

HIs bliſſed fayder which hurde hym Anon.
When hys ſone he ſaw, gretly reioying.
After Raymounde wold haue departſon,
But gaffray no wife wold be deperting,
But ſaid, ther wold bide the worle enduryng,
And that go wold quite fro the heritage
And fro All hys barons homage.

and finds Raymond. Raymond is glad to see him, but bids him go home again. Geoffrey refuses to return,

GAffray was ther foure or fiffe dais tho,
hys fader myght noght hym do torn no wife,
But ther wold dwell hys life vſing alſo;

and insists on staying four or five days; but at

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] This word is struck out by mistake.

last consents to return, and takes leave of his father.

But when hys fader will gan aduertife,[1]
Thens to lufignen drew by good auife
When of fader had leue take full lowly,
No lenger fogern ther wold noght truly.

Returning to Lusignan he calls his barons together, who humbly do him homage as their lord.

When of lufignen the faire Cite hent,
After the Barons fend he full wyghtly,
Which cam Anon at hys commaundement.
As fone As thay thes wurdes hurde truly,
homage gan thay do to hym full humbly,
holdyng hym ther lord mofte fouerain þat houre
To full huge ioy and ryght grett honour.

[Fol. 101.] He then rebuilds the abbey he destroyed, and establishes there 120 monks, endowing the abbey richly,

When Maillers f[o]urged and made new again,
The faid Abbay,[2] beforn gan vndo.
Ther fex fcore monkes aftabled certain,
Ennobling the place ryght wonderly tho,
huge lande and rycheffe endowing therto ;
Wher night and day monkes pray for þis lord,
For Melufine and Raymound of recorde.

and making rich grants to it. In course of time he visited Raymond; for, when the time of Raymond's death drew near,

Thay haue of ryght full grett enchefon,
He morteſing goodes fufon and plente.
*With*in proffeffe uifete hys fader anon,
And gentilly hym quite at þat affemble.
Raymounde leuyng longe ; when to ende nyhed he,
That the foule mofte yelde being fpirituall,
(As well lordes gret as tho being fmall),

Geoffrey remained at home no longer, but came to the

RAymounde to our lorde his foule ther yilding,
Gaffray no lenger tary wold ne bide.
For when hys fader dede was ther faing,

[1] MS. "aduerſite." [2] MS. "Ablay."

Vnto mont-farrat made progreſſe þat tide,
hys fadres fepulture for to prouyde ;
Entered in Abbay of the monte-Serrat,
That place augmented paſſingly þat dat,

abbey of Montserrat to provide for his father's burial,

And rentid gretly to the houſe encreſſe.
he was he, (you fay verray certainly),
That euer ther was mofte chef of goodneſſe;
hit is thing þat man may know full lyghtly ;
Ryght well his deuor Gaffray gan do furely.
That doñ, retorned the mont-Serrat fro,
le[n]ger wold noght bide, to luſignen went tho.

and made grants to that abbey also. Geoffrey did his duty at Montserrat, and then returned to Lusiguan.

THErry was notable And a full good knight,
A wurthy man, A iufticere full grett,
And regned after puſantly of myght.
At partenay long huge wurſhip gett,
Fair dedes gan doo in his time full fett,
In pees hys contre haldyng full manly,
Non durfte hys hefte breke, but to hym apply.

[Fol. 101 *b.*] Thierry reigned at Parthenay long and justly, and did fair deeds. None durst break his hests, but obeyed him.

OEdes regned in the marches tho ;
Sagilly hym ruled to intelligens;
In hys tyme full grett goodneſſe gan he doo.
In Cipres regned noble vriens,
The Sariſins werred by huge uiolens,
(Ny neybours were) put thaim to diſtruccion,
And off thaim made full gret occiſioñ.

Oedes (Eudes) reigned sagely in the marches. Uriens reigned in Cyprus, and warred against the Saracens his neighbours.

GVy regned and was king of hermeny;
Full nobly ther lade both lande and contre;
hys hoires makyng werre times many
Vppon Sarriſins which miſbeleued be
Vntill þat thay were recreant to fee.
Ther had no fariſin but full fore þam drad,[1]
So theim chaſtiſing ther will noght ne had.

Guy was king of Armenia. His heirs warred against the Saracens, who sorely dreaded them.

[1] MS. "draw."

Raynold was king of Brehaigne (Bohemia). His heirs reigned after him. Anthony was duke of Luxemburg,

And Raynold alfo, off BrehAigne kyng,
hys leuyng regned ryght full pufantly.
After hys hoires femblably werkyng,
Regnyng after hym As men full myghty,
And welle ther contre gouerned dayly.
Anthony, the Duke of lufembrough tho,
Many townes toke And Bourghes alfo ;

[Fol. 102.] and his heirs did fair deeds. Raymond was earl of Forest, and was much beloved.

And tho which of tham difcended liniall
In ther tyme full fair dedes gan to do,
As well tho grette As tho litell and fmall.
Raymound full cherifly was hold alfo,
The full nobill Erle of the Forefte tho.
Thes moche conquered of fondry regyons,
And thay were of gret poffeffyons.

Thus all these brethren bare them well, and prospered; all except Horrible, who had been smothered, and Fromont, who had been burnt.

Off thes brethren after ther hoires were
In many places of grett wurthineffe,
And all thes bretherin full well gan tham bere,
Huge contre conqueryng by ther myghtineffe,
Excepte horrible, diftroed was expreffe,
And Fromont which brennyng gan purchas,
Which welle wold haue do, but diftroed was.

All these were descended from Raymond, and bare his arms. To this day the Cyprians use "Lusignan" as a war-cry.

Off Raymounde iffued All tho Aboue[1] faide ;
Ther iffue cries make, and ther armes bere ;
And yut the Cipriens at ech houred braid
Alwais crying "lufignen!" awhere,
And will whiles the worle will endure here.
Thay were good knightes, waillant & worthy,
Entrepreignant and affaillyng many.

The earl of Pembroke in England was also of this line;

The full noble Erle of thaim gan difcend,
Off panebourght in Englande enheritour,
Which gret contre and lande hym fende.

[1] MS. "Aboute."

In Arrigon, tho of cambrere honour [1]
5360 Off the firſte line were diſcended that houre,
And thay cam and iſſued veryly;
Off helmas hoires off Albany

as also the lords of Cambron (?) in Arragon.

Iſſued thys line, Meluſine tham bare.
5364 Fromount ther brother at mallers brend was,
And ther beried, the trouth to declare.
Gaffray the gentill lith *in* that place
In a tombe of ſtone portraed the ſpace.
5368 Off noble Gaffray refte me now here ſhall,
And ſay of hermyne the kynge roiall.

[Fol. 102 *b.*] But Fromont was buried at Maillezais, where also lies Geoffrey under a stone tomb. Here ends this part of the romance.

A Fair caſtell is hade in hermyne,
Which tho off Fairy both fourged & made.
5372 In hermeny the gret is it uerily,
As in this hiſtory told is and hade.
The Sperhauke caſtell named is and rad,
Where it behouith to wacche nightes thre
5376 *With*out Any fompnolent ſlepe to be.

Here begins the romance of the Sparrow-hawk Castle in Great Armenia; where knights had to keep awake three nights,

And ho accomplesh in *þat* place it may,
A yifte may demaunde and it haue he ſhall
Such As hym luſte to demaunde all-way,
5380 So demaunde noght hir body corporall
Which dwellith within, thys lady roiall.
Auiſe hym ryght wele hir no wife deſire,
For it Aualith noght hyr for to require.

and whoever did so might ask a boon of the lady Melior, provided that he did not ask for her love.

5384 And in fompnolence be founde thyng any,
Ther finabilly For euer ther ſhall dwell,
With thys fair lady ther fortake ueryly,
Which gret loos and prys hath ſhe foth to tell;
5388 That Melior was called fair and welle,
Doughter to Preſine of the fairy lande,
As thys hyſtory doth vs vnderſtande.

If the watcher went to sleep, he became her prisoner there for ever. Melior was the lady's name, daughter of Presine.

[1] In the margin—*erle of penbrok.*

[Fol. 103.] There was then a mighty king in Armenia, a fair knight, who undertook to watch three nights at Sparrow-hawk Castle,

IN hermeny hade tho a mighty king,
A fair knight, long, ftreight, lufty of colour,
With tendre youth was he hote being,
And als was of full worfhipfull ualour.
he faid wacche wold he nightes thre or foure
At the myghty hold of Sperhauke caftell,
For men had hym told off this ftrenght nouell.

intending afterwards to demand a boon. So he did, but afterwards repented of his rashness. He therefore departed,

And As for to wake ther behouyd he
Which the yifft[t][1] conquere of uarray fors fhold,
Ther he faid A wold wacche full nightes thre
And after A yifte ther demaunde he wold;
So gane[2] he do, repenting his hert bold.
Anon mad his way Full preft and redy,
Fro-thens departed with-out reft Any,

declaring that if he found the lady Melior fair, he would ask for nothing but *herself*. Such was his foolish resolve.

SAing that he wold unto thys wacche goo,
That notable yifte conquere if he myght.
So if thys lady faw plefaunt, fair hym to,
Non other yift wold defire hym to dyght.
But for noght hys thought, folay was it ryght,
For thys lady haue myght not thys man fell
For fpoufe ne for loue; what nedith more to tell?

Thus came he thither on St John's day, and having remembered to bring his tent, pitched it there in the meadow.

IN hert this knight rifen fo hafted and rood;
When ny approched and to fperhauke came
In feint John his night, taried ne boode,
To body therof had grett ioy and game.
In obliuy noght hys pauilon of fame;
Pight And ftreight was it in the medew tho.
Armyly parted all hys peple fro

[Fol. 103 *b*.] Then came he to the castle-gate,

Thys corteys, gentile, and thys noble knight,
The porte and gate cam of this caftell,

[1] Fr. text, *le don*. [2] MS. "gain," altered to "gane."

In hys hand halding A pece of flefh dight,
Wherwith the fperhauke thought to feed full wele.
In this caftell faw on go, foth to tell,
A man clothed white, femyng of vifage
That he was to fight full ferre ron in age ;

holding a piece of flesh to feed the sparrow-hawk. There saw he an old man, clothed in white,

Ther hym demaunding wat thyng þat he fought.
he hym Anfwered, " thys here demaunde I,
The couftome of this noble place wrought."
he faid, " come ye, of goddes part an-hy !
In the way of it then fhall you put furely
Where ye fhall finde this folain auenture,
Full ftrang vnto fight of ech creature."

who asked him what he sought, and next offered to show him the way.

Thys good man before, after went this king,
Afcending vp hy ther the grees all,
Fro the hall went more hyer in going.
Full moch merueled thys hy kyng roiall
Off the grete richeffe apperyng in hall,
And of the nobleffe that in ftedes founde,
Gretly commaundid the fightes þat ftound.

Then they mounted the steps and entered the hall. The king marvelled much at the wealth he saw there,

The Sperhauke at perche to fight difplaid,
Which beuteuous, fair, huge, and gentile was.
Thys full wurthy man Aforn ther hym faid,
" kyng, vnderftand me here a litel fpace,
Without flepe ye moft here wak in this place
Thys fperhauke thre days & nyghtes thre ;
And ye mow noght, Alway here byde mofte ye.

and perceived the sparrow-hawk on his perch. Then said the old man, " King, you must here watch this sparrow-hawk for three days and nights.

Iff that terme ye wake and þat ye flepe noght,
What-fo ye demaunde, of trouth haue fhal ye,
Off erthly thinges but not celeft wrought,
Excepte the body of thys lady fre ;

[Fol. 104.]
If you succeed, you may ask a boon, demanding

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

For gold ne ſiluer hir haue may not be."
The king ſaid, "wold wake without fompnolence,
To fede thys ſperhauke do my deligence."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The kyng toke to wake, And ſaid auiſe wold
What gift wold demaunde After nightes thre.
Ill concell he toke, ſuch yift demaund ſhold,
Whereof il Guerdon therof haue ſhal he.
Thys good man parted, the king bood Juparde,
Wher tho his behold put ententifly
To the riche nobleſſe that he ſaw *with* ey.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

What day waked he And also the night,
In gentile diſporte to hertys pleſaunce.
He ther ſlepte no ſlepe, manly waked ryght,
The ſperhauke ſagely fede by gouernaunce,
A repaſte hym yaf wel to conyſaunce.
Off vitaill and wines ſaw he gret fuſion,
Which tho was had in this garnyſon.

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

His refect*i*on gan reſceiue and take
Ther of hy and bas at his owne deuiſe.
The morne, all day full well gan to wake
And all night; the morn fed þe hauke *in* beſt wyſe,
Hyt pleaſed and gladded [1] hertes franchiſe.
A dore ſaw open all behinde hys bake,
Pertly entred in; of nobles ther no lacke.

[Fol. 104 *b*.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

HE neuer beforne ſaw ſo huge richeſſe,
Wherin vnto ſight briddes were many,
Whi[c]h uermaill [2] colour peynted were expreſſe;
The chambir peynted, portraed [3] freſhly
Aboute the walles with fine gold to ey;

[1] MS. "gladdes." [2] MS. "mermaill." Fr. text, *vermeillon*. [3] MS. "portared."

Figured knightis were enuironee,
With ther Armes peynted as thai fhold be

portraits were there of many knights,

To that refembling thes figures were.
Vnder ther names wrete *with* letters blake,
Where the fcripture faid right in thys manere ;
In fuch A yere fuch on here gan to wake,
But he flepte and in fompnolence was take ;
here of-fors he mofte byding take and dwell
As vs to honour and for to ferue well ;

and under each was written the name of each, with the date of his undertaking the adventure, and how he failed,

Where-hens thay fhull noght depart veryly
Fro [1] thys vnto the day of Iugement.
Thre places ther were appering to ey
In thys chambre, had full conuenient,
(Wherto euery man myght his fight hent),
A certain Armes, And fuch A fcripture
Vnder writen was frefly, be ye fure,

and had to remain there till the Day of Judgment. There were also three places where were seen three coats-of-arms,

Where this fcripture faid full merueloufly,
(In thys caftell here wrete *with* letters blake),
In fuch yere fuch on, the which his god hy
Caufed and made well plainly for to wake
Our noble Sperhauke *with*out fompnolence take ;
Hys gift therfor had by full gret prudence,
And by hys good notable diligence.

and beneath each was written the date when each of the knights undertook the adventure and *succeeded*.

Allfo thys chambre well depeynted was
Ffro foote of wallure the ouife vnto,
Which deuided [2] nacions hy and bas
And thes eftrange regions all[-so].
Full uaillant and wurthy were thys men tho,
Which noght ne went to fompnolent fleping,
But myghtyly And pufantly were waking,

[Fol. 105.] The walls of the chamber were painted from top to bottom. These three knights were valiant, and did not go to sleep.

[1] MS. "For."

[2] A mis-translation ; see Note.

The king mused on these things till he almost slept; then fearing lest he should do so, retreated.

And the giftes all therof bare Away.
Thys king in muſes ther was full ſtrongly
In the nobleſſe of this caſtell alway,
That almoſt he ſlepte, but not A-ſlepe fully,
For Alway waked he full beſily.
Ther vnto deuiſe Anon toke the uſe
hou he myght well ouermoche to muſe ;

The third night he also watched; and on the fourth morn came the lady, clothed all in green.

Ther-thens departed he full opinly.
That night worthily wacched hys perſon.
To hym amorn Appered full erly
Thys lady clothed *with* grene enuiron,
With lufty freſh colour after the ceaſon ;
For moſt cheffeſt time was of ſomertide
That ther hys wacche gan ſo to prouide.

The king salutes the lady, who praises him and asks him what he will have, for she will only refuse him *one* thing,

Full ſuetly the kyng hir ſalute And gret,
Which was hertly glad of hir good comyng.
She ſaid hym goodly, "non myght ther no bett,
you will haue a-quitte As in your waking.
rewarde and behold what gift will be hauyng ;
Vnto you *with*-ſay neuer ſhall hire me,
Sauyng And excepte only o gift be,

[Fol. 105 *b*.] which she will not pay. The king thanks her, and asks her love. She, greatly angered, denies him flatly,

Wherof the dowte ; in no wiſe ſhall pay.[1]
Now demaunde and aſke at your owne
pleſaunce."
"Graunt mercy, lady," the king hir gan ſay,
"Certes, ſine ſwete hert, non will this inſtaunce
But your body ;" then ſhe, full of noiſaunce,
Hys gift plainly gan refuſe And deny,
Sayng, "muſarde, ſole, me ſhall not haue
ſurely,

and bids him ask something else.

Som other yifte demaunde, aſke, or craue ;[2]
For ye my body certes haue ne may ;

[1] In the margin—*to say and vne-say is the propertie of a woman.*
[2] In the margin—*mark what is be-twene truthe and vn-truthe.*

For gold ne filuer it fhall ye not haue."
he faid, "I will non other gifte thys day
Then your body, in guerdon to my pay.
I you here promife if it haue ne fhall,
Other gift I will non demaunde at all."

But he reiterates his request, and will have nothing else.

THys fair lady was full wroth and malice,
Hym ther anfwered *with*out tariing,
"Certes, if ye more demaunde *in* fuch wife
My body to haue, your gift fhall be lefing,
And fuch mifchefe therof you be comyng
Wherof ye ne fhall neuer come to ende;
So huge heuineffe to you fhall difcende.

She is very angry, and tells him that, if he persists, he will find that great mischief will befall him,

FOr that roiall rewme which *in* hand hold,
And *þat* ye gouerne now, lo! prefently,
Difherite fhall be your hoires manyfold,
And difcomfite lefte euerlaftingly."
He ther anfweryng, "be it witte or foly,
you will haue to loue, fin yifte me haue yif on,
I will noght defire non other guerdoñ."[1]

for that he shall lose his kingdom, and his heirs shall be disinherited. He again says he will have nothing else.

"FOltifh muferde," faid, "of itt fhalt thou faill,
Outerly haft loft thy quarell to craue;
Other gift here hens fhall by no gouernaill;
Then grett mifchaunce to purchace and haue;
The difceiueth thy cautels in hert graue,
Which the fo meueth with full grett folay;
Now leue thi defire, auail the ne may.

[Fol. 106.]
"Fool," says she, "thou hast lost all; thy trickery deceives thee, and moves thee to folly.

THy man to-auaunce, by hys folay rage
Lefing his lady in loue amerous,
By his gret folay and cruel outrage,
For that growen is fo coragious;
Melufine *þat* Raymou*n*d gan to efpous,

Thine ancestor, by his folly, lost his spouse. His name was Raymond, and he espoused Melusine.

[1] In the margin —*truthe, thouge yt was vnto his payne and vnto his vter vndoynge.*

The ring on finger fettyng of recorde,
Which fhe had fo made nawhere gretter lorde.

King Guy, from whom thou art descended, was my nephew. We were three sisters, and enclosed our father Helmas within a rock,

THe kinge Guy, of whom thou difcended ert,
Was my neuew, vnderftande thys cas.
Suftres thre we be, y ly you noght at hert,
Which for finne and crime of the kyng helmas,
Our fader, þat we clofed hy and bas
With-in the gret Roche which he hym-felfe made;
Oth to our moder and þat broken had,

because he broke his oath made to our mother Presine. And when we had done this,

WHych tho called was the lady preſine,
In Gefian[1] no wife fhold hir behold;
hir defire to kepe wold by no couyne,
And ther he hir faw ryght as I haue told;
For that of hir and vs loft hath the hold.
And when enclofed within was fully,
In the Roche, As well As thought vs only,

[Fol. 106 b.] our mother was angry with us, and made me watch this sparrow-hawk here, without ever departing hence.

Our moder therfor was wroth and malice.
Ther fhe me made, by werkes of fairy,
This fperhauke to kepe in this maner wife,
And without euer to uoide hens truly.
But the For-takyng left to me only;
That was the gifte that fhe gaf to me
In hir malice, wrēth, and ill cruelte.[2]

To Melusine she gave the property of becoming a serpent every Saturday, as a punishment.

And after fhe gaff vnto Melufine,
My fufter, which was A madyn ful fare,
A gift to endur, neuer determine,
Whilis the worlde lafte neuer make retrair;
The fetterday vnto A ferpent repair.
Off trouth it is fo, like As I you fay;
Raymound breke his othe and loft hir for ay.

[1] MS. "Sefian."
[2] In the margin—*the losee off a Fayre lady.*

FOr hir fhold not fe the fetterday nowyfe,
Folily tho faw, loft hir company ;
Wherfor diftreffed ftrangely, to deuife,
he And hys line fille ; neuer creffed hy ;
Thys toke thay a fall yut to fight of ey.
Paleftine my fuftre, yongeft to furmitte,
At quonig montain in Arragon fhitte

Her husband was never to see her that day, but he broke his oath. Palestine, my youngest sister, is in a mountain in Arragon.

As long As thys wordle hath enduraunce,
Fro thys hy montain neuer put Away.
Ther fhall warde and kepe the trefour *in* fubftaunce
Off kyng helmas, our fader that day.
Thys our moder ordained *with*out delay.
But thys to conquere may non by engine,
But difcended be of kyng helmas line.

There she keeps watch over King Helmas' treasure, which none but one of our lineage may win.

NOw knowith thys then, difcended ye be.
yff that my wurdes vnderftande well do,
Meue ne ftore [1] fhold no fuch aduerfite
As of my body hauyng wif you to.
That which your is noght ye will hold fo,
By *þat* you may come full huge ill and pine,
To you and to all youres of your line ;

[Fol. 107.]
You ought not then to wish to have me to wife. Owing to this, you shall suffer great misfortune,

I doubte me ryght noght thai fhall gett a fall.
For tho fhall fuccede, after you command,
holdyng your Rewme by fors of werre, and fhall
Enlefing the Rewme and alfo the lande.
And he which lafte fhall leue it, vnderftand,
Of A befte the name fhall he be bering,
Which off all other is the brutall king.

and your successors shall lose their kingdom. The last of them shall bear the name of the king of beasts.

Ryght thys fhall it be, beleue it full well,
For certes off this I ly you no-thyng;

Thus shall it be. But for your folly, you might have

[1] "ftere." (?)

had a blessing; but now shall you receive a curse."

For, ſir, ne had be thi foule corage fell,
And thy grett folay with thine outraging,
your unthriftineſſe and curſed leuyng,
lo! ye ſhold haue had benedicc*i*on;
And now ye ſhall [haue] maledicc*i*on.

Then Melior vanished away; and great mischance happened to this king.

PArt to you here, where that ye ſhall haue
Such thing that ye percas fele now ſhall."
The kyng vnderſtode ſuch happe myght not faue;
But ſhe uoided thens er that it gan fall,
And uaniſhed Away fro ther ſightes all.
I-now ſhall he haue of ſhamfull noiſaunce,
Anon it happned to hym gret miſcaunce.

[Fol. 107 *b*.] He was beaten on the haunches, sides, legs, arms, and head, so that he came to a "hard fast," and felt the strokes on his chine.

THere ſmeten was hanches and ſides vppon,
Als vppon legges, armes, and hede.
To herd ſaft tho cam in concluſion;
his opinion [1] right noght went in-ded,
Well felt the ſtrokes on the chineſſe bred.
All the ſkyn tho was torn and to-rent,
Many ſtrokes had ryght full violent.

He cried for mercy, and fled, being well anointed, and having no sleeve or rag whole on him.

"Alas!" he ſaid, "for goddis loue, mercy!
leue off me now, or truly am dede!"
Then thay put hym hout, the kyng Away fly,
Which ſo well was Anoynted indede,
That no ſleue ne pane had he hole of brede.
The kyng went hys way, hym-ſelfe auaunſing,
In the fair medew his peple fynding.

His people asked him how he had sped, and if he

Ther hym demaunding hou *þa*t he had do,
(For off his dedes ne knew thai no-thing);
Hou he had ſped, And were wel waccheđ to
W*i*thout ſompnolence or any ſlepyng,

[1] MS. "opunion."

Beforne this gentill Sperhauke being. had kept good watch. He replied that he had fared ill.
The kyng anſwerd *with*out miſded ſure,
"For foth," ſaid he, "to my ille Auenture!"

Then rode they to the sea, and took ship, where the king took off his armour. Then rowed he strongly,

TO diſloge tham made quikly and lightly,
To ſe cam anon, ryding A ſtrong pas.
Into A fair barge the kyng went lightly,
he and hys peple; no tarying was.
To vnarme hym the kyng made in *þat* place.
Wonderfull fortune had he in the ſe,
But not-withſtandyng ſtrongly rowede hee,

[Fol. 108.] so that he soon arrived at a haven of Armenia. From that day his fortunes declined.

That in ſhort bref time at port gan Ariue
At hauyn of Crius, into hermeny.
The kyng iſſued fro his nauee bliue.
long wold it be Al to rehers only,
But unto decline went he forth dayly.
Many tymes after curſed the day
That in Melior had put his loue ay.

He was well aware it was all his own fault. After him reigned another unfortunate king, and after him nine others.

PErceued it was by hys owne deſert,
Saw he and his land ſhold be diſherite,
Exile and deminute by his dedes ſmart.
When fro the worlde cam in-to ending plite,
A kyng after hym regned in *þat* ſite,
Which be half[1] was wurſe in hys gouernaunce,
And nyne hoires after like wiſe in ſubſtaunce.

They at last lost all. One of them came to France, died at Paris, and was buried in the Celestin convent.

Thay loſt ther lande and all ther hauour,
Inclinyng and comyng vnto miſchaunce.
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce *þat* houre,
So fro hermeny chaced in-to Fraunce,
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym ſuſtinance;
At Parys died As happned the cas,
At the celeſtines entered he was.

His men wore white at the

Off hys dedes non enquere will take,
hys men clothed white, (As of this kyng fre),

[1] MS. "behalf." Fr. text, *la moitie.*

funeral; not black as men do in France. This is no jape, but true.

Which in fraunce were wont uſe clothes blake,
It is no iape, it is trouth to ſee.
Clothes blake comyn thing vſed [be],
As well an hundred perſones As on,
Ther clerly perceuied may it be Anon.

[Fol. 108 *b*.] People wondered, not being used to it; why they did it I know not. I now come to speak of Palestine.

At hys enterment for hym ſo was doo,
Wherof moche peple ther abaſhed were;
For that neuer before ſain was to do ſo;
Wherfor it gan do certes wote I nere.
Off Sperhauke caſtell the maner leue I here,
And begyn to ſpeke of this damycell,
The fair Paleſtine, ſomwat of hyr ſpell.

She was shut up in a place in Arragon, where she wards her father's treasure;

NOw will I declare of fair Paleſtine,
The ſwette, the curteys, gentile mayden fre;
In Conqs is ſhitte by carſty [1] engine
*With*in Arragon, that noble contre,
Where that hir faders trefour wardeth ſhe
At hir moder heft and commaundement.
ho it may conquere, take, other hent,

which none shall win except he be of her lineage. The chronicle treats this story briefly.

The lande of promiſſion ſhall conquere.
But *þat* trefour conquered ſhall not be,
But of hyr line diſcended and born̄ were.
A litell ſhall ſay of Paleſtine [2] fre,
Brefly and ſhortly paſſe forth here will me;
For the Cronike doth treteth [3] this brefly,
More ferther wold go, mater finde might I.

I only put down what it says, inventing nothing. Now I return to Palestine, who is in the high mountain.

HEre ſay and declare after *þat* haue founde.
Of nouel thinges to our diſcipline
No-thing I fynd at no tydy ſtounde.
Retorn̄ ſhall Again to fair Paleſtine,
Which to that place deſtened by Preſine;

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] MS. "Poleſtine." [3] *Sic* in MS.

In the hy montain Aboue-faid þe ſite,
Where many A cruell ſerpent enhabite.

A Man may not into that montain go,
That men ſhall not finde to whome for to ſpeke.
Many A knyght hath paſſed it into,
In ſomer, winter, both ſtourne men & meke.
But non retourned, ne myght thens to-breke,
Iff in that montain longe time ſogerned,
But that he were ded or foule deftroed.

[Fol. 109.] Many men, both ſtern and meek, went thither, but none returned; all were foully destroyed.

SO As in ſcripture I may fynden right,
Off worthy knyghtes full many ther were,
Myghty, ſtrong, fers, And men beyng light,
Thys faid gret trefour went for to conquere;
But no-thyng myght thai no wife acquire there;
In An ill hour vnto þat place went,
For neuer after Again retourn hent.

There were many men who sought to win that treasure, but could get nothing. None returned.

IN Englande A knight, mighty and puſant,
Which of knyghtly were moche knew to auaill,
A gentile knyght, was worthy and uaillant,
Which in knightly werke neuer gan to faill,
Army dedes gan do in plate and maill;
A full goodly knyght, manly, debonair,
With wurthy knyghtes taught was he full faire

There was in England a mighty knight, who did deeds of arms in plate and mail; who was brought up

IN the hy court of noble king Arthure,
Where knyghtes were taught uertu perfectly.
Off Triſtram-is line was hys engendrure,
Which þat whilom had full gret feignory.
Aboute Arthure was yeres full thirty,
Off that Am not I untrew ne leſingour;
He hurde ſpeke and talke of this huge trefoure.

in Arthur's court, and was of the lineage of Tristram. This knight heard of this treasure,

[Fol. 109 *b.*] and said he would win it, and the Land of Promise afterwards.

Promeſſe ther he made to that montain go,
Which by manly ſtrenght many thinges wold don ;
This full riche trefour thought he conquere tho.
After he went into þat region,
And into the lande of promiſſion ; [1]
Thought vnto conquere all the hole contre,
With ſtrenght of ſwerde therto apointed he.

He departed thence on a Tuesday, riding merrily to Arragon. He had only one page with him.

This knight was full good, manly, and hardy ;
Ther-thens departed on A tewſday,
Into Arragon riding merily.
With hym was but a litill page on way,
No more felawſhip had hym to conuay,
So he went and rode hys iourne anon
That he ariued into Arragoñ.

Within the mountain dwelt a serpent, a hideous monster, whose paunch was as big as a wine-tun.

THe Monte demaunded, men hym ſhewed tho,
Where *with*in had was A monſtre hyduous,
Meruelouſly fers and orgulous to,
Aboue all other wormes moſt perilous ;
hys panche As A pipe hug and comerous ;
Fro A caue noght meued by no gouernail,
Off hir vnmete hugeneſſe is gret meruaill.

It had but one ear, and no nostrils, and only one eye, which was a yard long. Its breath came out at its ears.

But on ere hath noght this monſtrous geſt,
Ne noſtrelles non appering in hed.
Thys wonderfull and meruelous beſt
Ne but on ey hath middes the forehed,
Which thre fote ny hath, wat *in* lenght & bred.
hir breth by the ere hath ther iſſew oute,
Wherof all the wordle [2] fou*m*neth all Aboute.

[1] MS. "proniſſion."

[2] MS. "wordley." The translator was thinking of *monde ;* but read "mount ;" Fr. text, *mont.*

ALway in ſlepe this curſed cruell fend. [Fol. 110.]
When that he rowted, thing litell or grett
In this ſaid caue is felonefly tende,
Where the ryght wone [1] was of Paleſtine ſett,
Warding thys trefour by kyng helmas get,
By Iugement of hyr moder ſaid. [2]
The dore to the caue myghty ſtrong was had,

It always slept; and when it snored everything near it was disturbed. Here dwelt Palestine.

With yren bondes at entre of þis caue,
Where this riche trefour ſhitte & made faſt was;
Which neuer was unſhitte entre to haue,
For the warde had this monſtre *in* þ*at* place.
To entre therby non durſt for hir manace,
But iſſued be of helmas linage,
Which aforn haue ſaid in my rude langage.

The monster guarded the cave's door, where the treasure was shut in. None but one of Helmas' line could enter.

Thys lady preſine ordaned alſo,
When to hir doughtres thes gyftes gif had,
Thys caue enmyddes thys ſaid montain tho,
Wher moche peple were to perifhing lad.
Of caues and diches vnder I-now made,
Full of ſerpentes, inly *per*ilous,
And w*ith* other places full meruelous.

Here many men perished. The ditches round about were full of serpents, very dangerous.

When ho wold it go, of-fors moſt paſſe by.
But neuer man þ*at* place ne ſtede went
That fogerne wold ther for thyng any,
But þ*at* men thaim ſaw anon to retorn bent.
Thys mont had but a fory path to hent,
ful litell and ſtratte was it vnto ſe,
To gon vp an hy ther had miles thre;

No man went there but he soon came back again. The path up the mountain was very narrow and three miles long.

WHich behouid go withe-out reſt any,
For where man to ſitte A place ſhold not ſe,

[Fol. 110 *b.*] Men had to go up without resting;

[1] MS. "lone;" but Fr. text, *la propre demeure.* [2] "ſad" (?)

for there was no place to sit down except one sat upon serpents.

Enleffe vppon ſerpentes fate truly!
And Infinite was of thaim ſuche plente.
For dred of that fende unhabite þe contre;
Off thys ſtrange monſtre, declared & ſaid,
Thys haue it founde in writing diſplaid.

This knight came riding thither, attended only by a page. When he drew near the place, he met a man,

NOw ſhall come Again to þat wurthy knight,
Which ther cam ryding A courſire vppon;
Alone his uiage, ſauyng A page ryght,
Thys good knight without reproche of perſon;
When thys montain approched ny to gon,
A good man be[1] fund enmeddis the way,
Which to this montain hym gan he conuay.

who led him to within a mile of the place, and then left him to go on alone, showing him the path whence none returned.

SO when that he was A mile of certain,
Then vnto hym ſaid, "no nerre will I go;
Sir, be-hold yande that hiduous montain,
leſe will I ne wyn; fre knyght, go ther-to."
The path hym ſhewed wherby moſt go tho,
Fro-whens[2] neuer cam Again here no wight
For ſoth at no day vnto mannys ſight;

His guide departed, and the knight rode on. At the mountain he dismounted and gave his page the rein, and bade him wait;

And yut hath ther be men mo then twenty.
hys gidour ne wold lenger ſogern[3] plain,
Fro-thens[4] deperted, retornyng wightily.
Thys knyght ſo rode, he cam to that montain.
Ffro courſer lepte doñ, hys page toke þe rain.
Firmely commaunding hym ſhold there abide,
Noght Fro horſbakke go till he cam, no tide.[5]

[Fol. 111.] though he only had to wait in

But, certes, for noght there Abide ſhold he,
Full well myght he lete hys hors to paſture;
For neuer his maiſter Again ſhold ſe.

[1] "he" (?)
[2] MS. "For whens."
[3] MS. "fogren."
[4] MS. "For thens."
[5] At the bottom of this page is the catchword:—
"But certes for noght there Abide."

This knight departed to this auenture,
To god commaunding, blifſing hys figure ;
Entring within this narew path þat ſtounde,
That dais of lif neuer ſuch on ſ[o]und.

vain. The knight commends himself to God, and enters the path,

Ryght will armed was thys noble knight,
A good ſwerd of ſtile in his hand holdyng ;
Thys mont toke, narew and ſtikell to fight.
An horrible ſerpent ſaw he comyng,
Towardes this knight, vppon hym rennyng;
Trowyng hym deuour that houred inſtaunce,
With a yanyng throte gain hym gan [1] Auaunce.

being well armed. He soon sees a serpent coming, running at him to devour him, and advancing with yawning throat.

That fine good cuſtell that in hand gan hold
Brandes the good knyght, uaillant and wurthy.
Hym to aſſail the ſerpent full bold,
He As man fers Approched hir ryght ny ;
With o foule ſtroke the necke cute ato ſwiftly ;
The ſerpent fill don dede for all hyr ſtrenght,
Which worme was ny ryght ten hole feete of lenght.

The knight brandishes his dagger, and cuts its neck in two at a stroke. The serpent fell down dead. It was 10 feet long.

When the ſerpent ſaw ther ded mortally,
The montain gan take ; vpwarde ſtied there,
As man quicke and wight *with* all the body.
Gayn him comyng ſaw A-pace A huge bere,
Hym vnto aſſaill cam [2] *with* all power ;
But of hym thought he to faill in no wife,
With gret raundon cam to hym in his gife.

Upward again he mounted, but soon sees a huge bear coming apace, which, however, he encounters boldly,

Fro hys ſhethe thys knight drew hys good ſwerd hard,
As A mighty man, wurthy and hardy ;
Shewing inly well he was no coward.

[Fol. 111 *b.*] drawing his sword like a mighty man.

[1] MS. "gain." [2] MS. "can." Fr. text, *vint.*

The bear gripped his shield, and clutched at his shoulder, tearing his hauberk;

Vppon the fhild hym grypte thys bere tho ferelly,
On hys fhulder als hapned verily;
Hys mailled hauberke broken and to-tore,
Hys fhild vnto grounde drew hym before.

but he smote the bear in the groin, giving him a wound a foot long, and cutting off his snout, so that he could not bite.

TO hys good fwerd tho had mifter and nede,
The beres gret groin tho fmote he vppon;
With hys fwerd fo gripte of fine manly-hede,
Ther all fnowte and groin fmote he of Anon,
More then A large fote, of recorde fo doñ.
Tho durft he noght charge As of his bityng,
By hys eyes twain of was it fhering.

The bear was very chapfallen at this, yet raised his paw against him again; but the knight leaps lightly aside.

THys beftly bere was paffyng old and ftrong,
Natheles tho was heuily chermat;
But not-for-that haufed hys pawe Alonge,
Trowyng to hapne hym to rafe þat dat.
But full wyght and light was this knight algat,
Ther tho made A lepe wyghtly in trauers
Fro this bere, which was fers, bold, and diuers.

With a back stroke of his sword he cuts off the bear's paw. But it reared up, and clutched him with the other paw. Both fell together.

A bakwarde fmote he *with* hys fwerde of ftile,
O paw of the bere of was there keruyng;
On hys hynder feet reifed up that while,
And to this faid knight full ny approching,
That *with* that other paw hy*m* was cracching.
All hys Armure he to-breke and tere,
So both on an hepe fill, both knyght and bere.

[Fol. 112.] Then the knight with his dagger cut the bear's throat, so that it quitted its hold.

But thys bere myght noght in no wife bite;
Then at his gerdell Anon toke this knight
A dagger full good, fourged of profite,
Thorugh hys throte yaf A ftroke *with* all his myght
So that gretly hurt was this in foule wyght.

Ther lefte the bere his pris, ſtoned fore was,
That other pawe the knyght ſmote of in *þat* place;

Then the knight cut off its other paw.

Tho caſte he vp A full meruelous cry.
Then this manly knyght *with*out other lette
Thorugh belay hym ſmote to croſſe of ſwerd ny;
Vnto mortall deth [t]he bere to grounde ſhette.
Thys good engliſh knight his ſwerd in ſheth ſette;
So vp went, doing huge diſtrucc*ion*,
Off ſerpentes made grete occiſion,

At last the knight smites it through the belly up to the cross-hilt of his sword. On went he slaying many serpents.

And off beſtes wilde many on gan ſle,
hou-be-it that he ſuffred full grett pain.
So going up hy till to coppe came he,
By fors and ſtrenght ſo paſſing the montain,
So niyng to the caue wher this monſtre was plain,
Which the yren dore warded of the caue
Where the treſour was that he trowed haue,

At last he reached the top, and drew near the iron door of the cave, which the monster guarded.

Which was encloſed by werke of fayry,
In an ill hour cam, which was gret folay.
Into diche and caue entred vnhaply;
And As ſone As he refte ther had alway,
Perceiuyng this monſtre where *þat* ſhe lay,
Which had A large eye, (thre foote was Aboute),
And when that ſhe hym perceued all-oute,

But he entered the cave in an evil hour; for he soon perceived the monster with its eye a yard broad,

RAyſed was anon with wonderfull corage,
As A malice beſte *with* cruelneſſe ſett;
Towarde thys good knight Auaunced hir outrage;
Thys monſtre belay As pipe large and gret.
Thys knight ſaw hir come, *with*-draught wold not gette,
But that alwais again hir go wold
For what-ſomaner vnto hym come ſhold.

[Fol. 112 *b*.] which at once attacked him. The knight saw it come, but would not retreat, but determined to face it at all risks.

Drawing his sword he smote it, but his strokes failed to harm it. Neither iron, steel, nor wood could wound it. It bit his sword in half,

HIs fwerd fro fheth drew, this monſtre yafe ſtroke grete,
But no-thyng was wurth the ſtroke hir gan take;
Wher *with* the bake or *with* fwerd egge gette,
To this monſtre might noght do hurt ne wrake
With yre, ſtile, ne tre, hou-ſo it gan make.
Thys monſtre *with* teeth the fwerd ther taking,
In moitees to Forthwith it breking,

though it was all of steel. Then with a yawning throat it swallowed the knight down whole.

ANd yut was ſhe fourged all of ſtile;
Thys knight noght of hir myght to-tere ne rafe.
The fwerd wel ground, no harder many mile,
The ſharpneſſe ne hardneſſe no-thing wurght was.
With A yanyng throte thys knight gan manace,
All at a morſell fwolewed knight furely;
(Off thys here now faid in no wife do ly);

The knight seemed no more in its mouth than a pasty in an oven. Thus died he, and it was a great pity.

THys knight fwolewed, in throte noght pering
More then doth A paſtay in ouen truly![1]
With full gret dolour in thys wife deing,
Gret demage and hurt was it uerily.
For in hym was had huge hardeſſe furely,
For moche had doñ of manly dedes fair,
But nomore ſhall do thys knyght debonair.

[Fol. 113.] Thus was this good English knight devoured by this monster, and it was a great pity.

THys engliſh good knight was *with*out ſocour,
Which this faid treſour trowed to conquere,
That whilom by days had gret honour;
With thys monſtre was this deuoured there;
Gret damage it was of thys baculere,[2]
For in hym was had full gret wurthineſſe,
Socour was ther non, but to deth moſte dreſſe.

[1] In the margin—*deathe of a noble knyghte* [*y*]*at was of sir* [*T*]*ristrams* . . . . .

[2] MS. "baiulere." See Glossarial Index.

NOght fo hy As he neuer man vp went,
The more in hym was of hug wurghtineffe;
Remembred ought be his knyghtly entent,
Stilled ne put fhold be in hodelneffe.
No man, As feith this hiftory expreffe,
Neuer went fo ferre As to memory,
In that meruelous Roche being fo hy,

No one ever got so high up the mountain as he did. His daring should be remembered, not lost in oblivion. No man ever went higher.,

As wilfolly gan do thys full good knight.
Too days hys page ther fogernyng fure
At the hill fote; after retornyng ryght
Into Englande ftreight; wher thys auenture
Declared to many a creature,
Which caufed to write therof thys hiftory,
To ende that it fhold be now in memory.

His page waited for him two days, and then returned to England, there relating this adventure to many.

And thys ther he knew by A good deuyñ,
Which fomtyme was clerke Merlyn vnto,
Which ther dwelled, to life gan determyñ.
Vnto thys faid clerke ran all the worle tho,
For ther neceffite vnto hym gan go,
Wherof he wold fay trouth and verite,
For entirely all ryght full well knew he,

A certain divine, who had been clerk to Merlin, dwelt there (in Arragon), to whom many went to hear the story.

Like As hade be ther in propur perfon,
And had comyn ftreight Fro the faide mon-
tain.
This deuyn was of good cognicion,
And a fcoler was of Tholoufe certain,
As witneffeith litterall fcripture plain.
Verily moche more then yeres twenty
Neuer ther cam man vnto hym truly,

[Fol. 113 b.]
He was a scholar of Toulouse, and during twenty years gave true replies to any questions he was asked.

But hym declared the trouth and uerite
Off all maner thing that man demaunde
wolde.

The page, therefore, went to him.

and learnt from him all the truth just as I have now told it you.

For that the page *with* hym thought wolde be,
Which fubtille and fage was he manyfold ;
All trouth and verite by hym was vnfold
Of that I haue told, declared, and fayd ;
By this notable clerke was it displaide.

There was also a man of noble birth in Hungary, who came to this mountain; but he was not there long,

Ther was on hade in lande of hungery,
Which defcended was of A noble line.
Thys trefour to conquere thought he manly,
But by hym may noght be it to termyne.
To this montain cam this noble knight fine,
The monte clymbed up ten or twenty pas,
And ther taried noght no whiles ne fpace.

being very soon devoured by serpents; but he went not up so high as that other. Pity the English knight was not of the right lineage.

Ther *with* ferpentes he deuoured was,
Nawher ny went vp As other gan doo.
Many deuoured hath be in that place,
Non fhall that trefour conquere hym vnto
But of the lynage be difcended fro.
Full heuy it was that this goodly knyght
Off Englande had noght be off that line ryght.

[Fol. 114.] He was descended from Tristram, and had assuredly won the treasure, had he been of the right lineage.

HE defcended was off full hy parage,
Off Tristram hys line cam of natiuite,
As the hiftory reherfith hys linage.
Forfoth that trefour conquerd then had he,
So of that linage aboue-faid had be,
Full chiualrous was certes at *þat* day,
Ferre and ny as any of thaim to fay.

Then came a messenger to Lusignan, where Geoffrey was enjoying himself with all honesty.

Tho it cam and fill in that ceafon there,
That A meffinger paffed forth tho by,
Wher Gaffray *with* gret toth was in his manere
At ioyous difport ryght full merily
At lufignen caftell *with* ftrangers many ;

To which egall fporte non the yere fhold fee,
In gentile maner *with* all honefte.

With hym ladyes and damycelles fair,
Connyng, gracyous, humble, and benigne ;
Gentile, womanly, and in debonair,
In a fair herber to fport gan in-cline.
A meffinger cam ; faw well by hys fyne.
Streith to Gaffray went, hym fair falutinge ;
"Sir, ye be welcome," Gaffray hym fayng.

With him were ladies and damsels in a fair arbour. Geoffrey tells the messenger he is welcome,

This meffinger connyng and gentile was,
Off hys mouth iffued fugred fwete langage ;
Nouels demaunded Gaffray in *þat* place.
Aforn lades and damicelles fage.
He hym fette and told all the huge outrage
(Like As this boke reherfith here before)
All the dedes told off thys knyghtes lore ;

and asks him the news. Then the messenger relates the adventure I have just told you,

And whereto thys fers monftre doth repayre,
Which peple hath diftroide fo many,
Myghty, ftrong, fers, bold, gentile, debonair,
And hou the trefour wardeth myghtyly
Off helmas, which was fo ryche and fo worthy ;
Neuer perceiued non like off anaill.
Gaffray full moche therof gan meruaill,

[Fol. 114 *b.*] and tells where the monster was who guarded the treasure of Helmas. At this Geoffrey greatly marvels,

Off thys faid monftre werof he gan fpeke.
Thys monftre to deftroy faid he wold go,
With-all the trefour conquere and oute breke.
Hys men made redy qwikly, no refte made tho,
Forthwith fend he hys brother Thierry vnto
To hym come, and cam ; after hym fayng,
The contre gouerne to hys retornyng.

and says he will go and destroy the monster. He made ready, and sent to his brother Thierry to come and govern his realm.

For thys Gaffray was of fers harde corage ;
Neuer hys days wold he noght mary,

This Geoffrey was of a fierce courage,

and would never marry. Then he made over his land to Thierry, saying he should depart.

In wife to entre As in mariage ;
No woman wold betrouth neither affy.
Vnto hys brother the lande toke goodly,
Sayng he mofte go *with*oute any refte,
Off that riche trefour for to make conqueſte.

But he was prevented by sickness and age. Alas! had he lived, he would have had the treasure,

But when that he fhold haue taken hys way,
Gret ſikneſſe hym toke and age gan repair ;
On his bed don layd *with* full grett feknes
Thys gentill knyght, ſtronge, fers, & debonair,
Which ſo many gud dedys hath doñ.
Alas! the trefour of Comquez fhold had,
So that lif myght haue, (for of all was drad),

[Fol. 115.] and the Land of Promise, that Holy Land. But death, who spares none, made war on Geoffrey; and

And the lande haue hade off promiſſion ;
Iff god wold haue fend hym good liffe and long,
Conquered fhold that holy regyon.
But deth ſparith noght tho feble ne ſtronge,
With Gaffray hath take were other Among,
And to hym comyng A grett paſſe *with*-all,
Ther making hym were [1] dedly and mortall.

against death hath no man any power. Death smote Geoffrey sorely with his cruel dart,

SO uenquiſſhed was by dethes gouernall,
Agayn hir noman hath fors ne puſaunce
Be he not ſo ſtronge or of ryche auaill,
Als well tho feble As ſtrong in ſubſtance ;
Non hath power gain dethis gouernaunce,
Be he Baron, Markeis, Erle, Duke, Prince, or kyng ;
With hys cruell dart Gaffray fore ſmiting,

piercing his heart.

Full ſtreight the ſtroke went ther vnto hys hert,
Where-of ther was had inly gret dolor ;

[1] MS. "wery ;" Fr. text, *guerre*.

For in peiters fhold haue be well expert,
I-now good dedys don wold by labor,
Er that yere paſſed any tyme or hour,
Churches make and found, which deuiſed were;
Bothe landes, rentes, thought he morteis there,

What good deeds he would have done in Poitiers, had he lived!

TO found and make noble churches gret.
Alas! full dolorous to bildyng fhal it bide!
Neuer fhall thay be fourged, made, and get,
Where-of is pite in many A ſide;
Gret heuineſſe will it cauſe full wide,
And ne had the will and the pleſire be
Off our hy lorde, ſittyng in trenite.

But, alas! these things were left undone. His death will cause great heaviness.

GAffray lith doñ ſike, ille touches feling,
Wyn ne vitaill reſceiue may for fekneſſe;
Anon After the preſte were ſending,
Hys confeſſour come, hym gan to confeſſe,
And ther beforn hym made to ſay a meſſe.
After ordained making teſtament
Spiritually, after hys entent,

[Fol. 115 b.] He can take no food. His confessor came and said mass. Then he made his will touching both spiritual and lay matters.

When deuiſed hade hys lay thynges all.
Then entered was at Maillers abbay,
Where a fair repair had he full roiall.
For of-new again made, it is no nay,
ryght As he had diſtroed it all-way.
So by hym was made and furged again
Off Maillers the church, *with* freſh werke folain.

Then was he buried at Maillezais abbey, which he had rebuilt after destroying it.

Ther ligh[t], ther hys thombe put is and fett;
The frenſh maker feith it ſaw he *with* ey.
Hys teſtament made, it myght be no bett,
And what lefte ouer, to pore made pay truly.
So after paſſyng to goddes mercy,
All were paid in hys owne preſence,
What-ſo hym ſemed As in conſcience.

There lieth he, and the author of the French Romance there saw his tomb. Thus he made his will,

and yielded his soul to God. Had he lived longer, he would have done more.

To god yild his foule, hym do mercy and grace,
And of hys fynnys A generall perdon,
For moch goodneffe gan do in many place
As fone As in hym was put refon.
Iff lenger leued, more wold he haue don̄;
He is now dede, what fhall we then fay?
That god hym pardon hys myfdedes ay.

[Fol. 116.] Thierry was Geoffrey's heir, and governed both Poitiers and Parthenay, being at first powerful,

THierry was tho A full noble knyght;
Gaffray ther hym made hys enheritour
Off all the contre which he hild hym dyght
And that to hym pertained any hour.
Thierry it hild, A noble gouernour,
So he regned there, & in pertenay;
Regned and gouerned pufantly.

but afterwards he alienated much of his property. Yet the descendants of Thierry reign at Parthenay still,

But after thys by hys mariage,
geuyng to on here, to Anoder there,
So Alienyng part of hys heritage.
yut noght-with-ftandyng god of hys power
Caufith the line regne yut without danger,
At noble pertenay ther of fir Thierry
Off trouth thai regne yut ryght worfhipfully,

as Melusine foretold; and may they long do so! The line endureth to this day, and contains many noble knights,

As Melufyne faid, moder of that line,
That long fchold endure the line of pertenay;
God grant long endure, neuer determine!
Fro-thens till now durith the line alway
In chiualrous knighthode vnto thys day;
Noble good knightes, gentile, curtes, fre,
Among all other hauyng habilite,

of whom we shall speak a little, and then end. Especially should be

Off whom a litill we fhall be declaring,
After thys boke finifh fhall and end.
Goddes knightes haue be, ther trouth neuer
falfing

For king, Duke, Erle, Markeis, Baron, or frend.
hit wil Appered by that good knight hend
That thys boke began, of Partenay lord,
Grett honour had in life of recorde ;

mentioned that worthy knight, who caused this book to be begun.

HE that this boke made and gret parte gan do,
This knight died, in life had gret honour ;
For noght man may do gain mortal deth, lo !
The feble and ftrong takith fhe ech hour ;
Non hir efcapith As by no labour,
Be it king, or pope, or lordes of landes,
All moft nedis paffe truly by hyr handes,

[Fol. 116 *b*.] When it was partly done, this knight died; for who can escape death?

THat is the trewage of bodies humayn.
Al most by that path of fine fors to paffe ;
And that way compaffith ech foueran,
hou moche fro tham to hyr haue, hy or baffe.
Ouer-light fhe is euermore, alaffe !
Alas ! fhe comyth wonderfull lyghtly,
Man feith not the hour ne hou he fhall dy.

All must pass along death's path. Alas ! it cometh unexpectedly, man sees not when nor how.

WHen fhe oppreffith any creature,
More fwetter[1] fhe goth then arew any,
Smitting man *with*out wurdes faing fure.
When on hir thenke, my hert fogheth heuely,
And fo here fhold do ech humain body ;
Euery man fhold doubt hir cruell hand,
For ouer-gret ftroke yeuith *with* hir wand ;

Death is swifter than an arrow. When I think on it, my heart sigheth. Every man should fear its cruel hand.

FIrmely and ftedfaftly redoubted fhold be.
Ho well on hyr thenke, all difport will leue,
Thenking, muſing hys foules fauete,
As will man as woman, to fay in breue ;
Ho wel on it thenke, fro ill will remeue.
In fuch wife gan do, I trow it, all-way
Thys fore-faid lorde of roiall partenay.

Whoever thinks on death, must leave all pastime, and muse on his soul's safety. Whoever thinks on it well, will depart from sin.

[1] "fwyfter." (?)

[Fol. 117.] One William was then Archbishop, and he well knew how good a man this lord of Parthenay was.

ON William was the archebiſſhope tho,
Where of the name tho of Biſſhope was wurthy;
At end knew full well wat thys lorde had do.
He ſeing this lord good man was and holy,
And well gouerned the lande here worly
Till to finall ende he gan forth ſtrike;
Which end was full good and ryght autentike.

He died on the Tuesday before Pentecost, May 17, A.D. 1407, and was buried at Parthenay. [This date is wrong; it should be 1401.]

THe tewiſday paſſed Aforne penticoſt,
The yere A thouſand four hundred & feuyn wend;
Thys full goodly knyght yild tho vp his goſte,
No lenger ne might hym fro deth deffend;
To god behouid his foule yilde and rend
On the xvii day of the moneth of may,
And in erth lith at noble partenay.

He lies in the church of the Holy Cross. He was very solemnly and honourably interred, be ye sure.

IN church of ſaint croſſe lith this courteis knight;
Ryght full wurthyly made hys ſepulture,
And full nobly doñ As it ought of ryght;
Sollemply was entered, be ye ſure,
And honourabilly all thing fourged pure
As it belonged lord and gouernour,
Both on lif And dede ſhold haue gret honour.

The day of his death was the very day on which the head of the blessed Saint Louis, king of France, was translated to Paris.

THe heuy day of his mortall paſſing
Was the ſame day, (to be ſaid properly),
That the ſacred hed of the gloryous king,
halowed ſeint lowes, prince of fraunce moſt hy,
That terreſtriall leued bleſſidly,
(Which of men is ſaid ſeint in parradis),
Ther at that day tranſlat to Paris.

[Fol. 117 b.] I do not mean that my lord died in

But I ſay it noght As it to recorde
That in that proper day was noght don

When to mortall deth went my noble lord ;
For made and done was the tranſlacion
In the yere of the incarnacion
Off hed and of the glorious body ;
And he long ſith dede, dais full many ;

that same *year*: for the translation of St Louis' head took place long before that.

But that day this feſt firſt honoured was,
Euery yere after, þe moneth of may ;
Sith on of tho dais deth gan he purchas,
As ſeruant ſhold few, ſo ſewed his lord ay,
Such lord gift myght deſerue hym to ſerue alway,
An-hy in heuyns to his lord aſcend.
This of my good lord here now make an end.

But I mean that he died on the anniversary of that event, following his master as a servant should. Thus I make an end here of my good lord.

Off his noble ſone, Iohan of pertenay,
Off whome declare ſhall, his deuer gan do.
By hym the obſequy well don that day,
Enriched *with* light pertayning ther-to ;
All-be-it had heuineſſe alſo,
Wiſdōm behouith to lete go and paſſe
Which that men mow noght amend *in* no cas.

His noble son, John of Parthenay, performed the funeral obsequies well, using many wax-lights.

I Hold it no gret wiſdome ne fageſſe
To ouermoche ſuffre ſorew and paine ;
Who *with* dolour and wo the hert ouer-preſſe,
Naturall ſole is ſuch heuineſſe ſuſtain,
When that he may noght it reſtore Againe ;
Neuer wepe ne cry, neither ſuch dole hold,
Forſoth doth noght well ne As the ſage ſhold.

But it is not wise to sorrow overmuch, when the matter cannot be mended. Those who do so are not wise.

As to our purpos here will I repair,
Touching our nouel new enheritour,
Off noble pertenay Iohañ the lorde hair,
Off whom ſpokyng haue here *in* langage our.
A worthy man was and of gret honour,

[Fol. 118.]
I return to his heir, John, lord of Parthenay and seigneur of Matefelon, who is no cruel man,

The fouerain lord of Mathefelon,
Which that is not cruellous ne felon̄,

but very courteous. He is sweeter than any maid; this he inherits from his mother.

But curtois, debonair, and vertuous;
Hyt appered well by hys workes eche braide.
For he was gentile, fuete, and gracious,
Non ille wold he do, but fain wold all aid;
He is more fuetter then is any maide.
Off that he drawith after that laydy
Ffro whom he is difcended uerily.

For she was very sweet and charitable, and did much good to the poor;

A more fuetter, humble, and amyable,
Gentile, debonair, fage, wife, and connyng,
Curtois, piteuous, and charitable,
Sche vnto the pore ful gret good doing;
So gentile, fuete, fre in hert was being;
For fhe was of tho mofte bleffed uerily.
Thai ben piteuous Among peple furely

and especially to those in great need. Many she raised to riches, of her great liberality.

As of tho which had grett neceffite,
Both mifter and ned vnto fom goodneffe.
Full many therof raifed vp hath fhe,
Fro pouerte enhaufed to rycheffe,
The which proceded of full hug nobleffe,
Off ryght gret franchife and hert piteuous
To focour nedy and tho famylous,

[Fol 118 *b.*] Hence my lord had a fair beginning, and, moreover, he is of royal lineage,

What-fomeuer doo, befemith hir goodly.
Mi lord therof hath fair begynnyng;
Alfo belongith it, lo! properly
To tho of roiall linage being,
And therof is he, I doubte me no-thing;
For of tho moft bliffid iffued and wend
Noght long Ago, and therof gan difcend.

being cousin to the King of France, the

HE cofyn vnto the hy king of fraunce,
By the which branche honour is hauyng.

Off kyngis is moſt nobleſt and puſaunt,
Off All the wordle moſte ſouerain kyng.
All rounde the compas though man be ſekyng,
In all the wordle ſo noble king is noght
As the kyng of Fraunce, certes, to be thought.

mightiest king in the world. There is no king so noble as the King of France.

His cofyn is, in hys moder parte, truly;
And in faider parte ny kin, to deuyne,
To kyng of Cipreſſe and off hermeny,
And by the diſcent of thys noble line
That beforn haue told of fair Meluſine.
Ny kyn he is to king off norway,[1]
For of Meluſine diſcended all thay.

He is cousin to the king on his mother's side; and, through his father, allied to the King of Cyprus, and also to the King of Norway.

Off tho knyghtes ben yut, lo! in Norway,
Wurthi and doubty, and ladies many;
*With*in this linage compriſed be thay,
And knowyn ouerall ryght openly
That thay diſcended be of *þat* line hy
Off luſignen, which is notable grett,
Which ſo iſſued, into yrlande gett,

For knights of Melusine's line still live in Norway, and it is well known that they belong to the Lusignan family.

And vnto many Another contre,
As beforne is ſaid by our gouernaill.
Neuer line of told *with* thaim egall be,
Neither to hur[2] ſuch an[3] hug meruaill,
Ne hys dais ſhall neuer, *with*out faill,
As ye haue hurde of luſignen children, lo!
Deme ye in no wiſe that leſing ſay you to;

[Fol. 119.]
No family was ever equal to this; nor can any man hear such marvels elsewhere as are told of Melusine's sons.

Trowe it ne ſuppoſe dreme to be any;
Off uerray trouth it is a tru dreme ryght.
And ho ſaue noght fain this ſaid hiſtory,
Vnnethes will beleue this to be parfight.

Think not I dream; or, at least, it is a true dream. Whoso hath not seen

[1] In the margin—*norway kynge.*
[2] Read "hire" = hear; Fr. text, *Ne oyt dire autel nouvelle.*
[3] MS. "and."

this history, will scarcely believe the fact.

For foth thys hiftory plainly fhewith to fyght
like As I haue declared you and faid,
ho-fo luft it rede, may fe itt difplaid.

The seigneur of Matefelon, who is also lord of Parthenay, shows himself to be a sweet creature,

Off Mathefelon the lord fouerain,
To whom our lord gif gret ioy and honour,
Which of that manfion lord is certain,
And of partenay, (refon is eche hour),
Among all other A gentile henheritour ;
In hys rule fhewing A fuete creature,
Which that is of full noble nature,

for he will not leave unfinished the book his good father began. I believe that no man hates him,

SIn he will not leue the boke he began,
Hys god fader, to whom god gif pardon !
By hym of it gret laud and preſiing wan,
For at this day, fo me aid god our patron,
Meñ fhall noght fynd nawher fuchon.
I beleue that non this good perfon hate, lo !
I pray to our lord that he may wel doo,

[Fol. 119 *b*.] and, indeed, any one who sought to harm him would be a great sinner. He never refuses any deserving man.

FOr he hath made A good begynnyng.
And he fhold be in fynne and crime by ryght,
Which that hym wold ille be purchaffyng.
To cherfh euery man laborith þis knyght ;
Iff he fe that he be good man parfith,
No-thyng will hym wern *þat* he luft *pro*clame.
Hym haue I fo hurd renomed of fame,

He should be named Alexander. I would say much more, only men would say I flatter; because he is still living;

That Allexandre full wel name hym may ;
Off hym mouch more fpeke and fay wold I,
By my feith, ner I ffuppofed All-way
That men wold perhaps fay I flatery,
For that in lif is he perfonally,
And thenke men fhold not preiffe other *in*
*pre*fence ;
For tham fhold preife[1] ther werkys diligence

[1] MS. "preife;" Fr. text, *louent*.

That thai haue done in time paſſid euer,
And ſpeking, reherſing the dedes and ſet
Off tho which ben gon that no more may do neuer;
Certes men may well of tham ſpeke and tret,
here tell And declare all ther dedes gret.
And when god will, men may of my lorde,
In time to come, thynges off recorde.

and we ought rather to praise the dead; yet men will praise my lord in time to come.

Yut I hire moche ſpeke off hys roiall eſtate,
Off his nobleſſe, gentilleſſe, and off hys dede,
Off his contenaunce and mayntenaunce algat,
The which I hold of hug noblehed.
And full noble hold is off manlihed;
For diſcended is fro ſo hy A place,
Off kynges, Dukes, Markois full of grace.

I hear many speak of his gentleness, countenance, and demeanour; for he is descended from kings, dukes, and marquises.

When conquered[1] haue and enferched well,
For ſoth is A man of full hy parage.
hys engendrure to declare and tell,
Comyn is he off full noble linage.
Among other hys wif gracious and fage,
humble, curteis, gentile, debonair,
And ne muſith noght but all good and fair.

[Fol. 120.]
He is found, on inquiry, to be of high parentage. His wife also is humble, courteous, and intent on good;

Euery man ſeith, "well (As ſemeth me)
To-geders aſſembled inly well be thai;
Entrelouing non better may be.
In that aſtat our lord tham hold alway."
Thys lady is of perregort, is no nay,
Doughter to the Erle which þat is dede.
That mariage no mahyme to his kinred,

so that they are well met. This lady is of Perigord, daughter to the late earl. His marriage is no disgrace to his kindred;

For noble line is off Aunciente,
Off long time paſſed ferre fro memory.
For in charlemain time anteceſſour had ſhe;
When charlemain had conquered truly

for she too is of a noble line. For when Charlemagne had conquered all Guienne

[1] Rather read, "enquered;" Fr. text, *quis*.

and the country round it,

The hole erldome and contre by werre myghty,
And all Gian, the contre enuiron,
That noble erldome old and aunc*i*on,

he gave it to one of his nigh kinsmen, one of his cousins-german, who resided there till he died.

TO on of hys kynnefmen gaff itt ;
In hys roiall gifte he A fair gift had.
His ny kynnefman was, myght not fro flit ;
Hys cofyn germayn, it beleue I fad.
Full well *þat* Erledome gouerned and lad.
As men me faid, neuer after thens went [1]
To no place here ne there thys Erle reuerent,

[Fol. 120 *b*.] His inheritance went to his heirs male. There is a place called Perigord (Perigueux), whence this lady comes.

As by wifing ne by mariage ;
That Enheritaunce to hoires male went.
A ftrong ftrenght ther had, called piergort uillage,
Wher-hens is comyn this fame day *þe* difcent,
Among peple gracious and fagely hent,
Thys lady full fwete and ryght debonair,
To all other lades exemplair,

She lacks nothing that is lady-like, but is gentle and sage. A very fair marriage was made between them.

Well ftuffed with all maner of goodneffe.
She noght fauteth *þat* haue fhold A lady ;
What belongith to ladies hyneffe
In thys hy lady compriſed expreſly ;
A connyng woman, well taught & wurthy ;
She is fo fwete, gentile, curteis, & fage ;
Atwexft thaim was had An in fair mariage.

I pray they may have good issue; some heir to maintain the noble line of Melusine.

HEre befech our lorde fuch line and iffew
Tham fend, *þat* may *with*out end endure,
Thys lord and lady of full hy vertu :
Off the line of Fraunce is ther engendrure,
Gret heuineffe were iff iffue faill fure ;
Off tham fom hair to maintain *þat* noble line,
Which *þat* iffuede is off fair Meluſine,

[1] MS. "wend."

Off thys goodly hous Als of partenay ;[1]
Off whom no more[2] lenger will I ſpeke,
Ne off Meluſine whens ſhe cam all-way,
Ne more of hyr line he will noght out breke,
Ther-off my ſpeche doñ and my wurdes eke,
Off that I haue ther-off founden in ſcripture.
And of hyr lenger wold I haue ſpoke fure,

I speak no more of her nor of Parthenay, for I find no more recorded. I would have said more,

Iff more of writyng therof founde myght be.
But more can not find in litterall ſcripture
Off thes creatures wrete of uerite,
Off whom haue ſpoke and told the Auenture ;
No more then haue put in my tale fure.
And ſin more ther-of I can noght propoſe,
Of-fors moſte I here take reſt and repoſe.

[Fol. 121.] could I have found more. There is no more than I have already told, so that I must now perforce take rest.

NOw me behouith my ſhippe vnto reſt,
Sailles, cordes, And bonet put doñ.
God be thanked, at port riued in þe beſte,
The fees dangere haue paſſed and gone,
The wawes of ſee ouer ron echon
By my iournaes ſo thorught-out the ſee ;
Therof preiſe and thanke the hy Trinite,

Now must my ship rest. Thank God, I have arrived at port, and the dangers of the sea are past.

By whom thys dite fourged haue and made.
Thanking therof be to our lorde again,
By whom Romans and boke is to end lad.
And yf Any man demaunde hou certain,
What me ſhall call thys Romans fouerain,
hit name the Romans As of partenay,
And ſo ſom it call certes at this day ;

I thank God, by whom the book has been brought to an end. If any one wants to know the *name* of this romance, it is "THE ROMANS OF PARTENAY," or,

OR the romans of luſignen ; now cheſe,
By you electe be which þat take ye will.
Name ye it ſo As it may you pleſe,
Here Anon Couldrette peſe hym ſhal & ſtill ;

"THE ROMANS OF LUSIGNEN ;" choose which you like. Here shall Couldrette hold

[1] MS. "apartenay." [2] MS. "nomore."

his peace, saying that he will here make his orison,

Os of this mater no more fay you till,
Sauyng for to make here hys orifon
Now here prefently, As is good refon,

[Fol. 121 *b.*] putting it into the form of a litany; and when this litany is done, the book shall end, and Couldrette shall hold his peace.

Puttyng it forth in fourme of letany,
For all the noble line of partenay
Aforne named ; and when fhe truly
Shall be ended that haue comprifed ay,
After thys prayer to take end al-way,
Then all the hole werke is fourged & made,
And couldrette then in pes fhal be had.[1]

O Glorious Trinity, Three Persons in One, One Essence, Sovereign Majesty, that hast made summer, winter, and all things,

Glorious, celeftious Trinite,
Sacred deid incomperable,
Threfold perfones knitte *in* vnite,
And on effence[2] etern, permanable,
Souerain mageſte moſte honourable,
Which fomer, wynter made by hys excellence,
All thatt is and hath be by hys huge prudence,

Thou knowest all our thoughts, and the consciences of men. Man oweth Thee due obedience, and diligence in Thy service.

Thou knowift all that hertes thenke or mufe,
All thynges thou feeft in thy prefence,
Off herttes knowift that thai daly vfe,
Off verray trouth knowift ther confcience.
Man owith to the dew obedience,
Owith deligent be the to commende,
To thy feruice take As thaim to diffende.

Here humbly I pray thee to have mercy and pity on this lord and lady; and to succour them in adversity.

By good frendlyhed of thy deite,
here in humbly wife pray thy excellence
Off tham to haue mercy, grace, and pite,
*With*out tham fhewing any uiolence.
here i*n* my dite haue put to thy prefence.
In aduerfite focur thaim alway,
That full noble feed of faide pertenay.

[1] The Cambridge copy of the French Romance ends here.

[2] MS. "enffence;" but see l. 6485.

GLorius virgin, Mayden, moder off god,
Doughter and Ancelle, which milkeft *with*-all
The fone of god *with* thy breftes brod,
Wurthily hym bare *with*-out werke carnall ;
Which theophillus conforted principall ;
Comfort this line þat noble is all-way,
Befides Rochell As of Partenay.

[Fol. 122] Glorious Virgin, mother, daughter, and hand-maiden of God, that didst nourish Thy divine Son, and didst also comfort Theophilus; comfort this line of Parthenay.

SAynt Mychaell, Angell, and the Archangell,
To thaim be not ftrange, I you here require.
Cafte thaim oute fro all fendes of hell,
And tham condute to the heuinly empire.
Off god conueying maifter be entire,
lyn, wolle to uefture haue thay *with*out faill.
The befech not ftrange be thaim to confaill.

Saint Michael, archangel, protect them from the fiends of hell; and let them have linen and woollen vesture.

SAynt Iohan, *with* finger fhewdest I beleue
The deuyne lambe which was full precyous.
All glorius patriarkes in breue,
Tham ne me for-yete noght, ye glorious.
Iff I thaim for-gatte I were malerous.
Now if it you pleafe, me *with* thaim making
To Accorde vnto the mofte fouerain kyng.

Saint John the Baptist, that didst show men the Lamb, and all ye glorious patriarchs, forget them not.

SAynt Peter, faynt Paule, and faynt Andrew,
All poftelles of god, for your curtefy,
In obliuy be noght this iffew
Fro-whens fuch nobleffe cometh vnto ey,
Sparcled into landes and places many ;
That conquered haue many a noble place
By ther nobleffe and chiualrous purchace.

St Peter, St Paul, St Andrew, and all apostles, let not this noble line be forgotten that hath spread so far.

SAint Steuin, feint Vincent, feint Laucrence,
And ye, Saynt Clement, *with*-all feint Denife,
Which all frendes bene to goddes hy effence,
your bodies haue offered by grett auiffe

[Fol. 122 *b*.] St Stephen, St Vincent, St Lawrence, St Clement,

St Dionysius, and all ye holy martyrs.

To greuos torment *with* huge tirandiſſe,
And all martiriſed, like or femblable,
Which in heuyns regne in ioy perdurable,

grant that we may dwell for ever in heaven, where reign the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.

IN the hy paradiſe celeſtiall,
For your fair dedes and wurdes alſo.
Make that we be comprifed eternall
Finabilly *with*out any ende me to,[1]
Where regneth the fader and the ſone, lo!
And the holy gost in heuyns full hy,
And ſhall for euer perdurabilly.

St Silvester, St Augustine, St Martin, St Maurice, St Severinus, and all confessors, let not this line be forgotten,

SAynt Silueſtre, feint Auguſtin, your grace;
Saynt Martin, feynt More, faynt Seuerine,
Saynt Cuthbert, feynt Germain, feint Nicholas,
And all confeſſours by rew to deuine,
Befech, in obliuy putt not thys line,
Off whome treted haue in my tale and lay;
But out of bandes, good feintes, alway

but guard them from the fiends that come at the third hour or at mid-day: grant us the solace of the celestial sphere.

WHaim warde, put, and caſt fro the fendes fell,
Which that comyth at thirde hour or midday,
(And more oftener then can ſay or tell),
Fro hyneſſe to lowneſſe us to put alway.
Make vs to haue *þat* ſolas euer and ay
Off the celeſtiall heuynly ſpere,
After wrecchyd lif worly beyng here.

[Fol. 123.] St Mary Magdalen, I pray to thee. St Agnes, St Edith, St Catharine, be pleased to beseech our Lord to save us.

SEynt Mary Magdeline, humble and demure,
I you here require *with* hautain uois fine,
With penſiff muſes of hert clene And pure;
Seint Agnes, feint Edith, feint katerine,
That it you pleaſe to take the paine & pine
To beſeke our lord, vs conuey and bring
Aboue unto the ioy euerlaſting.

[1] MS. "to me to."

All goddes frendes bleſſed and Holy,
Humbly you befeke *with* ioynt handes twain,
That ye do fo our ſinnes vndo fully,
And that acqueint [vs] with our fouerain,
So *þat* of hell we haue no point of pain;
But to herbourgh vs *with* his bliſſed ſaintes
In heuen where And is no complaintes.

All ye friends of God, put away our sins that we feel not hell-pain, but dwell with the saints in heaven.

Lord fwet Ihe*su*, be to vs debonair;
Do noght again thaim of whom I haue told
Thing *þat* thaim may torn̄ thaim in contrair;
Warde thaim fro bande of our aduerſary bold,
Which many ma*n* hath brought vnto his hold.
For thi puſaunce and debonair renoñ,
Do make vs come to our fauac*i*on.

Lord Jesu, grant that nothing may turn to their harm. Guard them from our adversary, and save us all.

Swete lorde god, fwete fader cheritable,
Warde vs fro bandes of the cruell fend;
As fhort wurdes, vs hold in our purpoſe ſtable,
That neuer we torn̄e bake, ne the offende.
Amiable and piteable be to us at end,
That we may haue the perdurabilneſſe
Off ioy aboue, And uerray reſt vs dreſſe.

Sweet Lord God, our Father, guard us from the fiend; grant that we offend Thee not, but may gain everlasting bliss.

Swet lorde Ihe*su*, *þat* all thyng haſt to iuge,
I the here befech *with* hole hert entire,
Make us the ryght path go to our refuge,
And the way of fauacion to acquire,
To wepe and complain our fynne cruell yre;
So we may the preiſe after our laſt day
Perdurabilly in felicite ay.

[Fol. 123 *b*.] Jesu, that shalt judge all, teach us the way of salvation, that we may praise Thee hereafter for ever.

I yilde now thankes, after this letany,
To the facred glorious Trinite,

The trauſlac*i*on.[1]

[1] These two words, here written in the margin of the MS., mark the beginning of the translator's *own* epilogue.

I yield thanks, after this prayer, to God, the Virgin, saints, martyrs, and confessors, that I have now translated this.

To criftes moder, the Virgin mary,
Seint Mihell, feint Iohañ, apoftellis that be,
Martires, confeffours, ech in ther deg[r]e,
Virgins, feintes al, that this haue tranflat
Fro[1] frenfh till englifh at this prefent dat.

I have done it in order, as closely as I could, almost line by line, saving that I have often had to change the order of words, as when men write Latin verse.

As ny as metre can conclude fentence,
Cereatly by rew in it haue I go.
Nerehande ftafe by ftaf, by gret diligence,
Sauyng þat I moft metre apply to;
The wourdes meue, and fett here & ther fo,
like As of latin ho-fo will fourge uers;
Wourdes[2] moft he change fondry & diuerfe.

Whoever translates in metre, must do this, whether in ballad, verse, rime, or metrical prose.

Whilom þat be-fore put, And fette behynd,
And oft that at end gretth[3] beft before;
So oft trauerfing the langage me fhall fynd,
Be it latyn, frenfh, or our tonge to-bore.
ho it metre will, fo do mofte euermore,
Be it in balede, uers, Rime, or profe,
He moft torn and wend, metrely to clofe.

[Fol. 124.] Yet have I preserved, I trust, the matter unhurt, without excess or diminution, making it intelligible in our mother tongue.

And fo haue I done after my fimpleffe,
Preferuing, I truft, mater and fentence
Vnwemmed,[4] vnhurt, for any exceffe,
Or by menufing don by violence.
Warded and kepte haue to intelligens,
That will vnderftande And knowin may[5] be
In our moder tonge, fpoken in contre.

Perchance I may have made an oversight, but

PErhaps by lacheffe, or by necligence,
Our-fight myght caufe obliuion,
Or parauenture do caufe and offence.
Gretly is it noght, hurtyng no refon,

[1] MS. "For." [2] MS. "Worudes." [3] "greeth" (?)
[4] MS. "Vnwmned." [5] MS. "many."

By no menes of imperfecc*i*on.
I truft to conferue mater and fubftance
Greable vnto the reders plefaunce.

it is no great one, not such as to violate the sense.

Als the frenfh ftaffes filabled be
More breueloker and fhorter alfo
Then is the englifh lines vnto fee,
That comperhended [1] in on may lines to ;
And in fuch wife fondry times haue do ;
Or ellys man myght by computacion
In ther contrepane finde others refon,

Also the French lines have fewer [eight] syllables than the English, so that two lines may be put into one; and I have sometimes done so.

In frenfh or engliſh, whether A m*a*n fhold
The mater to preue by iufte probacion.
And fo As it is truly fynde, I wold
Both bokes difplaide to vifion,
Verefie I wold the declaracion̄,
That on by other knowen well fhold be,
Refembling well All o ffoule dite.

I would that both books could be seen at once, that if any man wants to count the lines, he might see how closely they are alike.

All fourged and don̄, thys here make an end,
Befechyng your hy notable gentilleſſe,
That to my fauor ye now condifcend
Off your hy wurthy foueraynneſſe,
In whom contained hugely is nobleſſe,
Though that diffautes apperen in ufe,
yut of your mercy my fimpleſſe excufe,

[Fol. 124 *b*.] Here I make an end; and beseech you, in whom is all nobleness, to excuse all faults,

Sin at your requeft and commaundement
This warke on me toke, it to fourge and make ;
And fo haue I don̄, after myne entent,
W*ith* litterall carectes for your fake ;
Tham conueying in fable lines blake

since it was at your request I made the translation, and wrote it out from end to end in black lines.

[1] *sic* in MS.

Directly along thys haue I to end,
After my ſimpleſſe ſo forth paſſe and wende.

Now all ye that read this, remember my simpleness; though this book is not painted (for I cannot flourish), yet excuse all faults that you may see.

NOw ye all that ſhall thys behold or rede,
Remembreth myn unconnyng ſimpleſſe;
Thought rethorioufly peinted be not in-dede,
As other han doñ by ther diſcretneſſe.
Sin floriſh can noght, yut, of your gentilleſſe,
Though that diſſautes appere huge to ey,
yut excuſith me, beſech you hertly.

Explicit.

NOTES TO THE PROLOGUE.

Page 1, l. 1. The lines numbered 1—77 are, apparently, the original composition of the English translator. The passage is incomplete at the commencement. (See Preface.)

4. *Iff aught here might fourge*, If *I* might here accomplish. The omission of the personal pronouns occurs continually throughout the poem, and the reader's attention is here drawn to the fact, once for all, that he may readily perceive the construction of other passages. Thus, in l. 11, *myght* is written for *I myght;* and so again in l. 21, where *aunter wyl me* = I will adventure myself.

5. *fauting connynghede*, lacking skill.

8. Here we find the omission, not of the pronoun, but of the auxiliary verb; *I not aqueynted of birth naturall* = I *am* not acquainted, by natural birth.

9. MS. "frefhe," an obvious error.

16. *president*, precedent; i. e. the original French Romance.

20. The only attempt at ornament in the MS. is that the initial letter of each stanza is rather larger than others, and painted red.

21. *aunter*, shortened from *aventure*, adventure. The still more contracted form *anterus* (for *adventurous*) occurs in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 2618.

P. 2, l. 25. *eche houred brayd*, each particular time. See the Glossary, under *Houred* and *Brayd*.

31. In consulting the very brief "proëm" to the "notable book" of Valerius Maximus, the reader will not find what our author here says he will; but some such passage may have been added in some copy by a commentator. The only passage in that author which at all agrees with the text is the following, addressed to Tiberius, which is certainly "notable":—"Te igitur huic cœpto, penes quem hominum deorumque consensus

maris ac terræ regimen esse uoluit, certissima salus patriæ, Cæsar, inuoco, cuius cælesti prouidentia uirtutes, de quibus dicturus sum, benignissime fouentur, uitia seuerissime uindicantur. Nam si prisci oratores ab Ioue optimo maximo bene orsi sunt, si excellentissimi uates a numine aliquo principia traxerunt, mea paruitas eo iustius ad fauorem tuum decucurrerit, quo cetera diuinitas opinione colligitur, tua præsenti fide paterno auitoque sideri par uidetur, quorum eximio fulgore multum cærimoniis nostris inclitæ alacritatis accessit. Reliquos enim deos accepimus, Cæsares dedimus. Et quoniam initium a cultu deorum petere in animo est, de condicione eius summatim disseram."—*Valerius Maximus;* ed. Kempfius, p. 1.

The concluding words are just such as would tempt a commentator to add to his author.

36—42. What this stanza belongs to is not clear. It certainly seems out of place.

45. *fantesied*, fancied, imagined.

46. *maligne gostes*, evil spirits.

50. *valoure*, efficacy.

P. 3, l. 52. *miscreantes*, unbelievers.

78. Here our author ceases to be original, and becomes a translator, ll. 78—210 being a close rendering of the Prologue to the French Romance. In order to give the reader a clear idea of the manner in which the translation is executed, the whole of the French "proëm" is given below. (See p. 229.) The philosopher alluded to in l. 78 is Aristotle, the first sentence of his "Metaphysics" being—Πάντες ἄνθρωποι τοῦ εἰδέναι ὀρέγονται φύσει. All men by nature are actuated by the desire of knowledge.

P. 4, l. 84. The sentence, as here, is often left incomplete at the end of a stanza.

96. *loos*, praise. The French has *los*.

97. *perceuale;* see Tyrwhitt, Note to v. 13844 of the Cant. Tales.

98. *lo!* The reader will soon be accustomed to the continual introduction of this and other expletive words and phrases.

P. 5, l. 118. *scripture*, writing.

121. *peiters*, Poitiers. So too in "Morte Arthur;" ed. G. G. Perry; l. 40.

126. *wern*, refuse to do; Fr. *escondiroie* (=shun).

135. *lesigne;* the final *n* seems to be accidentally omitted. It is generally spelt *lesignen* or *lusignen* in other places.

139. "I" seems required before "faid," to complete the line.

141. *iornay*, toil; lit. a *day's* work.

142. *faire* in the MS. should be *fairie;* see l. 148.

P. 6, l. 157. *lose wil non hent*, I desire to receive no praise. See l. 96.

162. "Since it (i. e. a rimed French copy) hath already been constructed and composed."

164. *to fade*, to set in order, dispose, arrange.

174. *preuyd at deuiſe*, executed or fashioned with exactness. The Fr. has *approimtez*, from the Lat. *approximatus*.

178. *salz and Barry*, a periphrasis for Salisbury. See pref.

P. 7, l. 181. "He always spake, in all his words, to the same effect as the above-said books relate. (And *I* say) that book is compiled from three others (so say men who speak about it); and, indeed, as to its origin I know of no doubt, as I have formerly myself seen the substance of it." Such seems to be the general meaning of this vague and ill-constructed sentence, the like of which are only too abundant throughout the poem. Compare the original French (given at p. 233) which seems more intelligible.

194. "Here shall ye hear this history's labour;" *historie* is in the genitive case, the case being merely marked by its position; so also, in l. 192, we have *castell strength* = castle's strength; *ye here* corresponds with the French *vous orez*.

200. "Clear well or true pillar;" Fr. *la clere fontaine ou puise*. *Well* answers to *fontaine*, but *puise* should have been translated *well* or *spring*. The translator was thinking of *apui* or *pui*, a support.

201. We should probably read *The maker, of whom all liff doth enfew;* but, even then, the translation is incorrect.

204. *Require*, pray.

The French proëm alluded to at p. 228 is here subjoined.

LE phyloſophe fut moult ſaige, [Fol. 1.]
Qui dit en la premiere page
De ſa noble methaſifique,
Que humain entendement ſaplicque
Naturelement a concepuoir,
Et a apprendre, et a ſcauoir.
Ceſt treſbien dit et ſaigement;
Car tout humain entendement
Deſire venir a ce point
De ſauoir ce quil ne ſcayt point,
Ou ſoit dhonneur ou de Reprouche,
Et meſmement quant Il luy touche.
Les choſes des longtemps paſſees
Plaiſent quant Ilz ſont Recordees,
Mais quilz ſoyent bonnes et belles,
Trop plus *que* ne ſont les nouuelles.
On parle moult du Roy artus, [Fol. 1 *b*.]
Qui veult eſprouuer les vertus
Des cheualiers nobles et gens;
Encores en parlent moult de gens.

Et fi fait len de Lancelots
Ou quel Il y ot tant de los ;
De partenay,[1] et de gauuain,
Qui neurent oncques le cuer vain
Pour acquerir honneur et pris ;
Ilz firent comme bien aprins.
Qui vouldroit fauoir et enquerre,
Et par la mer et par la terre,
les merueilleufes auentures
Qui aduiennent aux creatures,
Sauoir eft excellente chofe.
Car tout ainfi comme la Rofe
Sur toutes fleurs eft la plus fine,
Auffi eft france[2] la plus digne ;
Qui Riens ne fcet (.) Il ne vault Rien.
Si affiert a tous hommes de bien
Denquerre moult fort des hyftoires,
Qui font de longtaines memoires ;
Et tant eft plus de hault degre,
Doit Il, [de] degre en degre,
Sauoir dont Il eft deffendus.
Soit Roy (.) Baron, Conte, ou Ducs,
Sy que memoire longue en foit. [Fol. 2.]
Tout grant feigneur faire le doit.
Et en faire efcripre hyftoire,
Affin quen telle foit memoire.
Pour tant len dit *que* vng grant feigneur
De poitou, (a cui dieu croiffe honneur !)
Nomme fire de partenay,
Auquel tout droit Iay affenay,
Me commanda, na pas granment,
Et de fon propre affentement.[3]
Commandement auoit Il bien ;
Si ne lescondiroie de Rien ;
Car chafcun fcet et peut veoir,
Quon doit a grant feigneur obeyr ;
Qui ne le fait, Il neft pas faige.
Sy me dit en fon doulx langaige,
Que Ie preuiffe lexemplaire
Du fien liuret quauoit fait faire ;
Et, de fait, Il le me bailla,
pour en fauoir moult qui en tailla
Lufignen le chafteau nobile ;
Auffi qui fift faire la ville ;

[1] parceual (?)
[2] *Sic* in MS. Mis-written for "fcience."
[3] MS. affententement.

Car ceſt vng treſmerueilleux ſort.
Lors Reſpondy, "Ie my accord,
Monſeigneur, a *voſt*re plaiſir."
"faictes," dit Il, "tout a loſir,
Car toute eſt voſtre La Iournee. [Fol. 2 b.]
Le chaſteau eſt fait dune faee,
Sycomme eſt par tout Retrait,
De laquelle Ie ſuis extraict,
Et moy, et toute ma lignie
De partenay ; nen doubtez mye.
Mellusine fut appellee
La faee, que vous ay nommee ;
Dequoy les armes nous portons,
Parquoy ſouuent nous deportons ;
Et affin quil en ſoit memoire,
Vous mectray [1] en Ryme hyſtoire ;
[A line is here lost.]
Car Ie vueil quelle ſoit plus
Renom*m*ee."
"Las dit, mon*ſeigneur* ; Ie loctroye ;
Touſiours *voſt*re plaiſir feroye,
Se faiſoit a ma voulente ;
Ne Ia nul Iour Ie ny fauldray.
Ie le feray a mon pouoir,
Mais pas nen vueil le loz auoir,
Se loz y a ; car autreffoiz
Elle a eſte miſe en franchois,
Et Rymee, ſicomme on compte ;
Pourquoy ce me feroit grant honte
De moy vanter de ceſtui fait.
Mais a mon pouoir Ie feray
Tant, ſe dieu plaiſt, que le mectray [Fol. 3.]
Dautre forme, ſe Iay loſir,
Qui mieulx vous vendra au plaiſir,
Quant lautre pas bien ne vous haitie ;
Et que vous plaiſt que Ie le mecte
Selon les liures quon trouua,
Dont liſtoire on approuua,
Et affin que on labregon.
Dedens la tour de manbregeon
Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez,
En latin, et tous approimtez,
Quon fiſt tranſlater en francois
Et puis, apres cinq ou ſix mois,
Comme celle hyſtoire Amery,

[1] mectrez (?)

Le Conte de falebry,
Dun liure quauoit du chaſtel
Qui tant par eſt et fort et bel ;
Car Il parloit en tous ſes dis,
De tous les fais q*ue* Ie vous dis.
'De trouez fut voſtre liure extraict,'
Ainsi le dit Il et Retraict,
'Et ſe querez com*m*e le ſceu,
Ceſt par ce quautreffoiz lay veu.'
Sy mectray toute ma puiſſance
De le mectre en bonne ordonnance,
Au plaiſir du doulx Ih*es*ucriſt." [Fol. 3 *b*.]
Monſeigneur reſpont,[1] "ceſt bien diſt."
Lors prins congie de monſeigneur,
A qui dieu doint Ioye et honneur !
Et men vins tout droit au chaſteau
De luſignen, qui tant eſt beau,
Dont vous orez briefment lyſtoire,
Mais quil plaiſe au Roy de gloire
De men donner le ſentement,
Sans lequel on ne fait nyent,
Soit en francois ou en ebreu ;
Tout ſcience vient de dieu ;
Ceſt la clere fontaine ou puiſe,
Tout faiſeur le fait quil aduiſe.
Se[2] luy vient tout le bien quon pence,
Nul na de dieu ſi non ſcience.
Se[2] luy Requiers de ceur entier
Qua cest beſoing me vueille aidier.
Et la *tre*ſglorieuſe mere
Vueille conduire ceſte matiere,
Affin que Ie puiſſe acheuer
Ceſte euure que Ie vueil Reueler,
Au bon plaiſir de monſeigneur,
A cui dieu doint ennuyt bon Iour,
Et en ſa fin la Ioye fine !
Ainſi *nostr*e prologue fine.

[1] MS. "Reſont," with "reſpont" written above it.
[2] De (?)

NOTES TO THE POEM.

P. 8, l. 4. Here, as in l. 523, we find in the MS. "hie and has." But other passages show that it should be "hie and bas," i. e. high and low.

6. *astronomie* here answers to what we now call *astrology*, which is also its meaning in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 432.

7. *clerigie*, science. Fr. *clergie*.

8. *right Canoun*, canon law; as explained by the Fr. *droit canon*.

10. *I-now*, enough.

14. *cowde*, knew.

P. 9, l. 31. *machon*. The Fr. has *machonnee*.

34. *columbere*. The Fr. has *coulombiers*, a proper name.

36. According to De la Mure, this "earl of Forest" was Guy, first of that name, Count of Lyon and Forez, who, by marriage with Sibille de Beaujeu, had several children (see l. 37), among whom were three sons; viz. his successor, Guy II., Guillaume, who became a monk, and Raymondin. Raymondin is the hero of the present romance, and was named after Raymond de Viennois, his grandfather. De la Mure, p. 489. For a long discussion of the names "Forez" and "Beaujeu," see p. 8 of the same work. The arms of the earls of Forest were gules, a dolphin, or; a drawing of them is given at p. 152 of De la Mure.

45. "Who heard this news at that *time*;" lit. *interval*.

49. That "traying" is an error for "tarying" is proved by the French, which has "atargier," one of the forms of "atarder."

51. *sayn*, seen.

52. *he send*, he sent to.

P. 10, l. 77. "For such learning I shall instruct him in and teach."

80. *on your plesire*, at your pleasure.

P. 11, l. 98. *thaught*, taught; Fr. *enseigne*. Probably miswritten. See l. 76.

114. "Raymond after this, against his (own) will, did slay him; cast stone-dead to earth, he must incline to death." The French has,

> "Car Raymondin si le tua,
> Et mort a terre le Rua."

P. 12, l. 137. *sewing*, following.

140. "Where there came to him then great mischief and terror."

144. *thaim to*, them two.

P. 13, l. 152. The speaker is the earl. The French has, "Lors dit a Raymon, venez ca." See l. 158.

163. *an hie*, on high.

P. 14, l. 178. *thought*, though. So in l. 6611.

189. *an hie*, on high; Fr. *en hault*. See l. 163.

192. *profite*. The Fr. has *peril;* but the English gives the better sense.

197. *sothlese*, truly. It might seem that the earl is expressing a wish that the "strange adventures" were "untrue;" but other passages go to prove that the writer actually commits the mistake of making *sothlese* mean *truly*.

203. *for ille doing*, i. e. in return for ill-doing.

P. 15, l. 207. "I shall declare to thee."

217. *and shall*, and shall come to pass.

219. *a foote*, on foot.

220. MS. "a." Perhaps "at" should have been written; for the spelling *a* may be due to the French, in which *a* here occurs. See l. 223.

228. *in that other party*, on the other side; or, for his part. Fr. *dautre part*.

P. 16, l. 244. "And when that came to pass, the sword went adown;" i. e. glanced aside. See l. 249.

247. One of the "*hym*"s is redundant; viz. the *first*.

251. The translator has here made several mistakes, and considerably injured the story. He makes the earl die by the boar's tusks, and so all Raymond's subsequent self-reproaches are out of place. The French version is that Raymond's sword glances off the boar's back and cuts Aymery's body open, so that ll. 255—258 refer to Aymery, not to the boar. After this he "withdraws his sword," and again striking at the boar, succeeds in killing it at once. The German version is much better. According to this, Aymery aims at the boar with his spear as it is rushing at him, and slightly wounds it, but is himself thrown down. Raymond, coming to the rescue, seizes the earl's spear, and thrusts at the boar; but the spear, glancing aside, pierces the earl's body. Raymond immediately withdraws the spear, and with a second thrust kills the boar; and then, turning to the earl, finds him already dead. See Tieck, Schriften; 13 ter band, s. 75; and the "Volksbuch" version.

Perhaps, however, the English *prose* romance tells the story best of all, viz. as follows.

"[I]N this part Recounteth thystory that whan Raymondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he should not

hurte his lord, the bore anoone hurted[1] to hym and ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche seeyng the wyld bore comme, lefte his swerd and toke a short spere and strayght held it dounward before hym. And the Erle that knew & wyst moche of the chasse broched the bore thrughe the brest, but the Erle felle doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn holdyng hys swerde in his hand came toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure legges, For he leye vpsodoun, the bely vpward; and suche a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore that the blade of hys swerde brake so that the poynte of it sprang ayenst the Erlis stomak & wounded hym sore in so muche that he deyed therof."—*fol.* 12 *b.*

266. As any on this side of Rome. The Fr. text has *de cy a Rome*, a proverbial phrase for *everywhere*. Compare "hethen into grece;" Allit. Poems; ed. Morris; l. 231 of "The Pearl."

P. 17, l. 274. The Fr. text has, *Tu nas compere ne commere*, which is not very clear.

279. Apparently this means, "In thee (is) no will (to) strain to help greatest or least." The French simply says,

En toy na Ryme ne Raiſon.

291. *rewardyd*, regarded.

P. 18, l. 304. The sense is, "But cursed be the hour when I was born, or (the fact) that I, living, so long keep (my) wretched life." *Worly* stands for *wordly* = worldly; i. e. born into the world.

323. Fr. *La fontaine de foif Iolye.*

324. The MS. reading *canne* is an obvious blunder for *came;* Fr. text,

Quon dit qui vient de faerie.

P. 19, l. 343. *goodlokest;* lit. goodliest; see Glossary.

345. *gayn night*, towards night; Fr. "au foir." *Where* = whether.

354. *say*, essay.

358. *fantesie;* the Fr. has "fantoſme."

359. *where*, whether; as above; so again in l. 384.

P. 20, l. 386. *hys;* read *thys*, i. e. thus, as in l. 297.

P. 21, l. 393. *astate*, estate. Fr. eſtat.

403. *that instance*, then; an expletive expression, metri gratiâ.

405. *Ameruelled;* Fr. eſmerueillies.

407. The MS. has simply *You named but.* The translator's copy may have been at fault here, and hence even this half line may have been written by guess-work. The French is clear, the passage running thus,

[1] Sic in MS. We should have expected to find *hasted;* but see *heurter*, to dash, in Cotgrave.

Et, par ma foy, Ie ne congnois mye
*Vostr*e nom, ne *vostr*e philosomye,
Ou Iaparcoy ſi grant beaulte.

The word "philosomye," in which the *l* is written over a long "f" lying beneath it, is obviously intended for *phisonomye*, i. e. physiognomy, spelt *visnomie* by Spenser, and *fisnomie* in the Promptorium Parvulorum. I have no doubt that l. 407 should end with this word, but it is difficult to connect it with *You named but.*

411. *recouer;* Fr. recouurer.

P. 22, l. 425. *reioyng*, rejoying, i. e. rejoicing. There are other instances of similar strange spelling in the poem, and it must not be altered to *reioiyng.*

427. How *she* might know his name.

442. *tarie* is an error, the Fr. not having *tarie*, but *taire.* So too, in the next line, *me* is an error for *ne;* the sense being, "I may no-wise keep silence, so as not to ask you the truth."

Mais Ie ne me pourroye taire,
Que ne vous demandaſſe voir.

449. *you councel*, I counsel you.

P. 23, l. 452. *of wordly* (= worldly) *goods;* Fr. des biens.

453. *light*, lieth.

459. And do not fear that I am not on God's part, (and that) I believe not in His miracles.

472. *I* firmly believe.

479. *unto devise*, a mere expletive phrase. It is not in the French, yet is imitated from the Fr. *à devise* = so to speak.

482. *withsaing;* cf. *gaynsayng* in l. 485.

P. 24, l. 487. That the MS. *betaking* is an error for *be taking* is shown by the French,

Que me *prendrez* a mariaige.

488. *leuing*, life. Fr. *vie.*

P. 25, l. 520. *werne*, refuse.

522. *aplas*, in place.

523. The MS. *has* is a blunder for *bas;* cf. l. 540, "hie and lowe;" and l. 2735.

528. *that houred tyde*, that time; a mere expletive, like *that stounde* in l. 532.

P. 26, l. 548. *resceyued*, received. Wherever this word occurs, it is written so as to look like "reſceyned," owing to the practice of the scribe in making "ſc" resemble "ſt," and "u" resemble "n." But the French decides the word in all cases, as it employs the verb *receuoir.*

552. *the Erle last past;* i. e. the late earl; Fr. *derrain trespassez* (sc. *de la vie*) = lately deceased.

557. Make deeds thereof, (and let) the cause be thereon, (that men) may see the reason of the lord's gift.

> Faictes que vous en ayez lectre,
> Et y faictes la cause mectre
> Du don, et par quelle achoison
> On le vous liure, et quel Raison.
> Et mectez le Iour quon vous liure
> Le don, et quon le vous deliure.

There should have been a comma after the word *mak*.

574. And afterward betake you to your return; a periphrasis for, afterwards return again; cf. l. 563. The French has,

> Et puis vous mectez en Repaire.

P. 27, l. 579. MS. "finde" is an obvious error for "finde." Fr. *trouerez*.

584. *do it to remayn;* here *remayn* is an Anglicized form of the Fr. *ramener*, and the phrase means, extend it, drag it along towards the valley, along the stream which issues from the fountain. See l. 725, note.

> Et se le courgeon plus long porte
> Que le Ront que fait trouerez,
> Contre le val le Ramenez.

604. *coursere*, Fr. *Roncin*.

P. 28, l. 611. This apparently means, The soul (of the dead) accused not the author of its death. But it is a curious blunder arising from mistaking the sense of *Ame*.

> Ame du fort ne laccufa,

i. e. No soul accused him of the event, i. e. of the deed.

616. The Fr. text has *bacheler*.

618. *hym*, like *his* in the next line, refers to the late earl.

625. *he*, sc. the late earl; see next line.

In the MS. *myght* is mis-written, being copied from the line above. It should be *nyght;* as the Fr. has *la nuyt*.

P. 29, l. 665. *bas*, downwards.

P. 30, l. 671. *lady lore*, lady's teaching; so again in l. 705.

691. *lete make*, cause to be made; a common expression.

P. 31, l. 694. Fr. *seel*, which justifies the correction.

696. Compare the expression in the Bible, "hath set-to his seal," Gk. *ἐσφράγισεν*. *S. John* iii. 33.

720. The MS. has either *pam*, or *pain* with the *i* undotted; at l.

724 the word is *pane*. In both cases a better reading would be *pale*, for the Fr. has in both places *pel*, which = Lat. *palus*, a pale, a stake. Tieck also has "einen *Pfahl*."

P. 32, l. 725. The English version has missed the sense.

> Puis lont emporte contre val,
> Car Il tenoit trop au pal;
> Tout du long vng Rousseau fourdit,
> Dont chaſcun forment feſbahit.

Then they bare it towards the valley, for it kept too close to the stake. All along beside it a rill welled up, whereat every one was much astounded.

728. *stoned*, astonied.

P. 33, l. 755. The insertion of *I* seems necessary to the metre and sense. Fr. "Car vrayement *Ie* le vouldroie."

759. *Raymond* answered to *the count;* thus the Fr. text, and this explains ll. 761, 762; but in l. 760 the translator has forgotten who is speaking.

762. *if your lord wyll*, if the Lord will; Fr. *se dieu plaist.*

765. *thrust*, (*sic*) thirst.

768. *wel thaught*, well taught. Fr. *senez*, which means sage, prudent.

778. The Fr. is less obscure.

> Il ne fiſt peu
> Quil nait demande au corps gent
> De la dame, dont tant de gent
> Comme il veoit, pouoient venir;
> "Ia ne vous en fault eſbahir,"
> Diſt la dame, "tous ſont a vous."
> A donc leur commanda a tous
> Que comme ſeigneur le Recoiuent,
> Et si font Ilz ainſi quilz doiuent.

784. Here again, as in l. 548, "reſceiue" is written so as to resemble "reſteine."

P. 34, l. 788. *demurly in audience*, in a low tone. Fr. dit tout bas, bien coyement.

791. *resoned*, copied from the Fr.

> A donc la dame la *Raiſonne.*

796. Fr. text,

> Raymon dit, "Ie ſuis preſt ſans faille."
> La dame dit, "Il fault quil aille,
> Raymondin mon frere, autrement;
> Nous le ferons honneſtement.

P. 35, l. 829. *ryght doubted and shereful*, much dreaded and dear; Fr. Ma chiere dame Redoubtee.

P. 36, l. 850. The MS. has here a curious mistake, viz. "fo" instead of "of;" Fr. *de* duc. The word "of" has first been *inverted* so as to become "fo," and then mis-written "fo." Another instance of similar *inversion* occurs at l. 1007, where *beded* is written for *bedde*. So again, l. 946, *for* for *fro;* l. 949, *presone* for *persone*, &c. See Preface. Such errors might easily occur in *printing*, but in a MS. they are very remarkable.

P. 37, l. 879. *ryn*. Fr. *Rain* = Bord d'un bois, extremité (Roquefort).

881. And in their kitchens saw they great smoke too.

896. Fr. text,

Le Conte leur salut Rendit
A chascun, pas ny actendit,
felon qua luy appartenoit
Et du lieu de quoy Il venoit,
Aux grans plus, & aux petis moindre,
Bien sceet a chascun salut Rendre.

Thus l. 898 means, according as appertained to the man saluted, on account of the place whence he came.

P. 38, l. 929. What would ye that I should say? Fr. Que voulez vous que Ie vous compte?

P. 39, l. 943. *messe*, mass.

946. *for;* we should certainly read *fro*. See notes to ll. 266 and 850.

949. *persone*, Fr. *personne;* the MS. error is due to the word *present* following.

955. On the other side of her, a prince of the country, &c. Fr. Et vng prince de la contree.

965. *brouth*, an error for *brought;* Fr. Les mes *portent* les escuiers.

968. The French text somewhat varies here from the translation. It runs thus,

Vings damyon & vings de Rocelle,
Qui font eschauffer[1] la ceruelle;
Vins de tornais, et vins de bea[u]ne
Qui nauoit pas la couleur Iaune,
Clare Rommain et ypocras
Y Courut par hault et par bas;[2]
Vins de sainct Iehan dangely,
On tenoit grant compte de luy;
Vins estables, vins de viart,

[1] read "eschauffer."

[2] The Cambridge copy of the Fr. text has here lost two lines, judging by the English version.

Vindrent apres le vin baftart;
Vins de fainct pourfain, vin de Rys
Eurent de vins claires le prys;[1]
Puis eurent vin de preuilege,
[Fol. 21 *b*.] Ch*a*scun fien euft en fon fiege,
Ch*a*scun a tout ce quil demande,
Tant de vin comme de viande.

Thus, for *Angoy* (Anjou?) the Fr. has *amyon* (Amiens). *Bewme* = Beaune, near Dijon; *Tourimz* = Tours; *digon* = Dijon; *Auverre* = Auxerre; *Seint Iohan of Angely* = S. Jean d'Angely, in Poitou; *estables* may mean a village of that name, lying on the W. side of the Chaine du Vivarais. With regard to the *Clarre Romain*, it may be noticed that Romanée, in Bourgogne, is celebrated for its wine. *Seint pursain* = St Pourçain-sur-Allier, in the department Allier.

We should compare with this the passage from the "Squire of low degree," where a list is given of the amusements prepared for his daughter by the king of Hungary. See Warton; Hist. of Eng. Poetry, vol. 2. p. 10.

P. 40, l. 992, *went to glad*, went to glade? i. e. set? Fr. text,

Les Iouxtes Iusquau Iour durerent,

which must mean, the justing lasted as long as the day did; for they next "went to even-song."

P. 41, l. 1002, *of whom*, i. e. of which; this is worth notice.

1005, *streight*, was laid straight.

1006, *bedde;* the MS. has *beded;* cf. note on l. 850.

1010, *body;* this is certainly a blunder for *bedde*, since the Fr. text has *Le lit;* besides, the custom was to bless the *bed*. See Chaucer; Merchant's Tale.

1024, *outred*, uttered.

1030, But (you) must hold that oath which (the) first day (you) made (to) me.

P. 42, l. 1035, *Be*, read *He;* in the next line *of linage* = of what lineage. We might read, "And of wat linage," with improvement both of sense and metre.

1045, *pannes*, pains. So in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1273,

Now leif we hir In-to hir newest *pan*.

1050. Before the next line Fol. 25 *b* is prefixed, whereas the last fol. was numbered Fol. 24. This is because two leaves have here been pasted together, Fol. 24 *b* and Fol. 25 being thus hidden. By holding the book up to the light many words can be seen, which prove clearly that on fol. 24 *b* and fol. 25 is written

[1] The Cambridge copy of the Fr. text has here again lost two lines, judging by the English version.

by mistake a passage which should have come later in the poem, and which is re-written in its proper place on fol. 41 *b* and fol. 42. There is therefore nothing here lost, and the narrative is continuous, as the Fr. text also proves. In attempting to separate these pages, some person has slightly torn the corner of fol. 24, so as to destroy the *e* in *plegge* and the *t* in *trouth* in l. 1049, defacing also the last word in l. 1050; *be it non maligne* is therefore suggested, in the sense "be no-wise ill-disposed to me," the word *maligne* having already occurred at l. 46 of the Prologue. The Fr. text has,

Dame, dit Il, je vous pleuis,
Que tant comme Ie feray vifz,
Ne faulfferay le couuenant.

1059. *hold*, MS. *bold; hold* is of course the right reading, as the Fr. has *tenez;* cf. also l. 1056.

P. 43, l. 1072. And to (the) ladies which that men (had) brought, &c.

1081. *forcelet;* this should be spelt *forceret*, the wrong spelling being due to confusion with *formelet* in the next line; *forceret* means a casket. Also *your* in the MS. is a mistake for *yuor*, ivory (Fr. *yuoire*); this is yet another instance of the *inversion* of letters; see note to l. 850.

1082. *formelet;* this again should have been spelt *fermelet*. The Fr. text has *fermail*, which is also sometimes written *fermeillet* or *fermillet*. It means a chain, agraffe, or carcanet.

P. 44, l. 1101. *drust*, durst.

1106. *sate*, he sat; where *he* means Raymond—

Car Il ne voult pas couroucier
Raymon, qui fuft fur vng courfier;
Congie prent, &c.

1113. *had* = there were; Fr. *y auoit;* cf. l. 1127.

P. 45, l. 1122. Fr. on peut bien feauoir fe Ie ment.

1125. *quicke Roche*, live rock; Fr. viue Roche.

1132. *the contray*, i. e. the people of the country.

1139. She named the castle *Lusignen* after the latter part of her name; in l. 1199, we have mention of the town of *Mel*, corresponding to the former part of the name; but see note to l. 1146.

1142. The Fr. text omits all mention of Ciprian, and merely says,

Encore le Roy *a presen*
Crie en fon cry, lufignen.

But the statement is verified by the Fr. of l. 5351.

1146, 7. The word *fautih* in the MS. should be *fautith* = lacketh

Mellufine autant dire vault
Comme merueille qui la ne fault.

This seems to imply that *Melusine* is equivalent to *merveilleuse;* but it is hard to follow this etymology. In l. 1139 is mentioned *Lusignen* as being named from the latter part of her name, and in l. 1199 is mentioned the town of *Mel.* Hence M. de la Mure suggests (p. 489) that the derivation should be reversed, and that the name was compounded from the two chief places which she possessed, viz. Melle and Lusignan. But he adds in a note; "Cette étymologie du nom de Melusine n'est pas la seule que l'on ait imaginée; Bullet n'a pas oublié d'insérer dans les *Memoires sur la langue celtique*, ce mot, qu'il fait venir de *Mé*, moitié, et *Llisowen*, anguille; dautres auteurs veulent que Mélusine soit une altération du nom oriental Mélésinde." More probably it is the same name with Millicent. The prose romance says, "ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek langage is as moche for to say as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueylle." (*fol.* 37.)

P. 46, l. 1161. *in trauers*, across.

1162. *grey;* the Fr. has *vert.* So also it is said of Lancelot in the French prose romance, "ses yeux que ressembloient deux belles *esmeraudes.*"

1165. *Neuer man sain*, never (had) man seen. Fr. "On ne vit."

1171. *brought*, borough; or rather, fort. The mount of Beau Repair here mentioned seems to owe its existence to a mistranslation, as the Fr. text says,

Apres ce temps elle fiſt faire
Le bourg ou a *moult beau Repaire*,

i. e. the fort where there is a very good place of retreat = the fort which is an excellent stronghold.

1175. *louers*, *lowpes*, louvres and loopholes. A *louvre* is an architectural term for a small tower with *open* windows or slits. It is derived from the French *l'ouvert;* so here the Fr. text has,

Murdrieres Il a (.) *a louuert*
Pour lancier, traire, & deffendre.

P. 47, l. 1186. *toure trompe*, trumpet-tower.

1188. *For*, four, one at each corner; *rewarde*, regard, look.

Quatre trompeurs faraſinois
La furent mis a celle fois,
Pour le fort et le bourg garder
Et pour tout entour *Regarder*, &c.

1194. *Oede*, Fr. Oedes, the name generally spelt *Eudes*, by

some confounded with *Hugues*. De la Mure; *Histoire*, &c., p. 506.

1200. *Vauuant and meruant*, Vauvant and Mervent, two towns in Poitou, the former of which adjoins Parthenay. De la Mure; pp. 500, 501. *St. Messent* = St. Maixent.

P. 48, l. 1220. *peito*, Poitou.

1223. *eornicles*, mis-written for *eronicles;* Fr. text, *la eronique*.

1235. (She) made that day in Luxembourg (many) a fair thing;

En Luxembourg maint beau fait fift.

P. 49, l. 1252. *mallers*, Maillezais in Poitou. The abbey was burnt by Geoffrey in A.D. 1232,[1] for which offence he had to pay to the church the sum of 1000 *écus;* De la Mure, p. 493. The particulars are given at length in a later part of the romance.

1253. How Raymond was enraged both against Geoffrey and Melusine, and how he lost Melusine, is all related at length hereafter.

P. 50, l. 1274. We may here collect the names of the ten sons of Raymond and Melusine. They were, according to the romance, 1. Urien, who had an ugly face and eyes of different colours, in honour of whom Lusignan was built. 2. Oede (Eudes), with a face like fire. 3. Guy, who had one eye lower than the other. 4. Anthony, marked with a scar like that made by a lion's claw. 5. Raynold, with one eye. 6. Gaffrey (Geoffrey), with the great tooth. 7. Fromont, with a blemish on his nose. 8. Horrible, with three eyes. 9. Raymond. 10. Thierry. M. de la Mure considers four of these as historical, and arranges them in this order. 1. Guy, taken prisoner by Saladin in A. D. 1187; king of Jerusalem, 1185—1192; exchanges the kingdom for that of Cyprus in 1192, buying it of the knights templars for 100,000 *écus d'or* (!), they having previously purchased it from Richard I. of England, who had conquered it. He died in Cyprus, A. D. 1196. 2. Geoffrey, inherited Vouvant and Mervent in Poitou. He burnt the abbey of Maillezais, A. D. 1232,[1] and had to pay for the rebuilding of it. He was afterwards buried in this new abbey. There is a document extant, proving that in 1216 he made over a large amount of land to the monastery of Beaulieu in Roannois. [This document is given at length by M. de la Mure at p. 501, and is the *only authentic document* (says the editor of the book in a foot-note) on which he rests his conjectures concerning Melusine's family.] 3. Odo or Eudes, but who ought to have been called Hugues, who inherited the domain of Lusignan. 4. Amery, or Amaulry, called Urien in the romance, who succeeded Guy as king of Cyprus, from A. D. 1196—1210.

[1] De la Mure; p. 493. Surely this date is wrong, and should be an earlier one.

1275. Now *I* return, &c.; cf. l. 1177, *I* shall declare.

1281. *to know where*, to know war; Fr. Aler veult ſcau*oir* de la *guerre*.

1291. *to wel find ther peple*, to well find their people; i. e. to pay them good hire. Fr. Et pour bien ſauldoier leur gent.

1295. *teise*, draw, tend.

P. 51, l. 1299. *Famagouce;* such is the true reading, the town being the modern Famagousta. The Fr. text has "famagoſſe." Compare

> "And ſall fayr to *Famagoste*
> for lyes to seke,
> And saill forth to *Cipres*
> as the buk tellis."

Miscellaneous Poems, in Lancelot du Lak; ed. by Mr J. Stevenson, 1839; p. 151.

1313. Urien's men were seen taking up their quarters in the sultan's tents, and dislodging the sultan's men. In the prose romance the sultan is called Brandymont.

1315. *regid;* read *rengid*, ranged. The Fr. text has *Rngies*, a mistake for *Rengies*.

1319. *Armed was with*, was armed *by*.

P. 52, l. 1335. *garison*, healing; none would undertake to heal him.

> Le Roy dun dart envelymee,
> Qui bien fut forgie et lyme,
> Fut tellement feru a point
> Quen lui de gariſon na point.

1338. *The*, MS. Thy; Fr. text, *Les* Cypriens.

1340. *thowne*, town; so *whent* for *went*, l. 1413; *where* for *were* = war, l. 1281; *then* for ten, l. 3477.

1345. *enforced*, augmented; Fr. text, *enforcies*, from *enforcier*, to augment.

P. 53, l. 1375. *myght*, MS. *nyght*. The sense is, so that there might never be recovery (for that man). Fr. text, Oncques homme ne le pouoit guerir.

1378. *perceiued;* this in the MS. looks like *perteined;* but the French has, quant Vriens lappercoit. Cf. note to l. 548.

1386. *dedes Army*, deeds of arms; "Tant fiſt darmes ce Vriens.

P. 54, l. 1394. *Ther by*, MS. *Therby;* French, *Par* Guyon et par Vriens.

1396. *thought long*, thought to abide (?). Cf. A.S. *lengian*, to dwell. French text, Vriens es trefz ſe loga. That he did not wish to remain there long is shown by l. 1399. But probably we should read "log," i. e. loge = lodge; cf. *hug* for *huge*.

1414. *Moche went Cipryan*, many a Cyprian went.

P. 55, l. 1424. Who, O lord God, who (could withstand him)? Not a giant, at any time.

1442. *know*, known.

P. 56, l. 1454. Whereby (you) shall not lose.

1462. *send*, sent.

1468. Whom, as I best could, (I) have warded and defended.

P. 57, l. 1483. The general sense is, She cannot sustain such fierce conflicts of arms, nor the sharp showers (of arrows).

> Femme ne peut les fiers eftours
> Darmes porter, ne les durs tours.

1500. *hir*, here; spelt in next line *here*. French text, "*or* orez, Vriens, *or* me pardonnez."

P. 58, l. 1517. If (I) saw (there) were any respite of death in you.

1523. *reised god*, elevated the host. Fr. leuoit dieu.

1526. *yild*, he yielded.

1533. *loke*, locked up; Fr. De dueil fut fon cueur enferray.

P. 59, l. 1545. *Tho*, those who; Fr. A ceulx, qui fe meflerent du fait.

1546. *wyll*, well; spelt *wel* two lines below.

1548. *A kinges dede*, Fr. au fait du Roy.

1555. The words scrawled in the margin in a later hand have been written near the edge of the page, and the letters in brackets cut away by the binder; these marginal notes are, of course, of little value.

1566. *Colcis*, Colchis.

1572. *medee auise*, Medea's advice. The words are run together in the MS.

P. 60, l. 1578. *ille*, island; should rather have been spelt *ile* as in l. 1570.

1579. Compare

> Il en y eft advenu mille,
> Mille voire par mille fois,
> Tant au plain comme aux deftrois.

1586. The Fr. text has merely "de la contree" where the English has "maree," which I guess to mean *marshy* land, of which there are 20,000 acres in the department of Deux Sévres. (Enclycl. Metr. s.v. *Sévres*.) "The porte yaffe" is not represented in the French copy.

1595. The insertion of *ne* is essential to the metre and the syntax; Fr. Quil nalast. Even thus, the metre still lacks a syllable.

1599. *full know*, well known, illustrious.

1601. The marginal note in the MS. should state that the "king of hermyne" was "vnkull to vriens wif." M. de la Mure

remarks (pp. 509, 524) that Urien, whose real name was Amaulry, was a younger son of Melusine, and obtained the kingdom of Cyprus by succeeding his elder brother Guy; that his first wife's name was Cive or Eschive d'Isbelin or d'Iblin, daughter of Baudouin, Count of Rama in Palestine; and that, instead of his wife's uncle being king of Armenia, it was his (Urien's) daughter who was married to Leo I., first king of Armenia, created king in A. D. 1197 by Henry VI. (or V.), emperor of the East. By *hermyne* is meant Armenia, the Fr. text having *armenye*.

P. 61, l. 1614. *hermyns*, Armenians; Fr. *armyniens*.

1630. MS. *occorded*, but Fr. Chascun faccorda. See l. 1633.

1633. *Guye after send*, Guy (was) sent after. Fr. Guy fut mande.

P. 62, l. 1641. *wilfull*, willing.

1648. It had before been two brothers (that were kings).

1652. Compare

> Et en leur temps forment ayderent
> A ceulx qui ſont deulx deſcendu,
> (Ainſi comme Iay entendu),
> Et ceulx de Rodes, ſe faichies,
> Ont guerroye Iusques en leurs marchees.

1663. *noyours*, annoyers; Fr. Et leurs nuyſans ſuppediterent.

P. 63, l. 1670. *Sept psabulmes*, seven psalms; but the Fr. has "les *quinze* pſalmes."

1696. *Brehain;* the prose romance has *Behayne*, and there is little doubt but that *Bohemia* is meant, and Tieck accordingly writes *Böhmen*. Sometimes the term is restricted to a city, and it then means Prague, as in l. 1951.

P. 64, l. 1700. Fr. text, le Roy daufay, and Roquefort says this means *Alsace;* Tieck, too, has *Elsass*.

1704. For *hurt*, which is in the MS., read *hurd*, heard.

> Car chascun deulx ſauoir vouloit
> Pourquoy le Roy les guerreroit;
> Et ceſtoit pour vne pucelle.

1708. Fr. Fille du duc, mais orpheline. Thus *Orphelyne* means that she was an orphan; her *name* was Christian, as told in l. 1827; and the prose romance calls her father Asselyn; *fol.* 105.

1718. *A-ferrome*, from afar; Fr. de long.

1721, 2. *Army peple*, men-at-arms; "Cuſtile" is given by Burguy as another form of Couſteau or Couteau, a knife. Compare

> Voient grant foiſon de gens darmes,
> A grans couſteaulx et grans guiſarmes.

1723. The MS. reading "ſtaſte" should perhaps be "ſtaſte;" i. e. they ranged themselves in lines, and put themselves in battle order; Fr. text, Lors ſe miſdrent en ordonnance. *Staf* means a *line* in ll. 6555, 6581.

P. 65, l. 1735. Again the Lusignans cried out full fast.

De Rechief luſignen[s] eſcrient.

The MS. reading *eryng* is an evident blunder for *cryng*, the peculiar spelling of *crying* which the scribe or translator has generally adopted; thus, in l. 1761, he writes *reioed* for *reioyed*, *ioyng* for *ioying*, l. 1898; while in l. 1900 we have the very word *cryng*. In the text, I have written *crying* by mistake.

1740. *ech by thaimself*, each by himself.

1754. *takyng*, taken; Fr. *prins* = modern Fr. *pris*.

P. 66, l. 1765. (They) presented the king to this fair creature.

1767. *shappe*, shaped.

1787. Afterwards commanding these brethren to come to her.

P. 67, l. 1799. *yeuyng*, given; cf. *takyng* in l. 1754.

1802. *where*, were; cf. *whent* for *went*, l. 1413.

1808. The MS. *kew* is of course an error for *knew;* Fr. ſeauoient.

1815. *forigers*, foragers; MS. forigers; but Fr. text, fouriers.

P. 68, l. 1818. Compare

A lentree de Luxenbourg
Lieu ny auoit ne carrefourg
Dont len neuſt veu venir les gens
Au ſons de ces doulx Instrumens.

1841. *wace*, was; Fr. affis *fut*.

P. 69, l. 1851. *at thys iournay*, to-day; Fr. au Iourduy.

1877. *And had*, if (I) had.

P. 70, l. 1886. *With-that*, provided that.

1892. *demage*, damage; Fr. dommaige.

1900. *cryng*, crying; cf. note to l. 1735.

1904. *semble wyse* is equivalent to the *lyke wyse* of l. 1901.

1905. *swrete*, surety.

1907. *mow ye*, certainly a mistake for *myght I;* for the Fr. text has,

Et dit, barons, moult lies ſeroie,

where *lies* = Lat. *lætus*.

1909. The first *to* = two.

P. 72, l. 1951. According to Tieck and the Volksbuch, Brehaigne means Prague in Bohemia, as before noted.

1964. *deing*. The MS. has either *deing* or *doing;* that *deing* is right is proved by the sense, and by the Fr. text, which has "mouront."

1967. He shall have my brother's (king of Brehain's) daughter to wife. Compare

La fille mon faire[1] a moillier
Aura Regnault, car emploier
Ne la pourroit mon frere mieulx.

P. 73, l. 1971. After my brother, (he shall be) king of high degree. Fr. Roy fera.

1973. *hoir*, heir. Fr. hoir.

1981. *Anynsime*, or *Auynsime;* the Fr. text has—Dedens quinze Iours, within this *fortnight;* but the etymology is not clear; I suppose it is *ad vigesimam*, sc. *diem*. See Glossary.

P. 74, l. 2006. Sir Anthony is certainly the speaker, we must not read—"Sir Anthony," (he) said, &c. The French has—Anthonie lui dit, frere, alez.

2101. *done* is here the infinitive, generally spelt *don*.

2018. *this said duk*, viz. duke Anthony; cf. ll. 1997, 2003. Observe that the English version is quite wrong; for it states that "this said duke went towards Luxembourg," whereas it should state that "the king went towards Luxembourg *to meet* this said duke;" the Fr. text might easily be mistaken, as it runs,

En luxembourg, vers le duc, va.

P. 75, l. 2049. The spelling *wordle* seems intentional, in order to eke out ten syllables for the line. It is not uncommon.

2056. By comparing the various statements in *De la Mure* (pp. 494, 502, 518), it appears that the old shield of Lusignan was barry of ten pieces, argent and azure; over all a lion gules (not crowned); and the shield of modern Luxembourg is argent, a lion gules, crowned or. If then, as Christian in this line suggests, the bars of azure in the Lusignan shield be left out of the consideration, Anthony would bear the arms of Luxembourg very nearly, as then the whole field would be argent. But De la Mure points out that such a shield (viz. argent, a lion gules) really belonged to Cyprus, and that it should not be thus confounded with the Luxembourg shield, since in this latter the lion is *crowned*.

P. 76, l. 2066. *Baueres* and *Almayn*, Fr. *bauiere* et *alemaigne*, Bavaria and Germany.

2073. *Traquo*, Fr. text, Craquo; Cracow. The prose romance speaks of "Zelodyus, kyng of Craco;" (*fol.* 129).

2075. *Esclauons*, Slavonians (?). Fr. text, eſclauons. In l. 2077, we read that he was lord and sire of that land also, viz. of Slavonia as well as Cracow.

2079. In the MS. "ſc" is written so as to resemble "ſt;" thus "ſcarmiſh" resembles "ſtarmiſh," and in l. 2075, just above, "Eſclauons" resembles "Eſtlauons." This practice is common enough in old MSS.

2083. *Fedris*, the name of the king of Brehain, called in the

[1] Obvious error for *frere*.

Fr. text *Fedoiz*, but in the Volksbuch, *Friedrich*. The prose romance has "the kynge Federyk of behayne;" *fol.* 123.

P. 77, l. 2094. The Slavonians beat the men of Brehain, and chased them *to the end*, i. e. as far as they could, viz. back to the town again. Fr. Iusques au bourg.

2096. Compare

Mais le bon duc de luxembourg
Tantoft oftera le debat;
Le Roy brehaignon fe combat
Aux faulx farrafins de tous lez,
Qui fes gens ont moult Recuilliez.

2103, 4. Here and there he cast them down, fighting full manfully, cut down one man, and overturned another on to the ground. Fr. Lun detrenche, laut*re* mort Rue.

2113. *she*, viz. his soul; Fr. A dieu soit *elle* commandee.

2117. But (as for) the Saracens indeed, they followed close (after them), catching up those who fled.

P. 78, l. 2126. *noyng* = *noying*, annoyance.

2132. "They greatly dreaded the Saracens at that time, when they saw their king dead, who was formerly of great puissance; whereof the Saracens had then great joy, (because) there were (many) Christians who had been ended and finished (?)" But this last line is so forced and absurd, that it is far better to read "Trifting," and to interpret the line to mean—"trusting their war had been ended and done." In support of this, we may remark that the scribe has already written *Traquo* for *Craquo*, l. 2073. The line is not in the French.

P. 79, l. 2154. To preserve the right sense, the translator should have said—The *Sarifins* went out, thaim faft trufling—i. e. fast destroying (or driving back) the people of Brehain; the mistake evidently arose from a misconception of the Fr. text,

Brehaignons vont fort deftruifant,

where *Brehaignons* is in the *accusative* case.

2159. *Als!* alas! Cf. l. 2166 below.

2161. *most*, I must.

2167. In what manner (of) form.

2171. *nere*, neither.

P. 80, l. 2208. This messenger is a *Saracen* scout, not the one mentioned in l. 2182.

2213. For see the many Christian people, fast coming.

P. 81, l. 2221. *not-For-þat*, nevertheless; Fr. non pourtant.

2223. The construction is obscure; Fr text,

Et anthonie dautre contree
Venoit en bataille ordonnee.

2232. Two of them there hath Raynold cast down.

P. 82, l. 2246. Here again, as at l. 2073, the Fr. has Craquo.

2251. *grace*, grass; so also *wace* for *was*, l. 1841.

2252. *deth*, dead.

2253. *cried and grad.* Compare

Le Roye de Craquo crie & hue;

which supplies us with the origin of the phrase *hue and cry*.

P. 83, l. 2287. *An hye*, on high.

2290. In this line *A man* has a particular reference to the king of Alsace, as the meaning is—Thus should A man avenge himself on the Saracens, because the king of Cracow had in very truth in like manner caused his brother to be burnt to ashes; this refers to l. 2139.

P. 84, l. 2309. *your fadir Deth*, your father's death; the Fr. text employs the same idiom—la mort ton pere.

P. 85, l. 2342. *hold;* read *bold*, which ends l. 2281 in a similar sentence; for *hold* will not rime to *behold* in l. 2340. So too in l. 4, *has* is written for *bas*.

2357. *or* is the right reading; Fr. Vng Royaulme *ou* vng empire.

2359. *commanded*, commended.

P. 86, l. 2380. *May* is the right reading; Fr. Qui eſglentine eſpousera.

2381. For my part, I say to you.

P. 87, l. 2406. Cf. l. 2342.

2415. And all that belongeth to her you (shall have) to take (for your own).

2420. For your free kindness and courtesy, he shall defend, &c.

2422. Read "werre;" the meaning is—For he can *war* well; Fr. Car il ſceet assez de la *guerre*.

P. 88, l. 2428. The king prepared for his niece all such fine array as pertains to a queen.

2446. *wis*, read *vois;* Fr. Et dient tous a vne *voix*.

P. 89, l. 2464. *ortholegne;* the Fr. text has a different reading,

Regnault fiſt grant guerre en friſe,
Oeſtellere de la conquiſt;
Danemarche par force acquiſt;

but this is hardly more intelligible.

2469. Was not on this side of the Romans; a proverbial expression which has occurred before, l. 266.

2471. *Speke me shall;* the *me* is adopted from a phrase in the preceding line of the Fr. text—Ie *me* tairay.

2483. As any man could on this side of the sea; Fr. de ca la mer; cf. l. 2469.

P. 90, l. 2487. Compare

Cellui deliura les deſ[t]rois
Dardayne, ou auoit moult *grant* bois,

Maint bon chaſtel fortiffia;
Yuay premier ediffia;
Sur meuze vng noble pont fiſt
De meſieres, et puis conquiſt
Pluſieurs bon lieux par ſa proueſſe.

Here Dardayne = D'Ardennes, famous for its forest, and it is easy to see how this was changed into "dardane." In the next line, *knight* is of course wrong; read *brought*, which is used to mean a castle in ll. 1171, 1199. *Yvon* (= Fr. Yvay) is probably Givet, a town on the Meuse, lower down the river than *Mezieres*.

2495. *wered*, made war upon.

2496. *Faborugh;* probably *Friborugh* = Friburg in Switzerland (?). The Fr. text has *bribourg*. *Aritrige* is mis-written for *Autrige* = Autriche or Austria; Fr. text, autriche.

P. 91, l. 2519. *of corage*, courageously.

2523. This line, as it stands, means—In warring, a strong warrior, well set. But it is a mistranslation; and should express that he carried on war bravely *in Guerrande;* for the Fr. text has —En *guerrande* fort guerreoya. Guerrande is mentioned at l. 2930, where the story of Geoffrey's combat with the giant is resumed; it is situated on the sea-coast near the mouth of the Loire.

2528. Compare

Juſqua la Rochelle Ilz prenoient
Sauuergarde, tant le craignoient.
Il prenoit a paſtiz partout
Autant au millieu comme au boult.

According to Roquefort, *pastis* (from Lat. *pactio*) is a forced contribution which men agree to pay an enemy; so that the giant, in fact, levied "black mail" on the inhabitants; but the word *paceyfed* (or *pateyfed*) remains obscure.

2533. This seems to imply that Geoffrey heard that the giant called him a man with a great tooth, but the line is merely parenthetical in the Fr. text;

Quant Gieffray la nouelle entend,
(Que leu appelle au grant dent), &c.

P. 92, l. 2543. *Hym-selfenn the tenth*, i. e. He went *with nine others*. It is a French idiom; Luy dixieſme ſen part de la.

2553. *malers*, Maillieres in the Fr. text, Malliers in German. It means Maillezais in Poitou; De la Mure; *Histoire*, p. 493. The prose romance has Maillezes, *fol.* 142.

P. 93, l. 2579. *monke;* MS. *moke* (!)

2583. *all my lifes fate*, i. e. all my life; Fr. Car la vueil Ie ma vie vſer.

2585. in you (is) all the hold; i. e. all depends upon you; Fr. en vous tient.

2586. *herd*, hard.

2594. This apparently refers to the tonsure.

P. 94, l. 2608. *A morn*, on the morrow; Fr. au matin.

2622. *Merkministre;* Fr. maire monſtier.

2623. *Broughdieu;* Fr. bourg de dieu.

2630. Fr. A ſainct martin, la grant egliſe. "France had three (tutelar saints), who had each his sacred city; each, as it were, succeeded to, without dispossessing the other. St Martin of Tours was the older; St Remi, who baptized Clovis into the Catholic Church, had an especial claim on all of Frankish descent. But, as Paris rose above Tours and Rheims, so rose St Denys, by degrees, to be the leading saint of France." Dean Milman; Hist. of Latin Christianity; vol. 6, p. 244. 2nd ed. At p. 249 of the same work we read, "Tours and Poitiers quarrelled for the body of St Martin."

2632. And thereof (I will) cause deeds to be made.

P. 95, l. 2633. Compare

> Ou de *not*re dame de chartres;
> Voire, ſe tu veulx de paris,
> Ne ſoiez donc de Rien marris;
> Car bien suis acointe du pape,
> Il ny aura Riens qui meſchappe;
> Et puis apres ferez eueſque,
> Ne demoura guerres apres que
> Autre bonne eueſchie auras,
> Soit paris, beauuoir, ou arras.

P. 96, l. 2650. Fr. text, Et la pour nous dieu pryeras. The English is obscure.

2668. The word *in* seems redundant, as far as the sense is concerned.

2672. Compare—Ilz furent ars, vaille q*ue* vaille; where *ars* means *burnt*.

2676. Compare

> Melluſine fut a vouent,
> Et mectoit ſes Robes au vent,
> Ou nouuellement fut venue,
> Iamais elle ne ſen fut tenue.

P. 97, l. 2700. *Thre;* Fr. *Trois*.

P. 98, l. 2744. Whose coming was the occasion of the feast; but the Fr. only says that the ladies came there on that occasion—

> Et de dames treſgrant foiſon
> Y vindrent pour celle achoyſon.

P. 99, l. 2761. You are not so hardy as to enquire of your wife, either seriously or in jest, whither she goes.

2771. The right sense should be—And some others say that she goes on this day to Fairy-land; compare

> Autres dient que en faerye
> Va cellui Iour—faichies de voir,
> Frere, mectes paine a fauoir.

2784. *There he faste knakked; knakked* (knocked) is the translator's blunder; it should mean, There he fast *hastened* where he had not been (before). The mistake is easily traced; Fr. text, *Se Rapa* ou oneques neuſt eſte.

P. 100, l. 2809. Here is an evident allusion to the coat of arms of Lusignan. The shield was "burelé d'argent et d'azur de dix pieces;" *De la Mure*, pp. 494, 502; cf. note to l. 2056. So too Melusine's tail was divided into *bars* or stripes of *argent* and *azure*.

2812. *to sight gan purchas;* i. e. he saw.

2817. *to Ende*, to the end that; Fr. affin que.

2818. *clout*, a fragment of cloth; Fr. *drapelet;* in next line, *melled* is the Fr. meſle (mêlé) smeared, lit. mixed; and *Alway* = altogether.

P. 101, l. 2843. Cursed be the hour that ever (you) came hither.

P. 102, l. 2857. There is a line omitted before this; compare

> Et droit euſt de ce courouchiers;
> Deſtruit en fut et exillies,
> Car, &c.

where *courouchiers* should perhaps be *courouchier;* so that the meaning should be, And (Raymond) was right to be angry at this; (the earl) was destroyed for it, and (his people) exiled.

2863. *To on his brother*, to one, viz. to his brother; Fr. A vng, ſien frere.

2868. *lament*, lamented.

2872. *purer*, poorer, more wretched.

P. 103, l. 2880. Fr. Perdray ma pensee Ioyeuse; thus *pensif* = thoughtful, and is redundant.

2882. Fr. Miraige Ietter en vng *puis*.

2889. *led*, laid down.

2903. *In on estat*, in one position.

P. 104, l. 2928. *merely*, merrily.

P. 105, l. 2950. *Gueruande;* read *Guerrande*, as in the French.

2960. *staf*, a mace; Fr. machue.

2963. A complete mistranslation; it should be "which had cost many *écus;*" Fr. Qui couſte auoit mainte eſcu. The mistake

arose from the double meaning of efcu, viz. 1. a shield; 2. a piece of money.

2965. Again wrong; it should mean, May God preserve him! he undertakes a great deed! Fr. Dieu le faulue, *grant* fait emprent.

2969. *stil you*, be silent; Fr. vous taifies.

P. 106, l. 2980. So long war hast had, or made.

2992. *full*, foul things, evil; unless it be an error for *ill*. The line means, Who sware by his gods that evil should come to him; the Fr. text however is slightly different—Les dieux Iura que mal y vint.

2993. He considered himself sorely disgraced, since a single man desired to war against him openly.

P. 107, l. 3016. The translator probably meant this line and the next to be said by Geoffrey; but we ought to alter *And* to *faid;* for the Fr. has,

Chetif—*dit* guedon, &c.

3023. *foly, is no nay*, it is folly, there's no denying it; Fr. ceft grant folye.

3025. *she*, i. e. his *life*, which is feminine in French (la vie).

3029. Fr. text, Mais le geant compte nen tient.

P. 108, l. 3032. *sett;* the nom. case to the verb is Geoffrey, who set him (a stroke) there in the breast.

3035. *to se* = in sight; an expletive phrase.

3037. The syntax is hereabouts very wild. The line means, Hast thou not given me such an offering? it shall be restored this moment; i. e. You have bestowed on me a fair blow, and it shall be now returned.

3039. This means—he was wrath that he had just been so cast down to the ground in that isle by a single stroke.

3043. This means—as Geoffrey kept turning about, never still, the giant (took) the steel falchion in hand, cutting the legs off Geoffrey's courser. The omission of the verb *took* is very awkward.

3054. This describes the effect of a *second* blow given by Geoffrey; the first nearly cut off the giant's left arm (his right was cut *quite* off soon afterwards), and the second smote him sorely on the haunch.

3055, 6. The sense is—the giant thought he must make the fight a mortal one.

3058. *thereof gaf;* imitated from the French;

Son flael prent et meet en la place,
Au gieffroy fur le heaulme en donne.

P. 109, l. 3064. *fleing;* Fr. text, voler.

3065. The MS. actually has *legges;* but the Fr. tells us that —Vng de fes marteaulx guedon prent.

3067. Compare

Du coup Ruer moult feſuertue (*sic*)
De gieffroy actaint la machue;
Il la luy fiſt voler des mains.

3071. *To Gaffray noght had*, Geoffrey had nothing; this use of *had* is an imitation of the French idiom *y auoit.*

3074. *geuyng*, given.

3078. Whether arm, staffe, or axe, (they all) fell down right nigh him. It was his *right* arm, says the prose romance.

3080. The last word in the line is most obscurely written. The Fr. merely says—Quant vie vng de ſes bras perdu. *Bede* does not seem right. The word "grad" (see l. 2253) would fit in better.

3082. *of-new*, lately; it often means anew, again; but the giant had still one arm left to raise his sword with.

3084. But (Geoffrey) avoided the stroke.

3089. Compare

Lui a donne vng tel merel,
Et vne ſi tresgrande offerende,
Heaulme na qui ne pourfende.

P. 110, l. 3093. *hys horne sarasin*, his Saracen horn; this well exemplifies the variation between the English text and the Cambridge French copy; for the *latter* is here *wrong;* it says, Puis prent ſon *corps* ſaraſinois; but *corps* must be an error for *corne*, a horn.

3103. *geaunt*, giant's.

3104. You moved war (i. e. fought) against this man, and thought in your mind to vanquish him, and have now discomfited this enemy.

3111. *I shold* = I ought; i. e. it was my duty to; Fr. deuoie.

P. 111, l. 3124. Whereby (he) had then manfully ended the war.

3140. *wace*, was; as also in l. 1841.

3147. Alas! (he) wrought the letters (ât an) ill hour.

P. 112, l. 3163. *Norbelande;* Fr. text, Northombellande.

3172. The word *on* is necessary; Fr. Il maine a tout le pays guerre.

P. 113, l. 3194. Fr. text, Pour lamour de chreſtiennete. The next line is not in the French at all.

3213. The word *goste* seems introduced for the sake of the rime, to the prejudice of the sense; the French is,

Dair fut vermeil comme sangs,
De ſin dueil quil auoit au corps.

P. 114, l. 3218. *tho ill*, those evil men; *thys*, thus.

3230. *messengers*, should be *messenger;* so in l. 3235, *Thai* should be *he*, &c.; for there was only one messenger; cf. l. 3346.

P. 115, l. 3256. *ballyd;* a mistranslation, which looks like guesswork; for the Fr. has *palle*, i. e. pale.

3263. *full*, foully, evilly; *mal le pensastes.*

P. 116, l. 3292. *Thaken*, for *taken;* so too in l. 3477, *Then* for *Ten.*

P. 117, l. 3339. *semyng in corage*, as it seems to my thoughts; Fr. text, "Dieu le pere, ce mest daduis."

P. 118, l. 3358. *condute*, conducted; Fr. *conduisoit.*

3365. The Fr. line corresponding to this is,

En peu deure moult loings alerent.

Way's note, in his edition of the Promptorium Parvulorum, to the word *kennynge* is so entirely to the point that I give it here. "Will. Worcester uses the term *kenning* to denote a distance at sea, pp. 179, 313; and it appears from Leland that 20 miles was accounted as a kenning, probably, as the extreme distance within ordinary sight. 'Scylley is a kennyng, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste pointe of Cornewaulle.' Itin. iii. f. 6. See also f. 13." Many readers will probably recall the lines in Keats's Sonnet "On first looking into Chapman's Homer,"

"Then felt I like some watcher of the skies
When a new planet swims into his *ken*."

P. 119, ll. 3384—3392. These lines are parenthetic, being added by the writer to prepare us for the coming *dénouement* of the story.

P. 120, l. 3399. *bered*, buried; *of hys*, of him; altered for the sake of the rime. We still say—that body of his.

3417. *blissed with right hand*, crossed himself; Fr. *si se signa.*

3423. *Is it this?* is it thus? Fr. *Est il ainsi?*

P. 122, l. 3476. *wronged*, read *wrong.* Fr. text, "Nay pas tort se Ie me tourmente."

3484. Fr. text, "Et, pour la larme de vantosme." It seems to be a sort of proverbial oath. The words "hys fair" seem to have no meaning, and to be merely expletive.

P. 124, l. 3551. *scroched*, sic in MS.

P. 125, l. 3556. *sery*, we should expect *say*, to rime with *Gaffray;* yet *sery* may be = Lat. *sero*, in the sense of *say*, *utter*, or *speak*, which it sometimes bears.

3575. *Trowing* means *as I trow;* Fr. "Bien quinze fois, *se croy Ie*, ou vint."

3584. Fr. "Mal vey ton gracieux demaine."

P. 127, l. 3617. This line seems imperfect. The line in the MS. ends with "difceiue," in which the *e* has been smudged nearly out again. The Fr. has,

"Se mon corps a toy demouroit,
Tu ta perceuras bien briefment
De ton maluais parIurement;
Se verite meussies tenue,
[Fol. 82 *b*.] Jusques ala mort me eussies eue,
Et par moy eussies eu secours," &c.

3610. *seueralte* can only mean *separation;* yet the precise opposite is meant; "Plus ny sera *ensemble* tenue."

P. 128, l. 3652. She draws the three barons aside, to tell Raymond *and them* her *special* injunction about Horrible; hence her speaking in an undertone, and her addressing Raymond as before.

P. 129, l. 3689. The Fr. has

Qui de tous eulx eſtoit le maiſtre,
Sil en fut cauſe, bien en peut eſtre;

meaning, I suppose, that *if* the abbot were at the bottom of all, it was not to be wondered at.

P. 130, l. 3711. This story of Melusine's re-appearance before melancholy events is always carefully insisted on wherever the legend is told. Her first manifestation of herself was just before Raymond's death, as told further on, ll. 5182—5194. According to the prose romance (fol. 218) she was seen by an English captain, one Sersnel, just before he lost the castle to the duke of Berry; and she was also seen several times by one "godart," and moreover by one "yuon of walles," and *by many others*.

P. 132, l. 3802. How the earl of Forest met with his death will be duly told hereafter. See p. 170.

P. 133, l. 3809. This eulogy of the lords of Parthenay is carefully enlarged upon at the close of the poem, for obvious reasons.

P. 139, l. 4011. *Rather or later*, Sooner or later. This is a peculiarly good instance of the use of *rather*, it being so well brought out by *later* following.

4015. The Fr. text has,

Elle fait mon cuer eſpartir,
En Remectant comme la cire
fait le geant feu en larmes frire."
Ainſi ſe tourmente Raymont.

She divides my heart, re-kindling it as the giant fire fries wax into tears. Thus Raymond torments himself." The translator has quite missed this.

P. 140, l. 4048. "Whether I lie or no, God on high knows." Such asseverations occur often.

P. 141, l. 4055. *norbelande;* why this spelling occurs is not clear; for the Fr. text has "northombelande," and the prose romance "Northomberland." Tieck writes it *Norhemen*.

P. 142, l. 4101. That the French copy from which the translator took the poem had slightly different readings from the Cambridge copy is of course likely enough. Already, more instances of deviation have been pointed out than can be accounted for by a supposition of errors in translation. The mention of the "marbre stone" on which the giant sat is a crucial instance; for the Cambridge copy reads,

La guide voyt fur vng Rochier
Le geant aſſis fur vng *arbere;*

whereas, when we turn to Tieck's German version, the word "Marmorstein" re-appears; so that there was doubtless a special mention of *marble* in that French copy which the translator used.

4106. He had no dread or fear at all, for he thought he need not mistrust God that he had been misled.

P. 144, l. 4149. The re-appearance of the word "werly" in this line, as indicated in the foot-note, is of course due to its having been copied in from the line above. It is clearly superfluous.

P. 145, l. 4181. The Fr. has, De leaige de ſix ou ſept ans.

P. 147, l. 4240. We ought rather to read "And yut, so I *shall;*" Fr. text, Et ſi feray Ie; mais dy moy, &c.

P. 148, l. 4254. The comma above the line after "coſyn" is a misprint.

4278. It wanted but little that he had not been destroyed.

P. 149, l. 4311. The reading "Aid" is supported by the Fr. text;

Se la ne luy donnent aye
Magot, Apolin, Ternagant.

P. 150, l. 4319. The reading "conquered" is amply supported by l. 3942 (not 3492, as misprinted) which runs, Wich that ceaſon conquered was and gett.

4336. The cold knife-blade entirely passing through (his thigh-armour).

4384. According to the prose romance, the name of this mountain of "Northomberland" was called "Brombelyoys," and the story of "Elymas, kyng of Albany," is told at much greater length and at the beginning of the romance, which is its right place. There we find that Presine was the king's *second* wife, and that the breaking of his oath was due to his listening to the suggestions of Nathas, his son by his former wife; with many other additions.

P. 153, l. 4407. *With thes doughters thre he closed*, he was enclosed by his three daughters. Fr. text, Car ſes trois filles lenclouirent.

4426. Grimold was either the fifth, sixth, or seventh of them, and he hath been the last.

P. 156, l. 4495. *She*, i. e. the chamber. The translator doubtless employed *she* because the Fr. text has *Elle;* just below (l. 4499) he uses *it*.

4508. Fr. Ils portent moult grant medecines.

P. 158, l. 4549. *maried;* perhaps the translator meant *married*, but the proper meaning here is *vexed*, Fr. marrye. The French here arranges a few lines in a different order, but the extract given exactly fits in in place of fol. 88. The translator claims to have made his translation nearly *line* by *line*, and here 57 French lines answer to 56 English ones. As we are sure of the exact number of lines lost, we are able to continue the right numbering of the lines by just missing 56.

4607. More about lady Melior and the Sparrow-hawk castle will be found further on. See p. 186.

P. 160, l. 4621. *Palatine*, elsewhere spelt *Palestine*, had her name assigned with evident reference to the acquirement by Guy of Lusignan of the title of king of Jerusalem; see l. 4634.

4625. *coings;* this is spelt in several other ways, as may be seen in the Index of Names. The Fr. text has (elsewhere) "eourgo;" and the prose romance, "Guygo." The story of Palestine's treasure is given more at length further on. See p. 196.

P. 162, l. 4687. This means that the giant perceived Geoffrey, and perceived that he was doomed. Geoffrey does not perceive *him* till l. 4691.

4694. The mis-spelling *dorn* is probably due to the word *Anon* following it.

P. 164, l. 4735. Fr. text, De fon papier eftes plainez.

P. 167, l. 4827. *waloping*, galloping. It is curious that this word occurs in the Prose Romance also, at fol. 169; "whan the saudan was departed fro the batayll, he waloped till he cam̃ to [the] sarasyns oost."

P. 171, l. 4964. The prose romance calls the pope *Benedictus;* but, strangely enough, there is neither a Benedict nor a Leo among the popes of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

P. 173, l. 5007. *Ayglon*, called Chastaillon in the Camb. Fr. text.

5010. alludes to l. 3807.

P. 175, l. 5085. In all the marches he ruled over, whether it was wrong or right.

P. 180, l. 5218. *lefte* is of course the reading. Fr. text,

De fes pechies Riens ne laiffa.

P. 183, ll. 5326, 7. There is only one Fr. line answering to these two, but it supports the reading "drad." It runs, "Sarrafin neuft qui le craingne."

P. 184, l. 5329. *Hys leuyng*, during his lifetime; Fr. Son viuant.

5357. Fr. text, Du pierregort en angleterre.

P. 185, l. 5359. *cambrere*, Fr. text, En arragon, ceulx de cambiere.

P. 186, l. 5414. The prose romance says, (*fol.* 7 *b*) whoever "wil goo watche there the day before the euen and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx (24th ?) day of Iung," may achieve the aventure. It was thus in the "most cheffest time of somertide," (l. 5522) not near midwinter, when we commemorate the *Evangelist*.

P. 189, l. 5503. Fr. text,

> Ainſi la chambre painte eſtoit
> Dun pie de mur Iusques au toit,
> Qui deuiſoit les naſcions
> Et les eſtranges Regions,
> Du furent telz hommes vaillans
> Qui point ne furent fommeillans, &c.;

where "deuiſoit" means *described*, not "deuided."

P. 193, l. 5619. This line should mean, Since you do not keep to that which is your own; Fr. Mais puisque ne ten veulx tenir.

P. 194, l. 5645. Fr.

> Arriue eſt a dure feſte,
> Car point ne voit qui le loppine,
> Mais maint coup euſt fur ſon eſchine.

Thus the Fr. verb *loppiner*, (*lit.* to cut into pieces, hence to beat severely), has been twisted into "his *opinion*"!

5653. For remarks on "anointed" in the depraved sense of beaten, see Notes and Quer. 3rd S. IX. 359, 522. The Fr. text has *oingt*.

P. 195, l. 5672. *Crius*, not mentioned in Camb. Fr. text.

5683. Fr. text, Mais la moitie pis gouuerna.

5684. De la Mure devotes his last chapter to the kings of Armenia, giving the list as follows. Leo I (reigned 1197), Constant, Haiton, Leo II, Theodore, Leo III, Hugues, John, Leo IV, Leo V, Leo VI. This makes Leo I the hero of the Sparrow-hawk adventure, Constant the king mentioned in l. 5682, and the rest the "nine heirs." The name of the last king agrees with the prophecy in l. 5628, and De la Mure tells us (p. 526) so much of his history as confirms the account in the next stanza; "il se réfugia en France auprès du Roi Charles VI, l'an 1385. Et ayant disposé de ses droits au Royaume d'Arménie, en faveur de la Maison de Chypre, comme il a été vu ci-devant, il mourut à Paris, l'an 1393, le 29e novembre. Il y fut inhumé en l'église des Célestines, ou on voit sa representation," &c. I may add that La Coudrette insinuates that he saw the funeral himself—"Ou moult de gens *Ie vey* enſemble"—a line omitted in the translation.

P. 196, l. 5718, *treteth*, read *tretyng;* where —*yng* marks the infinitive.

P. 200, l. 5823. Fr. text,

Vng homme trouua en ſa voye,
Qui Iuſques au mont le conuoie;

which shows that "be" should be "he," and suggests that l. 5824 should run thus,

Which to this mountain *he* gan *hym* conuay,

where "he" means *high*, as elsewhere. For this mountain is generally called the *high* mountain; see ll. 4625, 4631, 5725.

P. 201, l. 5284. *Brandes* should no doubt be *Brandest;* Fr. text, Brandiſt.

P. 205, l. 5972. Fr. text,

Qui fut Iadis clerc de mellin,
Et pres dillecques demouroit;

whence it is clear that *mellin* (translated Merlyn!) is the *name of a place*, probably Molina near the Sierra Molina in the extreme S. of Arragon.

5981. Fr. text,

Ce devin eſtoit nay deſpenge,
Et fut a leſcole a tolette, &c.;

so that "of good cognicion" should have been *born in Spain;* and "Tholouse certain" really represents *Toledo.*

P. 208, l. 6061. Fr. text,

Helas, Il euſt eu le treſoir,
Et conquis, ſeuſt veſqu encoir,
Et terre de promiſſion,
Qui tant eſt ſainete Region.

P. 209, l. 6105, Fr. text,

La giſt, la eſt la tombe miſe
Ie lay veue de mes deulx yeulx.

P. 211, l. 6162. Fr. text, Elle court plus fort quue fleſſe.

P. 212, l. 6175. Who this "one William" was I fail to find, there being no archbishop of Bourdeaux of that name at this time, though Bourdeaux would be the see in which was Parthenay. Nor was the archbishop of Paris, nor of Tours, so named at this time; but it is observable that William Fabri was then bishop of Perigueux, the native place of this lord of Parthenay's daughter-in-law; see l. 6373.

6182. A curious mistake about the date has here crept into the text; the year should be 1401. For the Fr. text has, "En lan mil *vng* et quatreeens; and this fulfils the conditions; for, in

1401, the 17th of May was not only a Tuesday, but the *Tuesday before Pentecost*. The false date, 1407, is easily accounted for; for it so happens that in that year too the 17th of May was on a Tuesday, but it was the Tuesday *after* Pentecost, which makes all the difference.

P. 213, l. 6206. Fr. text,

> Fut faicte la translacion
> En lan et Incarnacion
> Du chief du gracieux corps;
> Car Il eftoit la pieca mors.

P. 214, l. 6266. The reigning king was Charles VI.

P. 219, l. 6423. Both here and below the Fr. text spells the name "coudrette."

P. 220, l. 6433. The Camb. copy of the Fr. text ends with the line, Adoucques fe taira coudrette; the litany being missing, though part of the page is left blank.

P. 223, l. 6546. The translator, being deserted at this point by Coudrette, gives us an original epilogue, wherein he considerably falls off, and, towards the end, seems almost to give it up.

P. 224, l. 6553, repeated from Prologue, l. 15.

6577. This boast is hardly borne out by the facts.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[The French words inserted between marks of parenthesis after the word to be glossed are the corresponding words in the French text. Thus "Aduertise (*aduiser*)" means that *aduiser* is the word which the translator has rendered by *aduertise;* but it is not meant that *aduiser* occurs in *all* the passages where *aduertise* does, only that they are found to correspond once *at least*. In very many instances, the Fr. word greatly explains the English one, which is the reason for giving it. The following abbreviations have been used;—Pr. Parv. = Promptorium Parvulorum; Bur. = Burguy, Glossaire de la langue d'oïl; Cotg. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary; Roq. = Roquefort's Glossaire; Jam. = Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary. Ch. appended to a word means that it is used by Chaucer. Other abbreviations, as A.S. for Anglo-Saxon, O.N. for Old Norse, O.Fr. for Old French, &c., will be readily understood. The letter *p* before a number refers to the Prologue. The books referred to in italics—as *K. Horn*—are books published by the E. E. T. S.]

A, he, 5400.

A, on, 752, 805; A day, on a day, at times, 752.

Abake, to putte (*Recuillier*), to put aside, decline, 3110; to defeat, 2094, 2100.

Abakwarde, backwards, 5888.

Abasshed, amazed, astounded, 2052, 2346, 2849, 4806; afraid, 2635. R. *esbahir*. "Abaschyd or aferde. *Territus*." Pr. Parv.

Aby, abide it, 4679. Ch.

Acause, because, 2913, 3611.

Acceptiff, acceptable, pleasing, 3285.

Accounte, to count, number, 4892. "Here to *account*," &c. Spenser, F.Q. iii. 6. 30.

Acquitail, acquittal, 4764.

Aday, on various days, at various times, often, 4252.

Adieu commaunde, I commend you to God, 3849.

Adquire, acquire, *p.* 99.

Adrad, afraid, 588.

Aduertise (*aduiser*), to pay heed to, 477; to notice, perceive, 2847.

Aferrom, 629, 3375; Aferrome, 4488, } afar off, at a distance. A.S. *feorran, feorrene.*

Affiaunce, trust, 3177.

Affray, disturbance, 2854. Ch.

Affy, to be affianced to, 6052.

Aforn, 136, 347, 353, 4435, 4891, 4995, } before.

Aforne, 56, 4440, } "Aforne (afore, *Ante, coram.*" Pr. Parv.

Afray, terror, 140. Ch.
Again, 2534, } against.
Agayne, 251, }
Agast, were afraid, 4806. "Agaste, supra in a-ferde." Pr. Parv.
A-hy, on high, 1210. *See* Anhy.
Alabastre, 4515, } alabaster.
Alebastre, 5039, }
A-land, on land, 4836.
Alfaste, very quickly, 3252.
Alienyng, alienating, 6128.
All-oute, fully, entirely, completely, 2320, 4463, 5922. It occurs also in *Lancelot of the Laik*.
Al-oute, the same as the above, 866.
All-ther-first, first of all, 2490. So too Alšer best, best of all, *Gen. & Ex.* Cf. Du. *allereerst*.
Als, also, 3440, 4163, 5089. Ch.
Als! alas! 2159, 2166. Fr. text, *las*, which see in Roq.
Amended, 4544, } grew stronger,
Amendid, 4035, } grew up.
Ameruelled, astonished, 405.
Amidward, in the middle, 4291.
Amorn, in the morning, on the morrow, 5519.
An, written for And, 4957.
Ancelle, handmaid, 6456. Lat. *ancilla*.
And, if, 5384, 5446, 6809.
An-hy, on high, 2704, 2966, 3145, &c.
Anoynted, used jocularly of a good beating, 5653. So the Fr. text, *bien oingt*.
Antecessour, ancestor, 6359.
Antecessoures, predecessors, 4786.
A-per-se, superexcellent, lit. A by itself, 1148.
Apertly, openly, *p.*30, 331. Piers Pl.
Aplace, in her place, before all, 932.
Aplas, in your place, in his presence, 522. "Aplace, in place. Gower." Wright's Prov. Dict.
Aply, to ply, bend, 4187.
Apparaill (*la pareille*), the like of it (?) Apparently copied from the Fr. text; 742.
Apparailled (*apparaillie*), adorned, 927.
Appareill, to deck, adorn, 5236.
Appetite, desire, wish, 2621; desire, love, 2896.
Apply, to bend to, submit to, 5313. *See* Aply.
Arew, arrow, 6162.
Argent (*argent*), silver money, 1119.
Armes, coats-of-arms, painted shields, 5481; a coat-of-arms (*sing.*), 5494.
Army dedes, deeds of arms, gallant acts, 1738, 4134, 5745; dedes Army, 1386, 1489.
Army peple (*gens darmes*), men completely armed, 2215.
Armyly (*tout arme*), completely armed, used as an adv., 5418.
Arson (*archon*), saddle-bow, 2961. Fr. *arçon*.
Asaid, said, 450.
Askes, ashes, 3412.
Assemble, encounter, 1728.
Assembled (*sassemblerent*), encountered, 1328, 1725.
Assoled, prob. error for assoiled, 5224.
Astabled (*establist*), established, 5281.
Astat, estate, condition, 393, 1257. *All. Poems.*
Astoned, stunned, benumbed, 4289.
Astronemie, 6, } astrology.
Astronemye, 187, } So in *Lancelot*, l. 432.
Astronomian, a man learned in astronomy and astrology, 12.

At end, at last, 4683, 5244.
Athirt, athwart, 169.
A-this-side, 266,
A-thys-side, 2469,
Athissid, 3472, } on this side.
Athissid Rome, on this side of Rome, a proverbial phrase for *anywhere*.
Ato, a-two, in twain, 3087, 5857.
Attamed, attainted, defiled, 466. See *atteindre* in Roq.
—"that a queene . . .
In any wise should be *attamed*."
Chaucer's Dream; 1128.
"Athamyd, as a wessel wyth drynke. *Attaminatus*."—Pr. Parv.
Attende, await, wait for, 1422; expect, 1425, 1465.
Aualed (*avalle*), let down, lowered, 3001, 4479. Ch.
Auaunce, to advance an opinion, propose, make provision, 2377.
Auaunce, 5566. *See* To-auaunce.
Auaunsing himselfe, proceeding on his way, 5655.
Auaunt (*moy vanter*), to boast, *p.*161. Ch.
Auenture, ill fortune, 391; good fortune, 416.
Auentures, adventures, *p.*102.
Auise, *sb.* counsel, 5269.
Auise, *vb.* pay heed to, 2014; perceive, espy, 4687; consider, 5454. Auise hym, let him take heed, 5382.
Auised, he perceived, 4448.
Auisse, good counsel, wisdom, 6486.
Auncion, old; most auncion = eldest, 1276; ancient, *p.*22.
Auncionte, antiquity, 6357.
Aunter, to adventure oneself, *p.*21. Ch.
Autentike, praiseworthy, exemplary, 6181. Cotg. gives under Authentique, "approved or allowed by authority."
Auynsime, a period of twenty days; hence, speedily; 1981. The Fr. text has *quinze Iours*. Wright's Prov. Dict. gives "Avintaine, speedily." Auynsime = Avintaine, just as O. Fr. oisme = huitième; and *vintaine* is O.Fr. for *vingtaine*, a score.
Auysilye, advisedly, wisely, 538.
A-where, everywhere, 4245, 4952, 5352. A.S. *Æg-hwær*.
Ay, ever, 3262, 3650, 4162. Ch.
Ay, each; in the phr. "other ay," 103. It seems to be put for "ayþer." "Ayþer oþer in armes con felde." *Gawain*, l. 841.
Aye, 2959; Ayen, 1735, again.
Ayne (*laisne*), eldest, 1695.

Bace, low, 621. See Bas.
Baculere, bachelor, a novice in arms or arts. See *Bacheler* in Roq. 616, 1925, 4243, 5955. [The MS. has in all four places the reading "baiulere," but it is hard to see how this can be right, unless the *i* had the sound of *j*, and even then it is a strange spelling.]
Bakke, in the phr. with the bakke = backwards, where *with* = A.S. *wiþ*, 4709.
Balled, bald, 3256. Ch.
Bandone, disposal, 4767.
"For both wise folke and unwise
Were wholly to *her bandon* brought."
Ch. Rom. of Rose, 1163; where the orig. has *a son bandon*.
Baptime, baptism, 1242.
Barge, a ship of large size, 1284, 5666. The Fr. text says it was so called because it was

si large. Roq. says, "grande barque qui portoit trois voiles et un ancre."

Baronage (*baronnye*), an assembly of barons, 685, 5199. See *barniez*, Roq.

Barony (*baronnye*), the same as Baronage, 853.

Barreres (*barriere*), barriers, bars, 4663. [M.S. Barrore, but Pr. Parv. has *Barrere*, q. v.]

Bas, low; gen. in phr. "hie and bas," high and low, 4, 523, 927, 945, &c.; *adv.* downwards, 665.

Base; in phr. base wise (*en bas*), in a low soft way, in a whisper, 2916.

Basly; more basly (*plus bas*) = lower, 1216.

Basse, low, 6157.

Bash, be amazed, wonder, 782. O. Fr. *esbahir.*

Basshed, amazed, 605, 2351, 2940.

Basterd, bastard wine, 979.

Bastiled (*basti*), fortified, furnished with defences, 1134. "Bastillè, fortifiè avec des tours et des créneaux." Roq.

Beforn, before, 1357, 4943, 5280. *See* Aforne.

Behest, promise, 273. Ch.

Behofull, behoveful, necessary, 3379, 4109.

Behold, *sb.* a look, glance, 3543.

Belay, belly, 4307, 4534.

Bement, bemoaned, 3320, 3883, 3907, &c.

Bered (*enseuely*), buried, 3399.

Berres, an error for Breres, briars, brush-wood, 3297. See Brere in Pr. Parv.

Besain, beseen, seemly, 858.

Besеying, busying, 3431.

Besinesse, industry, diligence, 2495.

Bete (*bastue*), adorned with *beaten* gold (?) 917. See Tyrwhitt, note to v. 981 of Cant. Tales.

Betan, the same as Bete, 4502.

Bethenke, think of, 3998.

Bette, 3034, } better. A.S. *bet.*
Bett, 5526, }

Better (*amere*), bitter, 2825.

Beuteuous, beauteous, 5077, 5192, 5441.

Bild, 1172, } built.
Billed, 3115, }

Blecere, wound, hurt, 3572. Fr. *blessure.*

Blenched, 3085, } swerved aside,
Blent, 4268, } shrank aside. See *Blench* in Wedgwood's Etym. Dict.

Blissed, blessed himself, crossed himself, 2813, 3417, 4807, 4754. The Fr. text generally has *se signa.*

Bliue, quickly, 5673. Rob. of Gloucest. l. 50.

Blode, in phr. of blode = by blood, i. e. by blood relationship, 4829.

Bode, *vb.* tarried, abode, waited, 2958, 4058. A.S. *bídan.*

Bode, *sb.* abiding, tarrying, rest, 1937, 4466. Ch.

Bole (*toneau*), a large-sized bowl, 2988. Cf. "His *bolle* of a *galun.*" *K. Horn*, 1123.

Bolned (*enflez*), swollen, 1428. "Bolnyd. *Tumidus.*" Pr. Parv. Sw. *bulna.* Dan. *bulne.*

Bonet, a small additional sail, 6407. "Bonet of a seyle. *Artemo, sirapum.*" Pr. Parv. See *Morte Arthur*, l. 3657.

Boode, tarried, waited, 5414.

Bood, awaited (*vb. act.*), 5458.

Botme, bottom, 4480. A.S. *botm.*

Brace, embrace, seize, 1446. "*bracer*, embrasser," Burguy.

Braid, Braide, Brayd, time, moment of time, 453, 486, 2828, &c. O.N. *bragð*, a rapid movement, a twinkling.

Braid (*braient*), cried out, lit. brayed, 2122. O. Fr. *braire*.

Brandes (*brandist*), brandishes, 5854. Unless it be an error for *brandest*, brandished.

Bred, broad, 5647.

Brede, breadth, 1180, 3008, 3101. Ch.

Brede, bread, 3661.

Breffes, letters, 2683. O. Fr. and Ger. *brief*.

Brend, Brende, burnt, 229, 2667, 3412, &c.

Brenne, to burn, 3229. O.N. *brenna*. Ger. *brennen*.

Brennyng, burning, 5347. A.S. *brenning*.

Brennynglie, fervently, extremely, 69.

Bretherin, brethren, 3666, 5344.

Breueloker, in a briefer manner, 6582. Cf. Goodlokest.

Briddes, birds, 877, 1003, 5476. Ch.

Brigge (*pont*), bridge, 1222. A.S. *brig*.

Brise, breaketh, 3748. Fr. *briser*.

Brought (*bourg*), town, 1171, 1199.

Bruled (*brulez*), burnt, 2289, 3313, 4855, 5246.

Bruschet, small twigs, brushwood, 3299. "Broce, menu bois;" Burguy. "Brossettes, small heath wherof headbrushes are made;" Cotg.

Bryghty, bright, 2149.

Burlid, striped; only in the phr. "burlid with siluer and Asure," 2809, 3492, 3870. "Burelle d'argent et d'azur; (We blaze it thus) he bears so many clossets argent and azure;" Cotg. Cf. the heraldic term Barruly.

Buschinentes (*bachines*), prob. an error for Buschinetes or Baschinetes, basnets, light helmets, 2148. See Bassinet in Cotg.

Bustesly (*raydement*), boisterously, violently, fiercely, forcibly, 2262, 3257, 4174, 4271. See Boystows in Pr. Parv.

By-ment, bemoaned, 1346. *See* Bement.

Byrnde, burnt, 3408.

Caitife, wretch, 3318.

Calange, challenge, i. e. claim, 3725. "Calanger, as Chalanger." Cotg.

Can (*scet*), knows, *p.* 108. A.S. *cunnan*.

Canoun, canon; right canoun = canon law, 8.

Carectes, characters, 6605.

Carfoukes (*carrefourg*), places where four roads meet, 1819. See Cartehowse in Pr. Parv. [Carfax is often derived from *quatre voies*; why not from *carre fourgs* (*quatuor furcæ*)?]

Carfty, crafty, 5708.

Cassedony, chalcedony, 4510. "And suþþe riche cassedoines;" *Fl. & Blanch.* 286.

Caste, plannest, intendest, 3016.

Catell (*des biens*), chattels, goods, 457.

Catholike, 462, 3500.

Cautels (*cautelle*), trickery, cunning, attempt at overreaching, 5563. See Roq.

Caytif, 2166, Caytiff, 3016, } wretch.

Ceason, season, 4150, 5521.

Celest, celestial, 5449.

Celestif, celestial, 3288.

Cereatly, *p.* 18, 6554, Ceriatly, 1836, } in due order. Lat. *seriatim*.

Cerched, searched, 4743.
Cerching, searching, 4656.
Certes, certainly, 3665, 4984.
Cesse, cease, 4043.
Chanon (*chanoine*), a canon, 644, 2626.
Chapitre-hous, chapter house, 3249.
Charge, *vb.* to heed, reck, care, 3937.
Charge, *sb.* regard, care, 4124.
Chaufe, to chafe, warm, 224.
Chaufed, chafed, warmed, 4024; chafed, angry, 3258.
Chausing, chasing, 4911.
Chere (*chier*), dear, 2749.
Cherefull (*tres chier*), dear, 2585.
Cherished, *vb. neut.* grew up, 4035.
Cherisly, dearly, 5338.
Cherishly, dearly, 122.
Chermat (*chiere mate*), chapfallen, 5882. See Char and Mat in Burguy.
Chersh, to cherish, 6318.
Ches, chose, 326.
Chese, choose, 4965. Ch.
Cheue, achieve, 597.
Childed (*enfanta*), bare, 1157, 1193; borne, 4401.
Chine, chink, 4343. A.S. *cíne.*
Chinesse, chine, back; chinesse bred = broad back; unless chinesse is intended for a gen. case, and then chinesse bred= back's breadth; see *brede.* The Fr. has simply *leschine;* 5647.
Chirmed, made a loud noise, chirped loudly, 878. Cf. "*synnigra cyrm,* the uproar of sinners;" Cædmon, ed. Thorpe, 145, 17. "With *charm* of earliest birds;" Milton, P. L. iv., 642. See Forby.
Chirsly (*moult chier*), dearly, 23.
Clariners, clarion-players, trumpeters, 2221. "Claryowre or clarenere, *Liticen.*" Pr. Parv.
Clarre, a clear wine, 972. See Claret, in Pr. Parv.
Claustrall, living in a cloister, 2595. Cotg.
Claymed (*clamez*), proclaimed, called, 1675.
Clemmyng, climbing, 235.
Clergy, 2552, } knowledge,
Clerigie, 7, } science. O. Fr. *clergie.*
Clerke, a scholar, 2552.
Cliue, clove, 1382.
Closed, enclosed, 5577; was enclosed, 4407.
Cloute (*drapelet*), a small bit of cloth, 2818. "Clowte of cloth, *Scrutum.*" Pr. Parv.
Cognicion, knowledge, 5981.
Collyng (*laccola*), taking round the neck, embracing, 2911.
Comeraunce (*freeur*), mental trouble, great fright, 4905. "Comerawnce. *Vexacio.*" Pr. Parv.
Comerd, cumbered with grief, overwhelmed with chagrin, 4402. See *Combrer,* Bur.; and cf. Ger. *kummer,* grief.
Comerous, cumbrous, troublesome, 4066. "Comerovs, *Vexativus.*" Pr. Parv. Also cumbersome, vast, 5773.
Comforth, *sb.* comfort, 3985; *vb.* to comfort, 3922.
Commaunde, commend, 3849, 4771.
Commaunded, commended, 264, 5166, 5439.
Commaundyng, commending, 3964.
Compernage, company, 1020, 3706.
Complesh, accomplish, 5212.
Compleshed, accomplished, 3960.
Comynly, commonly, 3685.

Comynte, community, 4072. "Comownte, *communitas*." Pr. Parv.

Concellour, counsellor, 3860.

Conclude, include, 6553.

Conduce, *p.*206, Condute, 6465, } to conduct.

Condute, conducted, 3358.

Conforture, aid, assistance, a strengthening, 4149.

Confraternite, *p.*39.

Coniectures, instructions, lessons, *p.*100. Fr. text, ilz firent comme bien *aprins*.

Conisaunce, 802, Conysance, 404, } knowledge.

Conne (*sauoir*), to know, *p.*104.

Connynghede, skill, *p.*5.

Conquere, to acquire, 1450, 3942, 4319.

Contred, encountered, met, 3346. *Obs.* It is followed by *again* = against ; contred again = met.

Contring [followed by *again*,] encountering, meeting, 1640; [without *again*] encountering in a hostile manner, 3030.

Contrepane, comparison, 6587. [The word here means lit. a *counterpart*, a sense which it has but very seldom ; see "Pane, or parte of a thynge ;" Pr. Parv. "Counterpaine, the counterpart of a deed ;" Wright ; Prov. Dict. The usual sense of Fr. *contrepan* is a gage, pledge.]

Contune, to continue to be, to remain, 2207, 2881.

Coppe, top, 5911. A.S. *copp*. W. *cop*.

Corage, intent, *p.*80 ; heart, mind, 355 ; thoughts, feelings, 1895, 2779 ; mind, will, 2012 ; of corage = in meaning, 530. See *Corage*, Roq.

Cordiall, prob. = by heart, *p.*10 ; unless it is a mere expletive.

Cornicles, chronicles, 1223.

Corporall, large of body, 4456.

Corsed, cursed, 4310.

Cost, side, quarter, direction, 605. O.Fr. *coste*.

Costile, a knife, dagger, 4334. *See* Custile.

Costile-yre, knife-iron, knife-blade, 4336.

Coude, knew, 9.

Couent, convent, 2659, 3254, 3266, 3321. O.Fr. *covent*.

Coursed (*mauldy*), cursed, 304. Cf. Corsed.

Couyne, contrivance, arrangement, manner, way, 5582. Ch. See *Conrine*, Roq.

Cowd, could, 4918.

Cowde, knew, 14.

Coyly (*coyement*), quietly, secretly, 2184.

Cracching, scratching, clawing, 5892. "Clawyñ or cracchyñ." Pr. Parv.

Creat, created, *p.*32.

Cressed, increased, grew, 5604.

Cressith, increaseth, augmenteth, 4262.

Cross, sword-hilt, so named from its shape, 4711, 5904.

Crown, tonsure, 3224.

Crusedly, cursedly, 5246.

Crussing, cursing, 2851.

Cure, care, charge, 2617. O.Fr. *cure*. Roq.

Curtois, 703, Curtoys, 97, } courteous.

Custell, a dagger, 5853. Fr. *couteau*, O.Fr. *coustel*, *coltel*, Lat. *cultellus*.

Custiles (*cousteaulx*), daggers, large knives, 1722.

Dampned (*dampne*), damned, 283, 307, 3335.

Damycel, damsel, 936.
Dan = Lat. *dominus*, a title often given to monks, 3259, 3272. Ch.
Dangerous, sparing, niggardly, 1812. Ch.
Debonair, 6525, Debonaire, 28, 828, Debonayr, *p.* 91, Deboner, 5147, } courteous, gracious, gentle. Ch.
Debonerly, courteously, 895.
Debonerte, affability, sweet and gentle demeanour, 3888. *Debonnairetè*, Cotg.
Dede, deed, 4364.
Dede, dead, 263, 297, &c.
Dede-cold, cold in death, 292, 453.
Defautes, defects, failings, *p.* 74.
Deing, dying, 5946.
Delefull, doleful, 3293.
Deliuerly, quickly, 2859, 4138. Ch.
Demage, damage, 1892, 2316, 3035.
Demain (*demaine*), service, use; [lit. property, domain], 5164. See *demaigne*, Roq.
Deme, to judge, 3600. Ch.
Demenyng (*demaine*), conduct, demeanour, 3584. See *demainer*, Roq.
Deminute, diminished, 5680.
Demurly, softly; demurly in audience, too softly to be well heard, 788. Fr. text, *tout bas*.
Departson, departure, 104, 1079, 3362, 5024, 5260, &c.
Depeynted, painted, 5503. Ch. has *depeint*.
Derain, 4643. *See* Deray.
Deray (*desroy*), foolishness, lit. disorderly conduct, 4524. Contr. from Disarray, as O.Fr. *desroy* from *desarroy*.
Desherite, disinherited, 1046.
Determine, to come to an end, 5596, 5974, 6135.
Deuer, duty, 6218. Ch.
Deuin, to recount; to deuin, so to speak, *p.*108, 3660. See *deviner*, Bur.
Deuise, *sb.* agreement, manner agreed on, 505; direction, appointment, 2385.
Deuise, *vb.* in the phr. to deuise = to relate, to recount, 479, 728, 983, 2846, 3744, 5603. [A mere expletive phrase, always at the end of a line, and introduced for the sake of the rime.]
Deuoir, 941, Deuor, 5304, } duty. Fr. *devoir*.
Diabolike, diabolic, 3499.
Diffame, dispraise, infamy, 2763, 2835, 3392.
Diffamed, of ill fame, infamous, 3475.
Diffaute, fault, sin, 2875, 3316, 4869; without diffaute = without fail, 3025.
Diffautes, defects, 6600, 6614.
Diffence, prohibition, 4393. Ch.
Diffended, forbade, 4392. Ch.
Diffy, to defy, 4193.
Diffynid, deceased, 4007.
Dight, to bring about, cause, 3444; decked, arrayed, 4023; prepared, ready, 5421. A.S. *dihtan*.
Digne, worthy, *p.*107.
Disancred, weighed anchor, 3360.
Discended, dismounted from horseback, 4891.
Discesse, decease, 3638.
Discomfight, to discomfit, subdue, 2535, 2970, 3233, 4087; discomfited, 2526.
Discomfite, 3121, Descomfite, 3129, } discomfited, subdued.
Disherite, disinherited, 5554; despoiled, ruined, 2662, 5234.

Disma[i]lled (*desmaillies*), deprived of its mail, hacked about, rent, 4357.

Disnature, unnatural conduct, 376.

Disordinatly, foolishly, lit. disorderly, 3560, 3670.

Disording (*desordonnee*), unruly, unbridled, loose in behaviour, 2768.

Dispend, spend, 41.

Displesance, sorrow, 3741.

Dispoilled, undressed ; desp. hym, undressed himself, 2888 ; desp. hir, undressed herself, 2908.

Distayn, deprive, 509. Ch. [lit. to deprive of colour, cause to fade.]

Distrained (*destrains*), afflicted, vexed, 614. Ch.

Distroed, destroyed, 4673, 4790.

Distrussand (*destruiant*), destroying, 4082.

Dole (*dueil, douleur*), grief, 657, 3206, 3669, 3763, 3969. Ch.

Dolent (*dolent*), mournful, sorry, 514, 3395.

Dongun, 1130, Dongon, 4766, Donion, 2983, } donjon tower, tower, dungeon. See *Donjon* in Burguy.

Doubtance (*doubtance*), dread, 2130.

Doubte, *sb.* fear, 2541 ; *vb.* are in fear, fear the worst, 1336. O.Fr. *douter*.

Doubted, feared, 1209, 1218, 1369, 2814, &c. ; ryght doubted (*redoubtee*), much feared or respected, 829.

Doubty, doughty, 1636, 4821, 6281.

Doubtyng, fearing, 4819.

Doucet (*doulx*), sweet, 877, 972, 1008, 3898.

Doughter, daughter, 5389.

Doughteth (*doubte*), feareth, 117.

Doute, *vb.* to fear, 2318 ; *sb.* fear, 4383. *See* Doubte.

Drad, [miswritten *draw*] dreaded, 5326. Ch.

Dresse, (1) *vb. act.* to direct, guide, 2604, 4490 ; *vb. refl.* go, 2195 ; vs dresse, direct ourselves to, i. e. go to, attain to, 6538 ; *vb. neut.* to go, 325, 5957. (2) to succeed in getting, 2179.

Dressed, erected, lifted, 4798 ; see *dresser* in Burguy. Also, arrived, come, 1444, 2063.

Dubte, to doubt, fear, 459.

Dured (*durerent*), lasted, 992. Ch.

Durith, lasteth, 6136.

Dreuyng, driving, hurrying, 1727, 2064. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, l. 761.

Drust, durst, 1101.

Dyght, to appoint for himself, 5408..

Ebrew, Hebrew, *p.*198.

Edefy, build up, 4009.

Edified, built, 1684, 2490.

Egal, Egall, like, equal ; *p.*182, 951, 2353.

Egally, *adj.* like, equal, 1165.

Egge, edge, 5932.

Ellyswhere, elsewhere, 4774.

Emprise, reputation, worth, high estimation, 2013. [This is the right sense in *Lancelot*, ll. 129, 269, 3458, though Burguy, Jam., Roq., and Cotg. give no other sense than *enterprise*.]

Enbras, surround ; lit. embrace, 395, 3304.

Enbrasing, embracing, 2911, 3771.

Enbrauded, embroidered, 1310. Cotg. gives "*brodè*, imbroyded."

Encheson (*achoison*), occasion, reason, 558, 2744, 5286. O. Fr. *achoise* or *encheison*, Lat. *occasio*. Ch.
Endly, having an end, final, 4011.
Enduryng, during, 4629.
Endys, ends, 2531.
Enfaimling (*affamee*), starving, succumbing to hunger, 1300.
Enfeffed, intrusted, 2617. O.Fr. *fiefer*, to give in fief; see Burguy, s. v. *fieu*.
Engendrure, parentage, 6345, 6388.
En-gree, in good part, 3819. Fr. *en grè*.
Engine, skill, 5046; craft, contrivance, 4244, 4392, 5613, 5708. Lat. *ingenium*.
Enhaused, raised, elevated, 6255. O. Fr. *enhalcer*, *enhaucier*.
Enheritour, heir, 5013, 5357.
Enlesing, lose (*inf. moul*), 5625.
Enmeddis, amidst, 4223, 5823.
Enmyddes, amidst, 870, 933, 1841, 3085, 3097, 4894, &c.
Enpreising, praising, 1671.
Enpreynted, imprinted, impressed, *p.*10.
Ensemble, together, 2474, 3996.
Ensuffering, suffering, 4627.
Entend (*actendez*), understand, heed, 2746.
Entendement, understanding, endeavour, *p.*81, *p.*84. Ch.
Entent, intention, will, wish, *p.* 18, *p.*82, *p.*155; thoughts, 3300, 3394. Ch.
Ententilly, attentively, 5459.
Entercommaunding (*sentre-commanderent*), mutually commending, 103.
Entere, inter, 4941.
Entered (*enterray*), interred, 1534, 3401, 3628.
Entermet, to have dealings with, 215. [O.Fr. *entremetre*, but this gen. has the sense of undertake, attempt, like Entremete below.]
Enterual, 591, / Enteruall, 1095, 2455, } time; lit. interval.
Entreloued, loved mutually, 3734.
Entrelouing, loving mutually, 6352.
Entremete (*entremectre*), to undertake, to take care to do, 3657.
Entrepreignant (*entrepreinnant*), enterprising, 2504, 5073, 5355.
Entreproched, approached each other, 2225.
Entresembling, encounter, 1730.
Entreual, 45, } time. *See*
Entreuall, 5165, } Enterual.
Enuiron, *prep.* round about, 570; *adv.* round about, round and round, 877, 2905, 4800, 5520. Fr. *environ*. Ch.
Enuironee, *adv.* round about, 5480; *prep.* round about, 3874.
Enuyron, *adv.* round, 4447.
Equipollent (*lequipolent*), equivalent, to the same effect, 530.
Erbigage, lodging, tent, 1017. O.Fr. *erbegier*, Roq.
Ert, (thou) art, 4256, 5573.
Escarmish (*lescarmuce*), skirmish, 2210.
Eschange, change, 3727. Ch.
Eschawfe, warm, 969. O.Fr. *eschaufer*.
Eschew, flee from, avoid, 4074. Ch.
Escried, cried out, 2185. O.Fr. *escrier*.
Esglise, a church, 2630. O.Fr. *esglise*.

Espouse, bride, 931, 954, 1000.
Estat, rank, 794, 813; position, 2903; state, condition, 3496. Ch.
Etern, eternal, 6437. Ch.
Eueridell, every whit, entirely, 2800, 2920, 4253.
Euerydele, entirely, 423. A.S. *dǽl*, a part.
Euerydell, all over, entirely, 2800, 3755.
Exampleir (*lexemplaire*), a copy, *p.*131.
Exemplair, a model, a pattern, 6377. [Lat. *exemplar* has both the above meanings.]
Exort, exhortation, 3972.
Expresse, exactly, 3004.

Faccion (*facon*), fashion, make, 3100.
Fade, to dispose, arrange, *p.*164. A.S. *fadian*, to set in order, dispose.
Fader, father, 683, 4642, 5118.
Faider, 6274, Fayder, 5258, } father.
Faders, father's, 4628.
Famylous, hungry, 6258. Lat. *famelicus*, O. Fr. *familleus*.
Fantain, fountain, 323, 765, 4161.
Fantesie, fancy, 358; a vain thing, *p.*58. Ch.
Fantesied, fancied, imagined, *p.*45.
Fantesy, 3485, Fantisie, *p.* 58, } fancy.
Fardell (*fardel*), a bundle, 573. Ch.
Fauchon (*faulx*, *branc*), a falchion, sword, 3042, 3044, 3051. Lat. *falx*.
Faut, to lack, 2175.
Faute, to lack, 797; hence fauteth = lacketh, 6379; fautih, miswritten for fautith, lack, 1147. Cf. Sp. *faltar*, It. *faltare*.
Fauted, failed, wanted, 4278.
Fauting, lacking, *p.*5.
Fayn, an error for Sayn, say, *p.*184.
Fe; in the phr. in fe = under tribute, 2511; also in fe = in fief, in fee, 2630. Mœso-Goth. *faihu*.
Feblesse, feebleness, 3740. Ch.
Feld, a field, 1702, 2216. Ch.
Fele, many, 2518, 2683. Mœso-G. *filu*. Ch.
Fell, fierce, 1237, 4063, 4760, 5410, 5631. A.S. *fell*.
Felonesly, cruelly, evilly, 270, 5785.
Felony, perfidy, treason, 2833. Roq.
Femine, feminine, 3820.
Fend, a fiend, 4075, 4141, 5783. Ch.
Fenestre, 3823, 4932, Fenistre, 3863, } a window. Lat. *fenestra*.
Fentise, cowardice, 4214.
Feresly, fiercely, 5870.
Ferrom, 629, &c. *See* A-ferrom.
Fers, fierce, 4655.
Fet (1) fetched, 2782; (2) feats, acts, 6330.
Fiffe, five, 5265.
Fifte, fifth, 4426.
Fill, fell, 3046, 3088, 4286, 5894; befel, fell out, 446, 2731.
Fille, fell, 5604.
Fin, 3645. *See* Fine (1).
Finabilly (*finablement*), finally, 5385, 6493.
Finance (*finance*), ransom, 1853. Burguy.
Find, in the phr. wel find = to pay, recompense, 1291.
Fine (1), extreme, very, 4175, 6155; see *Fin* in Burguy; (2) conclusion, end, 4011. Ch.

Flaelles (*fleaulx*), flails, 2999. Lat. *flagellum*.
Floure-delise (*fleurs de liz*), fleurs-de-lis, 1006.
Fly, flew, fled away, 4905, 5652.
Foley, foolish, 3546.
Folily, foolishly, 5602. Ch.
Foltish, foolish, 3322, 5559. "Folett, *idem quod* Folte. *Fatuellus*." Pr. Parv.
Folyly, foolishly, 3260.
Fonden, found, *p.* 173.
Fong, received, 2423; got, 1265; received, took in, 1333.
Fonge, to take, 4828. Ch. A.S. *fón*.
Forcelet, should rather be spelt Forceret, a casket, 1081. "Forceret, petil coffre, cassette." Roq. See note to "Foorcere" in Pr. Parv.
Forigers, foragers, 1815.
Formelet, should rather be spelt Fermelet, a brooch, a jewelled fastening, 1082. "*Fermal*, *fermail*, *fermeillet*, Agrafe, boucle, chaîne, crochet, carcan." Roq.
Forshend, utterly destroyed, 3306. A.S. *for* and *scendan*.
Forsmete (*detrenche*), smote down, 2104.
Fortake, kept prisoner, 5386.
For-takyng (*pourprins*), 5591. The Eng. word means a taking of prisoners, cf. Fortake; but the true meaning of *pourprins* is an enclosure, a domain. See Bur. and Roq.
Forth-progresse, journey, 3199, 5029.
For-why, wherefore, why, 3117.
Forwoxen, overgrown, huge, 2990. A.S. *forweaxan*.
Fouchesafe, vouchsafe, 2039.
Fouled (*afola*), killed, 4278. "*Afoler*, maltraiter, blesser, meurtrier, tuer." Bur.
Founte, 2650. The words "Raymounde" and "stounde" show that the word should be "founde." It should also prob. be joined to *in* preceding it; and we get in-founde = enter (sc. heaven), go in, go up, ascend. It is thus a compound of the O.E. *founde*, to go (*Morte Arthure*, 1228; *Lancelot*, 2612) A.S. *fundian*. Cf. A.S. *in-gan*, to enter.
Fourge, to make, perform, *p.*4, *p.*25, *p.*133.
Fourged, made, constructed, *p.*162, 257, 579; built, *p.*134, 1682, 3853. O.Fr. *forgier*. Bur.
Fourging, construction, 1002.
Foyson (*foison*), plenty, 32. *See* Fuson, Fusion.
Franchise, freedom, 3745; territory (see Pr. Parv.), 4961; hertes franchise = to heart's content, 5472.
Franchised, free, noble, lit. rendered a free man, 1487.
Franke, free, 1506.
Fransh, French, *p.*198.
Fray, terror, 4901.
Frendlyhed, friendliness, 1403, 6448; of frendlyhede, for friendship's sake, 3022.
Frenshest, most Frenchlike, *p.*175.
Frike (*frique*), fresh, delicate, 2803. "Fryke, or craske, or yn grete helthe. *Crassus*." Pr. Parv. See *frique*, Roq.
Fro-thens, thence, 3294, 3326, 3449, &c.
Fro-whens, whence, 3762, 5830.
Full, in an evil hour, lit. foully, 3263; that full hym come = that he had come to him in an evil hour, 2992; Fr. text, *que mal y vint*.

Fume, smoke, 3957.
Fumy, smoky, 3954.
Funde, find, 4676.
Fundementes, foundations, 1121.
Fusion (*foison*), plenty, 128, 4362, 5466 ; a number, multitude, 2283, 2743. Lat. *fusio*.
Fuson, plenty, 985, 5287 ; number, 1113, 1721.
Fuste (*poing*), fist, 4301.
Fyn, faithful, sincere, 3831. "*Fine*, vraie, sincère, fidèle." Roq.

Garison, healing ; take hym in garison = undertake to heal him, 1335. O.Fr. *garison*, from vb. *garir* = Mœso-G. *warjan*.
Gain, against, 2827, 3749, 3793.
Gane, did (*aux. vb.*), 5402.
Garnyson, stronghold, castle, 5467. See Garsone in Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has *en garnison* = by way of provisions, but the translator has not so taken it.]
Gayn, towards, 345, 564; against, 2791, 5863.
Geant, giant, 4676, 4687, &c.
Geaunt, 3233, } giant.
Giaunt, 3197, }
Gent, fair, pretty, 2441, 3490, 3590.
Gentile (*gente*), gentle, noble, 308 ; noble person, 643 ; pretty, 1611. The comp. is Gentelere, prettier, 1612 ; the sup. is Gentillest, prettiest, 342.
Gentilesse, graciousness, nobleness, 3175. Roq.
Gere, contrivance, plan; lit. gear, 276.
Gesian (*gesine*), child-bed, 4391, 4397, 4529, 5581. From O.Fr. *gesir*, Lat. *jacere*.
Gete, procure; gete do hym for to dy = procure his death, 3655 ; see Gett.
Gett, 3942, } gotten, obtained.
Gette, 4319, } In l. 5932 the sense is, whether (the stroke) was gotten with the back or the sword-edge.
Gidour, guide, 4105, 5833.
Gif, given, 5798.
Gisarmes (*pl.*), a weapon of which the shape is disputed, perhaps a battle-axe with a spike at the back ; see Bur., Roq., and Way's note to Gyserne in Pr. Parv. 1722. Used by Ch.
Gise, guise, manner, way, 5866. Ch.
Glente (*glissa*), glanced aside, 253. Ch. O.Fr. *glinser*, Roq.
Glinte (*clissa*), slipped, 4934.
Glode, glided, 726.
Goldish, golden, 1348.
Goddoughter, 3722.
Godmodere, godmother, 274.
Goodlokest, goodliest, fairest, 343. [In the Piers Pl. MSS. are many such forms, as, Lightloker, Mystiloker, Sadloker, Slilokest, Wikkedlokest, Wisloker.]
Goste, spirit, 3213, 4927 ; creature, being, 4809, just as A.S. *gæst* = a guest, a man, a human being.
Gostes, spirits, *p.* 46.
Gouernail, behaviour, 844; arrangement, management, contrivance, 861, 5561, 5774.
Gouernall, control, might, 6070.
Gouerneth hir, comports herself, 2765.
Grad, shouted, 2253. A.S. *grædan*.
Grame, grief, 2663, 3310, 4469, 4940. A.S. *grama*. Ch.
Gre, agreement, accord, 3951. Fr. *grè*.

Greabill, suitable to the occasion, devout, 5176.
Greabilly, satisfactorily, pleasantly, 1543.
Greable, agreeable to. 6580.
Gree ; *see* En-gree, 3819.
Gree, I agree, 5019.
Grees (*degres*), steps, 4917, 4908, 5434. Cf. *grissens* in Forby.
Greithed tham, got themselves ready, arrayed themselves, 1411. Sc. *graith*. O.N. *greitha*.
Greithed, made ready, 4168.
Gret, greeted, 5524.
Gretth, an error, either for Greeth = agreeth, suiteth ; or else for Goeth, 6561.
Grice, steps, 1427. *See* Grees.
Grint, ground, 3267. Ch.
Grinting, grinding, 2141. Ch.
Grohund (*liurier*), a greyhound, 1389.
Grome, man, being, 2990. Cf. *Gawayn*, 1006.
Gud, good, 4952.
Gudfader, godfather, 274.
Guerdon, *sb.* a reward, 551 ; *vb.* to reward, 1876. O.H.G. *widerlôn*, changed in Low Lat. into *widerdonum*, whence It. *guiderdone*, O.Fr. *guerdon*.
Gyed, ruled ; lit. guided ; 2487.
Gymnyng, a beginning, 789, 3977.

Habilite (*habillete*), ability, dexterity, 2341, 3021, 6139.
Habill (*habille*), able, dexterous, mighty, 2355.
Hable, active, 4536, 4639, 4876.
Habound, abound, 4429.
Had, was, 5065, 5326 ; was had = was, 5770, 5993 ; placed, set, 5492. Cf. Fr. *y avoir*.
Hamwarde, homeward, 3450.
Han = hath, 2699. [Prob. an error due to the pl. *sones* preceding. Fr. text, *a mis*.]
Hanche (*hance*), haunch, thigh, 3054, 4333 ; hanches = thighs, 5643.
Hansell, an earnest, a gift (ironical), 4885. O.N. and Dan. *handsel*.
Hapne, to happen to do, to succeed in doing a thing, 5884 ; hapned, happened on, lighted on, 5871. [Wrongly translated ; the Fr. has *happer* = clutch, seize.]
Hardesse (*hardiesse*), hardihood, 5948.
Hattyd of, hated by, 5091.
Haunt, to use, *p.*167 ; to exercise, prove, 2524 ; go, approach (Fr. text, *yroit*), 4396. O.Fr. *hanter*, Bur.
Hauour, possessions, riches, wealth, 3191, 3323, 4769, 5685. Fr. *avoir*.
Haused, raised, lifted up, 3083, 4265, 5883.
Hautain, loud, 2829, 3403, 3547, 4192, &c. Ch.
Hautanly, loudly, 2185.
Hautaynly (*haultement*), loudly, 1906, 1977, 3317.
Hautyng, loud, 236. *See* Hautain.
Hawse, exaltation, 498. O. Fr. *halt*, Lat. *altus*, high.
He, high, 132, 4631, 6395.
Hed, heat, 3557. [Prob. an error for *het* or *hete*, as in l. 2935.] Fr. text, *chault*.
Heder, hither, 152, 2843. A.S. *hider*.
Heder-to, hitherto, to this time, 4412.
Hend, gracious, courteous, 6144. See *All. Poems*.
Hent, to take in *hand*, undertake, 598 ; took, 129, 3909 ; hent

and went = took and went, 810; to have, 1837; receive, take, *p.*157, 683, 2411, 5241; to procure, 5740; to hent = for one to take, 5808; hys sight hent = catch with his sight, perceive (Fr. text, *perceuoir*), 5493; arrived at, got to, 5272; received, had, 5009. A.S. *hentan*, to hunt for, catch. Ch.

Herber, arbour, 6024. Ch.

Herbigage, lodging, 1790.

Herbiging, taking up their quarters, 1313.

Herbourgh, to harbour, shelter, 6523. A.S. *herebergan*.

Herd, hard, 2586, 4482; herd fast, 5645, where Fr. text has *dure feste* = hard *feast*, said ironically.

Herdly, tending a herd, shepherd-like, 5117. [An ill-coined word.]

Herite, heritage, acquisition; non herite = there is no acquiring anything, *p.*203; inheritance, possession, 38. O.Fr. *herite*, contr. from Lat. *hereditas*. Bur.

Hert, heart, 3206.

Hertly, heartily, *p.*73.

Hest, behest, command, 90, 907, 5313. Ch.

Hiduous, hideous, 5136.

Hiduou[s]nesse, horror, 3494.

Hiest, highest, 4925.

Hild, held, 4994.

Hire, to hear, 3877, 4763, 5055, 5529.

Hiring, hearing, 4202.

His, sign of gen. case, 4874.

Hit, it, 3109.

Hithe, height, 5045. Cf. *Heythe* in Pr. Parv.

Ho, who, *p.*134, *p.*136, 2368; which (of two), 4122, 4131; whoso, 5377.

Ho many, how many, 4042. [If so, *ho* should be *hou*, as elsewhere; but probably *many* is an error for *may*, as at l. 6572, and we should read "ho may" = who-ever may.]

Hodelnesse, secrecy, 2080; oblivion, 5961. *Hidellike* = secretly, occurs in *Gen.* & *Ex.* l. 2882. Cf. Sc. *hode*, to hide; Jam.

Hoder, whither, 2764.

Hoir (*hoir*), an heir, 1973.

Hoires, heirs, 508, 5323, 5554, 5684.

Hold, held as, considered as, 5204, 5338.

Hold, faithful, friendly, 2146. A.S. *hold*.

Holde, holding, possession, *p.*34. Or else, *in holde* may mean *very faithful*. *See* In.

Hole, holy, 4963.

Honorous, 3251, } honourable.
Honourous, 3236, }

Hostage, temporary abode, 2475. See *hoste* in Bur.

Houith, behoveth, 3657.

Houred, lit. divided in hours, hence set, appointed; always in phr. houred braid, houred tyde (or the like), = set time, particular moment, 528, 2695.

Hout, out, 5652.

How-were-it, howbeit, 3207.

Hug, huge, 4940, 5959.

Hume, damp, wet, 2882. Contr. from *humid*, of which the Prov. forms are *humid*, *humit*, and *humens*. Raynouard. [The Fr. text has merely *en vng puis*.]

Hurd, 3564, 3765, } heard.
Hurde, 4783, 5258, }

Hurteling, knocking together, pushing, tussling, 4328, 4330. Fr. *heurter*.

Hy. *See* An-hy.
Hy, hasten, 2950. Ch.
Hyduous, hideous, terrible, 5770.
Hyer, in phr. more hyer = higher, 5435.
Hyre, hear, 3388, 4405.
Hys, sign of gen. case, 6007.

Iape, a jest, 2636, 5695. Ch.
Iawne (*Iausne*), yellow, 971.
Iesseron, coat of small mail, 4335. O.Fr. *jazeran*, Bur. Roq.
I-horsed, mounted on horseback, provided with horses, 886.
Ile, 1570, 3040, Ille, 1578, } isle, island.
Image, creature, 1508.
In, a shortened form of Inly, very, exceedingly, 5077, 5899, 6023.
Incongrew, unfitly, wrongly, 4389.
Iniquite, misery, misfortune, 4156.
Inly (lit. inwardly), very, extremely, 27, 168, 3950, 4656, 5072, 5869. Ch.
Innepee, suddenly, on a sudden (?), 3823. Apparently contr. from Fr. *inopinè*.
I-now, enough, 165, 457, 781, 804, &c.
Instaunce, time, 1064, 2932, 3106.
Into (*en*), in, 875.
Ioint, an arrangement, lit. a juncture or joining together, 5019.
Iolyest, prettiest, 343.
Ionglyng, jangling, i.e. garrulousness, 3751. "Iangelynge, *Garrulacio*." Pr. Parv.
Iornay, lit. a day's work; hence trouble, labour, *p.*141.
Iournay, a day, 1851, 4068; a set day, 58; hence a day's conflict, a fighting-bout, combat, 4123. Cf. the expression, "to gain *the day*."
Ioustes, joustings, 988, 989. Ch.
Ioynant, adjoining, 4513.
Ioyned, enjoined, 5146.
Is, used as gen. case-ending, 28, 5750.
Iumelles (*iumelles*), strengthened with cross-pieces, made *doubly* strong, 1182. Fr. *jumeler*, der. from Lat. *gemellus*.
Iuparde, a doubtful result, possible danger, 5458. Fr. *jeu parti*.
Iustice, *vb.* to rule, govern, 3807.
Iusticere, a dispenser of justice, 5308.
I-wisse, certainly, 4847. A.S. *gewis*. Ger. *gewiss*.

Kechins, kitchens, 881.
Kennyng, the extreme distance at sea to which the sight can reach, 3365. [This distance has been much over-rated, as thus—"Scylley is a *kennyng*, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste point of Cornewaulle;" Leland, Itin. iii. f. 6.—"thre *kennynges* ferre on the see, that is, one and twenty leghes ferre;" Prose Romance of Melusine, fol. 61.]
Kepe, kept, 2931.
Keruyng, cutting, 5889.
Knakked, hurried(?), 2784. [The Fr. text has *Se Rapa* = he hastened. "Knock, to move briskly about;" Wright. But see the note.]
Knakking, knocking, 1733.
Knewlich, 844, Knowlich, 4121, } knowledge.
Knowleching, knowledge, 2773.
Kynred, kindred, 213.

Labbyng, blabbing, 3751. Du. *labben*. Ch.

Lachesse, negligence, *p.*11, 6574. O.Fr. *lachesse*. Ch.

Lad, led, 1251, 2754, 5800; led over, changed, 2938; conducted, governed, 5322.

Lade, passed through, endured, suffered, 3785; much as in the phr. to lead a life.

Lateis, lattice, grating, cage, 4747.

Latise, (*traille*), the same as Lateis, 4666.

Launcegay, a javelin, dart, 2108. Compounded of Fr. *lance*, and *zagaye*, a Moorish pike, Sp. *azagaya*. Ch.

Leche, a physician, 5143. Ch.

Led, laid down, 2889.

Lemys, limbs, 4237. A.S. *lim*.

Lenght, length, 5859.

Lepete, leapt, 3046. [An error for *lepte; see* l. 3070.]

Lere, to teach, *p.*77. A.S. *lǽran*. Ch.

Lese, to lose, 506, 1454, 2892, 3642, &c. Ch.

Lesing, a lie, 6293. A.S. *leasung*. Ch.

Lesing, losing, 5548.

Lesingmonger, a liar, 3604.

Lesingour, a liar, 5753.

Lesse, lose, 3542, 3752.

Lest, least, 69, 87.

Lete doo make, caused to be made, 5167; lete make, cause to be made, 691.

Lette, a hindrance, 5903. Ch.

Lette, prevented, hindered, 3047. A.S. *lǽtan*.

Leue, in the phr. parting leue = leave taking, 5060.

Leuer, liefer, 3205. Ch.

Leuer, (*leuier*), a lever, a huge mace, 4177, 4265.

Leuerey, delivery, 560.

Leuyng, hys = during his life, 5329; leuing, life, 488.

Lifte, left (hand), 4496.

Ligging, lying, 4511, 4785. A.S. *liggan*. Ch.

Light, lieth, 453, 1023, 4523, 6105.

Linage, lineage, 1036, 4630, 4926, 5033.

Loge, tent, 985.

Logge, lodging, abode, 5168.

Logges (*logies*), tents, 2220.

Loke (*enserray, serre*), locked up, constrained, bound up, 1533; was locked, was bound up, 3774. Ch.

Lome, frequently, 119.

"The Lion lete cri, as hit was do,
For he hird *lome* to tell."
Pol. Songs: ed. Wright, p. 197. A.S. *ge-lóme*.

Longing, belonging, 1939, 2671.

Longith hir, which belongs to her, 2415.

Loos (*los*), praise, *p.*96, 1225, 4215, 5387. Ch. "Loos, or fame." Pr. Parv.

Loote, lot, 3184.

Lored, taught, 3962. *See* Lere.

Lorn out fro wit, deprived of wit, 3885.

Losce (*perte*), loss, 3434, 3608.

Lose (*loz*), praise, *p.*157. *See* Loos.

Louers, louvres (*see* note), 1175. "That no light leopen yn at *lover* ne at *loupe*." Piers Pl. ed. Whit. p. 354.

Lowpes, loop-holes, 1175.

Lust, listeth, wishes, desires, *p.* 31, 2994; pleases, vouchesafes, 286; please, 367, 689, 760; hym luste = it please him, 5379.

Lust, *sb.* will, pleasure, 328. A.S. *lust*. Ch.

Lyn, linen; or rather perhaps, flax. A.S. *lín*, flax.
Lynde, lime-trees; wodes lynde = lime-trees of the wood; 159. A.S. *lind*, pl. *linde*, (Cædm. p. 197, l. 4).
Lyuerey, delivery, 560.

Made, mad, 3559.
Mahyme (*mehengnie*), disgrace, blemish, 6356. See *mahain* in Bur. and Roq. Cf. It. *magagna*. [*Mahyne* would perhaps be a better spelling.]
Maillet, mallet, 4698, 4716. "Malyet, betyl." Pr. Parv.
Maine, a suite, 1087, 1305.
Maistry, in the phr. to gret maistry = with great art; Fr. text, *par grant maistrie*, 4503; maistrie, art, skill, 188.
Maker, poet, author, 6106.
Malerous, evil-disposed, 6473.
Malice, *adj.* (*yrez*), angry, irate, 2780, 3039, 3446, 3537, &c.
Manhede, manhood, *p.*92.
Manion, many a one, *p.*170.
Manlyhed, manliness, 4352.
Manoir, mansion, 619.
Manson, abode, 5169.
Manyon, many a one, 634.
Marbre, marble, 4101.
Marches (*marches*), frontiers, and hence, lands, territory, 5085; frontier-lands, 5314.
Maree, marsh-land, land by the sea (?), 1586. The Fr. text has merely, *de la contre*. O.Fr. *mare*, a marsh. Bur. "*Mares*, *Maret*, lieu aquatique, terrein marécageux." Roq.
Maried, vexed, 4549. [An error for Marred, q. v.]
Markois, a marquis, *p.*115, 850; marquises, 6342.
Marred (*marriz*), vexed, afflicted, 2140, 3509, 3516. Roq.
Matrimonial, *sb.* a wedding, 952.
Mayne, or Maynee, a suite, a company of followers, household, 826, 2456, 4914, 5199. O.Fr. *maisnee*. Bur.
Me, men, people, used like the Fr. *on*, 6562; *K. Horn*, 366.
Meddes, the midst, 2531.
Meene, middling, 4061.
Meene, 4613, Mene, 4983, } mean, way.
Melled (*meslerent*), lit. meddled with; hence, had to do with, were busy about, 1545; (*mesle*), lit. mixed; hence, smeared, 2819.
Melling, an encounter, 1326.
Memoir, memorial, *p.*151.
Menal, menial, 900.
Menusing, diminution, 6570. Cf. O.Fr. *menu*, minute.
Mercy, in phr. graunt mercy = many thanks, 5533.
Messe (*messe*), mass, 943, 953, 6095. Ch.
Methephisike, *p.*80.
Metrely, metrically, 6566.
Meue, move, 6557.
Meued, moved, 3275.
Meueth, moveth, 5564.
Middes, amidst, 5779.
Ministre (*monstier*), minster, 2596, 2621, 3693.
Minstre, minster, 3319, 4856.
Mis-caunce, mischance, harm, 5642.
Miscreantes, misbelievers, pagans, *p.*52.
Misded, misdeed, sin; hence, untruth, 5662.
Misdede, misdid, sinned, 4646.
Misfall, to have misfortune, be unlucky, 3614.
Mister, need, 5213, 5874, 6253. O.Fr. and Prov. *mester*. Roq.
Mistriste, mistrust, 4108. Ch.
Mo, more, 964, 3696. A.S. *mà*. Ch.

Moder, mother, 4850, Ch; *adj.* mother, native, 6573.
Moisted, moistened, 3574.
Moisty, moist, 3953.
Moitees, halves, 5936.
Moitie (*moitie*), half, 734.
Mondiall (*mondain*), worldly, of this world, 18; earthly, human, 3915. Prov. *mondial.*
Montance, amount, quantity, number, 5229. Roq.
Morteis, to grant in mortmain, 6083. See *Amortir*, Cotg.
Mortesing, granting in mortmain, 5287.
Most, 4987, } must. Ch.
Moste, 5291, }
Mouth, to speak, utter, 2852.
Mow, may, are able, 5446. Ch.
Muable, changeable, 814. Fr. *muable.*
Murmurhed, murmuring, complaint, 3603.
Musarde (*musart*), one who is bemused, a fool, 5537. Bur.
Muserde, as Musarde, 5559.
Muses, thoughts, musings, 3431, 6513.
Mustred, fully exhibited, shown, 3003. O.Fr. *mostrer.* Sp. and Port. *mostrar.*
Mynstracy, minstrelsy, 944; *Lancelot*, 2762.
Mynstre, a minster, 4987, 5247.

Natheles, nevertheless, *p.*6, 5882.
Nauce, ship, 5673. See *Nave*, Roq.
Nawhere, nowhere, 4388, 4483.
Nay; in the phr. is no nay = it cannot be denied, 501, 3023, 3665. Ch.
Nehed, approached, 3005. A.S. *nehwan*, Mœso-G. *nehwjan.*
Nere, never, 5702.
Nerre, nearer, 4111, 5826. A.S. *nearra.*
Neuer-for-neuer, never at any time, 4906, 5139.
Noblehed, nobleness, 6339.
Nobles, renown, 21; splendour, 5474.
Noblesse, grandeur, splendour, 5438, 5460; renown, 2658; see *Noblesce*, Roq.
Nobley, fine apparel, rich clothing, 2656.
Noght-for-that (*non pourtant*), nevertheless, 2815, 4077, 4222.
Noisaunce (*enui*), vexation, 1865, 1892; displeasure, 3538, 5535; grief, 3373, 3738, 3915, 5641.
Nombred, numbered, 3687.
Nome, to take, 1403. Mœso-G. and A.S. *niman.*
Norish, nurse's, 3806; nurse, 3837; nurses, 4025.
Noriture, nurture, 3837.
Not-for-that, notwithstanding, 4703; nevertheless, 5883.
Nouell, novel, new, 5194, 5397; news, 2717, &c.
Nouels (*nouuelles*), news, 45, 4432, 4740.
Nouelles, news, 1627, 1949, 2125, 2206, &c.
Noyed (*ennoyee*), vexed, annoyed, 242, 1866; was vexed, grieved, 623.
Noyng, sorrow, grief, 2126.
Noyours (*nuysans*), annoyers, foes, 1663.
Noysance (*ennuy*), discomfort, trouble, grief, 383, 401; annoyance, offence, 2512.

O, one, a, 3770, 3773. Ch.
Obliuy, 3798, 5416, } oblivion.
Oblyuy, 5137, 5141, }
Occision, slaughter, 5320, 5908.
Oder, other, 5108.
Of, off, 5825, 5889, &c.

Offeryng, dealing a blow, 3090.
Of-fors, perforce, 5487, 5804, 6405.
Of-new, newly, lately, 3082; anew, again, 3511, 6101.
On-lif, alive, 4204. *Gen.* & *Ex.*, 2417.
Ooste, host, 1313.
Ope, open, 4907.
Or, ere, 4084.
Ordained (*fait ordonner*), made provision for, 2428.
Ordaynyng, set in order, draw up, 2222.
Ordinat, regular, *p.*188. Lat. *ordinatus*. Ch.
Ordinaunce, appointment, due order, 63, 699.
Orgulous (*orguielleux*), proud, 2955, 4067; surly, furious, 5771.
Orgulously, proudly, 3543.
Orison, prayer, 4969, 5171, 6425.
Orpheline, an orphan, 1708. Fr. *orphelin*, fem. *orpheline*.
Os, as, 554, 2076, 3372, 6424. [In the first three passages it has been wrongly altered to *as*; it occurs in some of the *Piers Plowman* MSS.]
Osey, the name of a wine, 982.
Other (*ou*), or, *p.*198.
Ouermette, excessive, immense, 3101. A.S. *ofer-mæte*, immensus. Grein.
Ouerthwart, perversely, hence excessively, 3171. Cf. Du. *overdwars*, athwart.
Ouise (*toit*), eaves, upper edge of the wall, 5504. A.S. *efese*, a margin, eaves. "Ovis, eaves." Barnes. Gloss. of Dorset Dialect.
Ourtorned, was overturned, 4713.
Outerly, utterly, 3683, 4050, 4291, 5203.
Outre, utter, speak, 1233, 1563, 2816, 3156, &c.
Outred, uttered, spoke, 1024, 1437.
Outring, uttering, saying, 2647, 3570.
Owe, to possess, own, have with one, 75; fiftene yeres gan owe = was fifteen years old, 4546. A.S. *ágan*.
Owyd (*auoit*), he had, possessed, held, 1298.

Paceyfed; *see* Pateyfed.
Pagent, page, *p.*79.
Pain, 721; *see* Pane.
Panche, paunch, 5773.
Pane, a stake, 724, the same as Pain in 721. See Pane in Pr. Parv.; "*Panne de bois* is particularly the piece of timber that sustains a gutter between the roofs of two fronts, or houses." Cotg. [In both places, *pale* would have been a better word, as the Fr. text has *pel*.]
Pane, lappet, flap, 5654. "*Pan*, the skirt of a gown, the pane of a hose, of a cloke." Cotg.
Pannes, pains, 1045. *Lancelot*, 1273.
Parage (*paraige*), parentage, birth, 475, 6007. Roq.
Parcas, perchance, 3690. *See* Percas.
Parcelly, partially, 4015.
Parde, par Dieu, 155, 3993.
Parfight, perfect, 3994.
Parfightnesse, perfection, *p.*9.
Parlement, a parliament, 2363; talk, discourse, 2653.
Part here (*partis dycy*), depart hence, 2839; part to you here (*part toy dicy*), depart thou hence, 5636.
Parted, departed, 2972, 5157.

Party, side, 228.
Passe, pace, 6068.
Passed, departed this life, deceased, 6182.
Passingly, surpassingly, very richly, 5299.
Pastay, a pasty, 5945. "Pasty, or pye." Pr. Parv.
Pastour (*pastour*), a shepherd, 5117.
Pateyfed (*prenoit a pastiz*), laid under tribute, 2530. "*Pastis*, contribution dont on est convenu, accord, convention ; *pactio*." Roq. [The word in the MS. is rather "pateyfed" than "paceyfed."]
Pauilon, tent, pavilion, 911, 1001, 2010, 5416.
Pauilons, tents, 869, 876.
Paupires (*papier*), papers, 4735.
Pawme, palm of the hand, 4306.
Pay, pleasure, 824, 1034, 5542. Lat. *pacare*.
Payny (*payennie*), heathendom, Pagan lands, 1564.
Peled (*pilliez*), pillaged, 2169.
Pensell, pennon, streamer, 1720. O.Fr. *pennoncel*.
Pensifnesse, sorrow, 4982.
Penticost, 6182.
Percas, perhaps, 3521, 5637.
Perde, par Dieu, 735.
Perdurable, everlasting, 6489.
Perdurabelly, 283, } everlast-
Perdurabilly, 6496, } ingly.
Perdurabilite, 3595, } ever-
Perdurabilnesse, 6537, } lastingness.
Pere, peer, equal, 3472. Ch.
Perfixst, fixed, 700.
Pering, appearing, 5944. Ch.
Perish, to cause to perish, impoverish, destroy, 3933.
Permanable, permanent, 6437.
Perrey (*pierrie*), jewelry, 4503. Ch.
Perron, a stone placed to help horsemen in mounting or dismounting, 4974. Gk. *petra*. Cf. It. *pietrone*. Bur.
Pertly, openly, straightway, 5474. Cf. Apertly.
Pesible, soft, gentle ; in wise pesible = in an undertone, 3653.
Pesibilly, peacefully, 2427, 5198.
Petyvins, men of Poitou, 1362.
Pight (*tendus*), pitched, 869, 918, 5417 ; set, placed, 5034.
Pilour, pillar, 5035.
Pine, pain, sorrow, torment, grief, 2899, 3634, 3668 ; trouble, 6515. A.S. *pín*.
Pipe (*tonneau*), a large barrel, properly a half-tun, 5773, 5926. "Pype, vessel, or halfe-tunne." Pr. Parv.
Pitty (*puis*), pit, 2882. [Cf. Moisty for Moist, Bryghty for Bryght.]
Plain, openly, 2994 ; at once, 2557. "*Plain*, clairement." Roq. "*De plain*, out of hand." Cotg.
Playnly (*a plain*), openly, 1567.
Plener, full, plentiful, 2751.
Plenerly, fully, 1931 ; plainly (Fr. *plaines pour voir*), 2047.
Plesaunce, pleasure, *p.*3, *p.*65, *p.*166, *p.*208, &c. Ch.
Plieth, bendeth, tendeth, *p.*81.
Plite, condition, 2721, 2803 ; ending plite = final state, death, 5681.
Ply, to bend, 4188.
Porete, poverty, 3666.
Port, 1350, } door, gate.
Porte, 2680, 5420, }
Port, Porte, burden, distress, 3819, 3925, 3987. Fr. *porter*.
Portraed, pourtrayed, 5478.
Poscede, possess, 2629.
Postell, apostle, 4963.

Postelles, apostles, 6477.
Poyntement (*ce point*), point agreed on, agreement, 505.
Predestinat, predestined, 4379.
Preise (*preisse*), prize, value, 1518. O.Fr. *preiser*. Bur.
Prented, imprinted, 3859.
Present, at this present, 2865.
Presentens, present time, 1439. O.Fr. *tens*, time.
Presently, now, 2370, 2841; immediately, 4748.
President, precedent, original, *p.* 16.
Prest, Preste, quickly, readily, 1697, 2542, 2739, 4486, 5023, 5403. Fr. *prêt*, O.Fr. *prest*.
Preue, privy, secret, 3462.
Preue, prove, *p.*92.
Preuyd, proved, *p.*170; approved, *p.*174.
Preuyngly, with good proof, 2524.
Preynted, imprinted, impressed, 382. "Preentyñ, *Inprimo*." Pr. Parv.
Preysingly, laudably, *p.*96.
Prise (*pris*), high estimation, fame, *p.*99; prize, 3895.
Procincte (*lenchainte*), neighbourhood, precincts, 737.
Proheim, *p.*29, / Prohemy, *p.*76, } proëm.
Prologe, prologue, *p.*76, *p.*210.
Promission; in phr. land of promission = land of promise, Palestine, 4634, 5713, 5759, 6063.
Promittyng, promising, 5128.
Prossesse; in phr. within prossesse = in process of time, 5288.
Prys (*pris*), honour, fame, 5387.
Psabulmes, psalms, 1670.
Pulcrious, fair, 1263. Lat. *pulcher*.
Punicion, punishment, 3671.
Purchas, to get, acquire, 1300; attain, reach, 546; attain to, have, 733, 1347, 1447, 2939; that it may purchace = that I may translate it, *p.*70; to purchas = to be got, to be had, 266; purchas syghes, heave sighs, 194; made purchas = acquired, 2497; riuage gan purchas = arrived, 2734.
Purchassyng, means of recovery (for him), 1375; Fr. Text, *Oncques homme ne le pouoit guerir*.
Purer, poorer, 2872.
Purueance, provision, 2376.
Purueyd, provided, 2378.
Pusance, power, skill, *p.*187.
Pusant, 4438, / Pusaunt, 212, } mighty.
Pusantly, mightily, 2466.

Quarell (*querelle*), suit, claim, demand, 5560. "*Querelle*, A sute, action, or process against," &c. Cotg.
Quented (*acointe*), acquainted, 2636.
Quicke, alive, 384; quicke roche, live rock, 1125, 4352.
Quite-clayme, a quit-claim, free and full pardon, 1885. Fr. text, *Il est de nous quicte clamez*.

Rabbishly, hastily, speedily, 4690. "Rapyñ or hastyñ. *Festino*." Pr. Parv. [Ravishing = rapid; Ch. Shak.]
Radde, read, 3203, 4651.
Raid, arrayed, drest, 1992, 4023. "Rayd, *ornatus*." Pr. Parv.
Raid, in the phr. ill raid (*tres mal atourne*), = in an evil plight; lit. ill dressed, but Raymond was undressed already, 2915.

Raide, in the phr. foule raide = put into an evil plight, 3090. O.Fr. *arroier*.

Ramage (*Ramaige*), wild, uncultivated, 527. Ch.

Randon, impetuosity, 1727. O.Fr. *randon*.

Rase, to tear, rend, 5884, 5938. Fr. *raser*.

Rather, sooner, 4011.

Raundon, as Randon, 3048, 5866; haste, 707.

Ray, array, apparel, 846, 2429.

Rayd (1), dressed, 2608; (2) read, 3186.

Raynes, the reins, 4325.

Rebaude (*ribaude*), a ribald fellow, a wretch, 2839, 4197.

Receit, retreat, place of shelter, 159. O.Fr. *recet*, Bur.

Rechaufed, warmed again, 4024.

Recluse, become a recluse, 4966.

Recomfort (*reconfort*), comfort, consolation, 412.

Recommend, entrust, 5208.

Recreant (*recreans*), defeated, utterly worsted, 4781, 5325.

Recreantly, disgracefully, 4436.

Redoubted, feared, 6168.

Redoute, *vb.* to fear, 2528. Ch.

Redrese, to set upright again, raise up, 3571.

Redyfy, rebuild, 3700.

Refection, repast, 5468.

Refershing (*se Reffrechy*), refreshing, recruiting, 1305.

Regiat way, royal way, king's highway, principal road, 5255. [Fr. text, *le grant chemin.*]

Regned, reigned, 5314, 5321.

Reioy, rejoice, 755, 2719.

Reioyed, rejoiced, 2928, 5042.

Reioyng, rejoicing, 425.

Rekke (*rasceillier*), a rack (for horses), 913.

Releued, lifted herself up again, 3789; releued hym, lifted himself up again, 4226.

Releuing, lifted himself up again, 4704.

Remayn, in the phr. do it to remayn = cause it to be carried or conducted, 584. [Fr. text, *le ramenez;* and the Eng. word is an awkward copy of it.]

Remeue, remove, move away, 3191.

Remew, remove, move away, 3069, 3943.

Remitte, restore, 5242.

Renay, deny, 2173, 4310. Fr. *renier*.

Renged, drew up in ranks, set in array, 2224.

Rengid, as Renged, 1315.

Rentid (*renta*), endowed with rents, 5300.

Repair (*repaire*), fort, fastness, 1133; abode, 5168; to your repair you take = betake yourself to your usual abode, i. e. to Poitiers, 574.

Repref, reproof, dishonour, 371, 1255, 1258, 2322.

Repreued, reproved, 237.

Requeryng, praying, beseeching, 3174.

Require (*requiers*), pray, *p.*204; beseech, entreat, 2579, 5612; ask for, 5383.

Requiring, praying, beseeching, *p.*61, 1616, 3352.

Resoned, talked to, 791.

Resplendising, shining brightly, 1196, 4512.

Rethoriously, rhetorically, with flourishes, 6611.

Retrair, retreat, 1001, 4707; return, 2824; withdrawal of a thing given, 5597; without retrair = without fail, 1622, 5149. "*Sans retraire* signifie sans appel, sans y manquer." Bur. vol. 2. p. 230.

Reuel, pleasantry, jesting, sport, 5193. "*Revel*, . . . badinage, plaisanterie." Bur. Ch.
Rew ; in phr. by rew = in order (lit. by row), 5211, 6500, 6554. Ch.
Rewarde, look about, consider, 1190, 2367, 5528. O.Fr. *rewaurder*. Roq.
Rewarded, regarded, beheld, 291.
Rewme (*royaulme*), 1467, 1505, 2412, 5552, &c.
Rewmes, kingdoms, 1647, 1662, 1669.
Richesse, riches, 5437. Ch.
Right (*droit*), law, 8.
Riuage, arrival ; riuage gan purchas = arrived, 2734 ; Fr. text, *arriva*.
Riue, open in one's dealings, public, openly manifest, 3461. "Ryyf, or opynly knowe. *Manifestus*, *publicatus*." Pr. Parv.
Riued, arrived, 1350, 6408.
Roche, rock, 4270, 4935, 5031.
Romans, romance, 6415, 6417, 6418, 6420.
Ron, run ; ron in age = advanced in years, 5425.
Rought, recked, 5106.
Route, company, 3787. Ch.
Routhe, ruth, pity, 3684. Ch.
Row, rough, 1266. A.S. *reoh*. Ger. *roh*. Ch.
Rowted, snored, 5784. Ch.
Rudesse, violence, force, 4272. Fr. *rudesse*.
Rychesse, riches, 5283.
Ryn, run, 3252.
Ryn (*rain*), border, edge, rim, 879. Ger. *rain*. O.Fr. *rain*.
Ryued, arrived, 3248. *See* Riued.

Saad, said, 647.
Sad, *adj.* wise, mature, discreet, 1088, 4876 ; set, determined, 2079. W. *sad*, firm, discreet. Cf. Dan. *sat*, O.N. *settr*.
Sad, *adj.* (= shad), separated, marked out, 576 ; separate, 2272. Mœso-G. *skáidan*, A.S. *scádan*.
Sad, *adv.* firmly, certainly, 874, 3274 ; determinedly, 2208 ; discreetly, quietly, 4104 ; firmly, fixedly, 3859 ; full sad = very certainly, 4459. [The word is often a mere expletive.]
Sagesse, wisdom, 6224.
Sagilly, sagely, 5315.
Said, an error for sad = discreet, 5788.
Sain, say, 1183, 2760, 2767, 2771, 5193. Ch.
Sain, seen, 729, 752, 2991, 3099.
Saluz, salutation, 347, 896, 901. O.Fr. *Saluz*. Bur.
Samfayl, without fail, 2351. [Rather read *sanfail* ; *see* Sanfaill.]
Sampler, *p.*77, } original. Lat.
Samplere, 2947, } *exemplar*.
Sampnolence, somnolency, slumber, 4616.
Sanfaill, without fail, 1590.
Santred, mused, wondered, 4653. Cf. Eng. *saunter*.
Satefied, satisfied, i. e. well rewarded, 1917 ; satisfied with presents, 5162.
Sauacion, salvation, 4970, 5155.
Sautes, assaults, 2145. Ch.
Say, essay, attempt, 354.
Sayand, saying, 206.
Saying-again, gainsaying, 3242.
Sayn, 51, } seen.
Sayne, *p.*186, }
Sayn, say, *p.*184.
Scaberge, scabbard, 2790, 3047, 3060, 4722.
Scarmish, skirmish, 2079.

Scaturday (*sempmedi*), Saturday, 2724.
Schapel, chapel, 771.
Schurch, church, 3247.
Scomfite, to discomfit, 4198.
Scomfiture, discomfiture, conflict, 4148.
Scripture, writing, record, records, *p.*118, 2076, 2115, 5484, 5494, &c.
Scorched, scorched, 3551. [Spelt *scorched* in l. 3678.]
Secundarilie (*secondement*), a second time, 512.
Sef (*sept*), seven, 4181.
Self, seven, 4182.
Seffe, seventh, 1261.
Sefth, seventh, 4427.
Seignorie (*seignourie*), lordship, dominion, 55, 5197, 5751; rank, high degree, 339. Ch.
Seignoried, was lord of, ruled, 5090.
Semblable, like, 6488. Ch.
Semblably (*samblablement*), similarly, in like manner, 5330.
Semblabilly, as Semblably, 1092.
Semblance, appearance, 1768.
Semblant (*samblant*), appearance, 1421. Ch.
Semble wyse, like wise, like manner, 1904. [Cf. *lyke-wyse* in l. 1901.]
Send, sent, 5273.
Sentence, meaning, sense, 6553, 6568. Ch.
Sentement, opinion, *p.*125.
Sept, seven, 1670.
Sepulture, sepulchre, 3627. Ch.
Sery, prob. an error for "say," 3556. [If *sery* exists, it can only mean *assert*. Cf. Lat. *sero*, It. *asserire*.]
Setterday, Saturday, 5598, 5601.
Seueralte, separate portions, 3640. [The text requires some word expressing the exact opposite of this, viz. integrity.]
Sew, to follow, 2002; to pursue, 1751. Ch.
Sewed, followed, 138, 142, 3980, 4476, &c.
Sex, six, 5281. Lat. *sex*.
Shad, shed, 5063.
Shal, an error for smal, small, 1393.
Shameuous, shameful, 3407, 3444, 5135.
Share (*trenche*), shore, cut, 3075.
She, it; used of a chamber, 4495, 4502. Fr. LA *chambre*.
Shend, despoiled, ruined, 4988. A.S. *scendan*.
Shereful (*chiere*), dear, 829.
Shete, to shoot, 1176.
Shette (*chut*), shot down, i. e. fell quickly, 5905. A.S. *sceótan*, unless it be imitated from Fr. *chut*.
Shill, shrill, 1997, 2209, 2976, 3317, 3403. "Schylle, and sharpe (schille, lowde), *Acutus, sonorus*." Pr. Parv. Du. *schel*.
Shiste, 2792. Prob. an error for shifte = divided the wood, sliced away at it. "Schyftyn, or part asundyr;" "Schyfteñ, or partyn, or delyñ." Pr. Parv. Cf. Du. *schiften*, Dan. *skifte*; Sw. *skifta*, to divide; O.N. *skifa*, to cleave, split; Ger. *schiefern*, to slice off. The Eng. *shive*, a slice, seems to give the true clue to the word. The Fr. text has *Tant boulta parcy et par la*, where *boulta* = *bouta*, thrust, smote.
Shitte, to enclose, 555; shut, 4409, 4412; shut in, 3295, 5791, &c.
Sho, she, 836.
Sighty, visible, 1229. Pr. Parv.
Simplesse, simpleness, lack of skill, 6567, 6601, 6608, 6610.

Sin, since, 3731, 4113, 5557.
Sinistre, left, 3049.
Sith, since; long sith = long since, 6209; euer sith = ever since, 4414.
Sithen, since, 163, 4424; afterwards, 3187, 3980. A.S. *siððan*.
Sixte, sixth, 4427.
Slay (*occist*), slew, 1251.
Sle, to slay, 210, 1367, 3017.
Slegges (*marteaulx*), sledge-hammers, 3000, 3065. A.S. *slecge*.
Sly, slew, 2090, 3978, 4073; to slay, 114.
Slye (*tua*), slew, 147.
Slyest, slewest, 4254.
Smortherting, smothering, 3303.
Soghed, sighed, 2890.
Sogheth, sigheth, 6164.
Solain, famous, excellent, fair, 864, 6104. O.Fr. *solempne*. Roq. [At l. 864 the Fr. text has *beaulx*.]
Solain, solitary, done in solitude, 4394; lonely, 5431. O.Fr. *soltain*. Bur. See Pr. Parv.
Sollemply, solemnly, 6192.
Sompnolence, slumber, 5384, 5452.
Sompnolent, slumberous, 5376.
Sonly, soon, 4078.
Sothlese, Sothlesse, truly, verily, 197, 417, 940, 2657, 3852. [Sothlese *should* mean *untruly*, but the author insists that it shall not.]
Soudan, sultan, 1301, 1315, 1371, 1383. Ch.
Soudiour, soldier, warrior, 4081. See Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has *fouldreant* = one who terrifies.]
Souerayn, supreme, 210, 291, 297, 387, &c.
Soule, sole, single, 3641, 3770.
Souly, solely, singly, 4198.
Souned, sounded, 4718. Ch.
Sounneth, soundeth, 5782.
Sowghid, sighed, 1944.
Sowly, as Souly, 4154.
Sparcled, scattered, 6480. "Splarplynge, or scaterynge, (spartelynge, sundrynge, sparkelyng). *Dissipatio*." Pr. Parv.
Spedfully, speedily, 3451.
Spell, to tell, relate, 5103, 5705. A.S. *spellian*.
Spere, sphere, 6509. *Lancelot*, 6.
Sperhauke (*espreuier*), sparrow-hawk, 5374, 5396, 5440, 5453.
Sperhauke, i. e. Sparrow-hawk castle, 5413.
Spored, spurred, 4214.
Sporing, spurring, 4098.
Sprancles, sprinkles, tear-drops, 4016.
Sprites, spirits, feelings, affections, 4648.
Staf, a line, verse, 6555. Cf. Eng. *stave*.
Staffes, lines, 6581.
Stage, story of a tower, 4925.
Standede, Standed, stone-dead, 115, 1376, 2282, 3121.
Staste, 1723. Doubtless an error for Stafte; they stafte them = they ranged themselves in line; an idea repeated in the words "putt into ordinance;" for the Fr. text has merely, *Lors se misdrent en ordonnance*. Cf. Staff, a line, *supra*. Kilian gives "*Staven*, Figere, pangere, statuere."
Stede, place, 4686, 4938, 4942.
Steke, to set, fix, 3538. G. *stecken*.
Stered, stirred, excited, 2217. Ch.
Stied, mounted, climbed, 5861. A.S. *stígan*.
Stikell, steep, 5848. A.S. *sticele*.
Stile, steel, 2259, 2960, 3042.
Stilen, of steel, 256.
Stoke, stuck, 3955.

Stonde, time, 3517. *See* Stounde.
Stonde, astonied, 2346. *See* Stoned.
Stoned, astonied, amazed, 728, 2940, 4700; in a trance, 3569. O. Fr. *estoner*.
Stonyng (*esbahissement*), abashment, cause of shame, 1230.
Stound, } time period, instant,
Stounde, } 237, 312, 532, 633, 703, &c.; chiefly in phr. that stounde = at that time. A.S. *stund*. Ger. *stunde*. In Du. *stond* = moment, instant.
Store, 5617. An error for Stere, to stir, cause, bring about.
Stour (*estour*), also Stoure, conflict, combat, 1360, 2231, 4165; pace, rate, 4827. Ch.
Stourne, stern, 5730.
Stratte, strait, narrow, 5809. Lat. *strictus*.
Strayned (*destraint*), strained, tormented, 1406.
Streight, stretched, made ready, 869, 918, 1005, 5417. A.S. *streccan*, to stretch; p.p. *gestreht*.
Streith, straightway, 712.
Strenght (*fort*), a fortress, 1179, 1184, 1192, 3452, &c.
Stroied, destroyed, 2857, 3313, 4854.
Stroyng, destroying, 3408.
Suatte, sweated, 3079.
Suete, to sweat, 4851.
Suffisantly, sufficiently, 3984.
Sughed, sighed, 5024.
Sugret, 3848, } sugared, sweet.
Sugred, 6029, } Ch.
Sured, betrothed, 5087.
Surmitte, to lay a charge on, impose a task on, 5606. The line means, "To impose a task on Palestine, my youngest sister." "*Surmettre;* imposer, charger, accuser." Roq.
Surrend, to restore, render back again, 4986.
Suster, sister, 5595. A.S. *suster*.
Sustre, sister, 5606.
Sustres, sisters, 5575.
Swatte (*tressue*), sweated, 2781, 2876, 4929.
Syn, afterwards, *p.*176; since, 4928. *See* Sin.
Synny, sinful, 5218.

Tach (*tache*), a blemish, 1265.
Tacked (*attachierent*), attached, 4802. Pr. Parv.
Taking, *sb.* capture, 4920; *vb.* taken, 4921.
Talmondois (*taillemondoiz*), 1224. Prob. the name of a place, as *taille* = district. Roq.
Targe, target, shield, 4212.
Tasting, feeling, testing, 4491. Ch.
Teise, draw near to, approach, 1295.
Tend, vexed, grieved, 2328; irritated, disquieted, 5785; was vexed, incensed, 3213. A.S. *teonan*, to vex, irritate, incense.
Tende, kindled; debate tende = kindled strife, 2097; kindled, lighted (Fr. text, *allumer font*), 2136. A.S. *tendan*, to light, kindle.
Ternyne, to finish, bring to an end, 5996.
Terrene, earthly, 417.
Terrenly, as regards lands; wurthy terrenly = a great landholder, 5014. [The Fr. text has *sera grant terrien*, where *terrien* = *terrier*, seigneur qui a beaucoup de terres.]
Tewisday, 2670, 3247, } Tues-
Tewsday, 3309, 5763, } day.
Tha (*ilz*), they, 1365.
Thaken (*esprins*), taken, seized, 3292.

Thaught, taught, 98, 768, 3962.
The, prosper, 4959. A.S. *þeón.*
Then, ten, 3477.
Thenke, think, 3801, 3804, 3815.
Ther-hens, thence, 4345. [Perhaps an error for Ther-thens.]
Ther-thens, thence, 3125, 3350, 4818, 5070, 5517, 5763.
Therthorough, thereby, 3149.
This, thus, 2892, 3424.
Tho, those, 1343, 1653, 3176, 3218, &c.; A.S. *þá.* Ch.
Tho, then, 253, 4534, 5391. A.S. *þa.* Ch.
Thorught, through, 3863.
Thought, though, 6611.
Thrall, *adj.* subject, 4714.
Thraste, to thrust, 4233.
Throw, time; that throw = at that time, 626; in a throw, in a brief space of time, 3360. See Pr. Parv. A.S. *þrah.* Ch.
Thwanges, 568, } thongs. A.S.
Thanges, 582, } *þwang.*
Thyme (*temps*), weather, 2735.
Thys, thus, 297, 3218, 3279, 5069.
Timbre (*fust*), wooden hilt, 1377.
Tirandise, tyranny, 4732.
Tirandisse, tyranny, 6487.
To, two, *p.*173, 31, 144, 1648, 1649, 1651, &c.
To-auaunce (*ton deuancier*) preceding (you); man to-auaunce = ancestor, 5566.
To-bore, native, 6563.
To-breke, brake very much, 5893. A.S. *to-brecan.*
To-chapped (*detrenche*), cut small, 2272.
Togeders, together, 102, 1027, 1727, &c.
Told, accounted; noght told of = thought nothing of, 3029.
To-rent, rent severely, 5648; quite broken, 4290. Ch.
Tomorne, to-morrow, 2749.
Torn, turn, 2764, 2838, 2938, 3043, 6566; return home, 5266. Ch.
Torned, turned, 3738.
Torning, 2905, } turning.
Tornyng, 3449, }
To-stoniste, much astonished, 2198.
To-tere, to tear severely, 5938.
To-tore, tore severely, 5872.
Tour, a tower, 4662, 4772, 4907.
Tour, a turn, circuit, 3875. Fr. *tour.*
Townishe peple (*celles de la ville*), people of the town, 2443.
Toxicat (*envelyme*), poisoned, 1333, 1429.
Traiteresse, traitress, 2770.
Trauers, in the phr. in trauers (*au trauers*), across, 1161; across, sideways, 5886.
Trauersing, changing about, changing the place of words, 6562.
Traying, for Tarying, tarrying, 49. *See* note.
Trenchand, cutting, 3045. Ch.
Trewage, tribute, 4729, 4739, 6154. O.Fr. *treu, treuage.* Roq.
Trimble, tremble, 3997.
Trought, truth, 2919, 3697.
Trouth, truth, 3710.
Trowe (*trou*), a hole, 4270.
Trowing (*se croy Ie*), as I suppose, 3575, 4260; expecting, trusting, 4266.
Trusse, *sb.* a bundle, 720; (see Pr. Parv.); pack off, begone, 3011. O.Fr. *torser, trusser.* Bur.
Trussing (*destruisant*), making (them) pack off, routing (them), 2154; perhaps here used in the sense of destroying.
Tydy, timely; tydy stounde, timely moment, 5722. Cf. Ger. *zeitig.*

Vail, to avail ; but used in phr. vail that vail might = happen what may ; Fr. text, *vaille que vaille*, 2672.
Uaillant, valiant, 4650.
Ualay, valley, 4160.
Ualey, valley, 584, 725, 747, &c.
Valoure, value, power, *p.*50, 3899.
Uandosme, 3484. This is a proper name (the modern Vendôme), and the allusion to it must be a proverb. The line means, "By the tears of Vandosme's beauty," (*or* face, *or* appearance), though "hys fair" is merely expletive. Fr. text, *Et, pour la larme de vandosme.*
Uarray, very, 5399.
Uermaill (*vermeillon*), vermilion, scarlet, 3213, 4279, 5477.
Uerray, very, 4652.
Uiage, journey, expedition, 3123, 5820 ; purpose, 3953 ; necessaries for a journey (Lat. *viaticum*), 5020 ; of viage = on their journey, 2476. Ch.
Uilloined, dishonoured, slighted, 2993. O.Fr. *vilainer*. Bur.
Vilously (*villainement*), insultingly, 2861.
Uitaill, victuals, eatables, 5022, 5466. Ch.
Uitaillouns, 987. An error for uitaillous, eatable, life-sustaining.
Vmbleste, humblest, 4842.
Unbore, unborn, 3709.
Unconnyng, unskilful, 6610.
Vnconnyngnesse, lack of skill, *p.* 12.
Vnfold, explained, *p.*130 ; to narrate, relate, 893, 4372, 5124 ; visibly, openly, plainly, 697, 2350, 5038 ; produced, given birth to, 4401 ; unfold of = brought forth by, 465 (cf. l. 4401) ; narrated, related, 5990 ; evident, manifest, openly displayed, *p.*35, 26.
Vnhaply, by ill chance, 5918.
Unknow, unknown, 843, 4954.
Unmesurabelnesse, want of moderation, talkativeness, 3594.
Unmete, immense, measureless, 5775. A.S. *unmette.*
Unnethes, scarcely, 318, 778, 1405, 1703, &c. A.S. *un-eáðe.* Ch.
Vnperfight, imperfect, sinful, 5225.
Vnshit, } to open, 3501 ; open-
Vnshitte, } ed, 3945, 4747, 5792.
Vnwemmed, unblemished, 6569. *See* Wemme.
Uoide, to depart, 4109, 5590. Ch.
Uoided, departed, 5639 ; avoided, 3084.
Uois, voice, 2404, 3547, 4870.
Uolente (*voulente*), wish, desire, 47, 3473. Ch.
Voluntarily (*voulentiers*), gladly, 5055.
Uomed, foamed, 3215.
Uoyding, avoiding, 4672.
Vre, common custom, habitual use, 3722. See Nares' Glossary.

Wacche, watch, 5523 ; to watch, 5375, 5395.
Wacchyd (*veilla*), watched ; wacchyd his person = took heed to himself, kept himself awake, 5518.
Wace, was, 4769, 4844, 5243.
Waillant, valiant, 5354.
Wak, } to watch, 5444, 5454.
Wake, } Ch.
Waked, watched, 5461.
Waking, watching, 5527.
Walling, welling up, 4161. A.S. *weallen.* Ger. *wallen.*
Wallure (*murs*), walls, 1152, 5504.

Waloping, galloping, 4827. Kilian gives "Galoppe, waloppe" in Appendix. See note to the line.
Warant, safeguard, defence, 4195; to guard, save, 4201.
Wardain, warder, 4415. Ch.
Warde, *sb.* custody, 4824; *vb.* guard, 5003, 5005; cf. *garde* in l. 5004.
Warde (*gardez*), take care, beware, 805, 834.
Warented (*pouoit garir*), defended, saved, 2237.
Warly, warily, 41, 4267; *adj.* warlike, 1362.
Waymented, lamented, 3324. O.Fr. *waimenter*. Bur.
Waymenting, lamenting, 4953; *sb.* a lament, 3459. Ch.
Wemme, spot, blemish, 466. A.S. *wem*.
Wend, to turn about, 6566; went, i. e. arrived, 3453; went, 2264; turned, overturned, 2104.
Wendyng, turning, 2905.
Went, weened, knew, 5646. See note to the line.
Were (*guerre*), war, 2980, 3056, 3172, 4056, &c.
Were, whether, 5659. *See* Wher.
Were, wary, 4063,
Werly, warlike, 1591, 4148.
Wern (*escondiroie*), deny, refuse, refuse to do, *p.*126, 556, 1494. A.S. *wyrnan*.
Wern, warn, 4197. A.S. *wernan*.
Werne, to deny, refuse, 82, 86, 520; *see* Wern.
Werre, war, 3659, 4429.
Werred, warred on, 5318. Ch. *werreie*.
Werrely, in a warlike way, 1741.
Wersom, weary, 4406; wersom goste = tired, oppressed spirit.
Wher, } whether, 359, 4048,
Where, } 4654, 4657, 5083.
Where (*guerre*), war, 1281.
Where-hens, whence, *p.*114, 3351, 3383, 5489.
Wherethorugh, whereby, 447, 3389, 4404.
Wherethorught, wherefore, 3079.
Whight (*hardis*), nimble, vigorous, 2522. Suio-G. *wig*. Sw. *vig*.
Whilis, whilst, 5597.
Wice, wise, 4896.
Wight, nimble, swift, 4910. Ch.
Wightly, quickly, 326; nimbly, 2260, 4226; soon, 4697, 4843; strongly, vigorously, 3066, 4699.
Wighty, nimble, quick, (= Wight), 4704. Cf. Bryghty, Pitty, Moisty.
Wilfull, willing, glad, 1641.
Will, *adv.* well, 5527, 6171.
Wilnyng, wishing, 3178. Ch.
Win, to rise, get up, 2986. See Jam. s. v. Win—"to win up, to rise."
With, *used in the sense of* by, 4673. Ch.
Withdraught, withdrawal, 5927.
Withsay, to gainsay, 86, 3235; refuse, 5529. A.S. *wiðsæcgan*. Ch.
Withsaing, gainsaying, 482. *See* l. 485.
Wo, *adj.* sad, 2538, 2562. Ch.
Woer, sadder, 2855.
Wode, mad, 3291, 4897. Ch.
Womanhed, womanhood, 2315.
Wonderly, wondrously, 26, 5282; wondrous, 1241.
Wone (*demeure*), dwelling, 5786. Ch. [The MS. has *lone*.]
Wordle, world, 166, 2049, 4838, 5782. "Al þe welthe of þis *wordle*. and þe woo boþe." Piers Plow. ed. Whitaker. l. 10.
Wordly, worldly, 457, 2644, 2923; mortal, 1177; living in this world, alive, 3533. [*Lance.*

lot, 3184, *has* ward = warld, world. *So* werd = world *in Gen. & Ex.* 32, 1315.]
Worle, world, 3816, 3841, 4007, 5179, 5353, &c.
Worly, worldly, 3838, 4110, 4373, 6510.
Worm, a large serpent, 5859. A.S. *wurm*. O.N. *ormr*.
Wormes, serpents, 5772.
Wout, wot, know, 761.
Woxin, become, 3436.
Wrake, harm, hurt, 5933. A.S. *wræc*.
Wraste, wrested, i. e. pierced, 1377.
Wrete, written, 6401.
Wreth, *sb.* wrath, 231 ; *vb.* to make angry, 2856.
Wrethed, made angry, 4853.
Wroght, 2780, } wroth.
Wrought, 3543, }
Wrothed, was angry, 1254.
Wurght, *adj.* worth, 5940.
Wurghtinesse, worthiness, 5959.
Wyght, a wight, a creature, 3992. A.S. *wiht*.
Wyghtly (*ristement*), nimbly, quickly, 235, 333.
Wylfully, at will, 327.
Wyn, to go, 3253. *See* Win.

Yaf, gave, 218, 559.
Yaffe, 1587. *Here* porte yaffe = left harbour, set sail.
Yande, yonder, 5827.
Yanyng, yawning, 5852, 5941.
Yef, gave, 652.
Yeff, give, *p.*191, *p.*196, *p.*209, 75 ; given, 88.
Yefte, gift, 550.
Yeman (*varlet*), a yeoman, a squire, 5164, 5174.
Yerfull, ireful, angry, 3258.
Yeue, give, i. e. deliver, 462.
Yeuyng, giving ; but used as = had given, 4720 ; giving, *p.*47.
Yif, given, 5557.
Yifte, gift, 558, 687, 5401, 5406.
Yiftes, gifts, 1071.
Yongling, youngling, youth, 3843.
Youthnesse, youth, 5221.
Yowlownesse (*crinx blons*), yellowness, 3887.
Yoy, joy, 3760, 3991.
Ypocras, the name of a compound wine, 972.
Yre (*fer*), iron, 1377, 2786, 2999.
Yrous, angry, 4889.
Yrously, angrily, 4692.
Yut, yet, *p.*21, 3709, 5351, &c.
Ywis, certainly, *p.*116.

Zowning (*se pasme*), swooning, 287, 3569, 3776 ; a swoon, 3781.
Zownyngly, swooningly, 3566.

Ȝere, years, 126.

INDEX OF NAMES.

[In this index, the references under words in large capitals are to the *pages* of the book; otherwise, the references are to the *lines*. By *p.* is meant *page*, and by *prol.* the "Prologue."]

Albany, 4386, 5362.
Allexaundre, 6322.
Almayn, 2066.
AMERYS, AMERIE, or AMERYE, earl of Poitiers, *p.*8; adopts Raymond, *p.*11; goes out hunting, *p.*12; is accidentally slain by Raymond, *p.*16; is buried, *p.*29.
Angoy (Anjou ?), 968.
Anthonye, *prol.* 177.
ANTONY, or ANTHONYE, fourth son of Raymond and Melusine, *p.*48; besieges Luxembourg, *p.*64; marries Christian, *p.*71; further notice of him, *p.*184.
Aras (Arras), 2640.
Ardennes. *See* Dardane.
Aristotle, quoted; *prol.*78.
Aritrige (= Autrige, i. e. Austria), 2497. Fr. text. *Autriche.*
Armenia. *See* Hermeny.
Arminiens, 1604.
Arragon, or Arrigon, 4636, 5168, 5607, 5709, 5764, 5768.
Arthur, *prol.*91, 5748.
Aucerre (Auxerre), 975.
Auoblon, or Aualon, 4548, 4644, 4858.
Ausoy (Alsace), 1700, &c.
Ausoys (Alsacians), 1703, 1733, 1736, 1743, 1750, 1754.
Ayglon, 5007.

Bachus, *prol.* 37.
Barry. *See* Salz.
Baueres (Bavaria), 2066.
Bernagant, 4312; an error for Ternagant = Termagaunt.
Bertram, son of Amerye, 28.
BERTRAM, son of Anthony, and grandson of Melusine, becomes king of Alsace, *p.*90.
Bewme (Beaune), 970.
Bew-repair, 1171; Fr. text, *le bourg ou a moult beau Repaire.*
Bewuais (Beauvais), 2640.
Blanche (daughter of Amerye), 27.
Brehaigne (Bohemia), 1696, 1939, 1951, 1972, 5328.
Brehaignous (Bohemians), 2072, 2093, 2116, 2154, 2182.
Bretain, 5086.
Brough-dieu, 2623.

Cambrere, 5359.
Celestines, 5961.

Charlemain, 6359, 6360.
Chartres, 2633.
Cipresse (Cyprus), 1297, 1467, 1600, 5317, 6275.
Ciprian, king, 1142, 1352, 1437.
Ciprian, a man of Cyprus, 1414.
Cipriens, men of Cyprus, 1316, 1332, 1338, 1400, 5351.
Coinqs, also spelt Quonig, Conqs, and Comquez, a mountain in Arragon, 4607, 4625, 5708, 6061.
Columbere (Coulombiers), 34, 125, 146, 866, 1099.
Comquez. *See* Coinqs.
Constantinoble, 946, 4516.
Couldrette, author of the French version of the romance, 6423, 6433.
Craquo, king of, *p.*76; killed by Raynold, *p.*82; burnt by the men of Alsace, *p.*83.
Cristian, daughter of the duke of Luxembourg, *p.*64; gives a feast to Anthony and Raynold, *p.*68; pardons the king of Alsace, *p.*70; is married to Anthony, *p.*71; asks Anthony to wear the arms of Luxembourg, *p.*75.
Crius, 5672.

Dardane, 2488. An error for *d'Ardennes*, the place meant being the French department named Ardennes.
Denmarke, 2465.
Digon (Dijon ?), 974.
Dingenon, 982.

Eglentine, daughter of the king of Bohemia, *p.*78; laments his death, *p.*79; besieged by the Saracens, *id.*; welcomes the king of Alsace, *p.*83; is married to Raynold, *p.*87, 88.
Englande, 5357, 5741, 5968, 6006.
English Knight, the; his adventure in Arragon, 5741—5971.
Ermynee, daughter of the king of Cyprus, *p.*51; laments his sore wounds, *p.*52; besieged by the Saracens, *p.*53; made heiress by her dying father, *p.*56; marries Uriens, *p.*59.
Esclauons, 2075, 2091, 2094.
Estables, 978.

Faborugh, 2496. An error for Friburg; Fr. text, *bribourg*.
Famagouce, Famagousta in Cyprus, 1299, 1304.
Flourye, daughter of the king of Armenia, *p.*61; marries Guy, *p.*62.
Forest, earl of; 36, 60, 79, 91, 101.
Forest, earl of. *See* Fromounte.
Fraunce, 5687, 6388.
Frige (Phrygia), *prol.*36.
Frise (Friesland), 2463.
Fromont, seventh son of Raymond and Melusine, *p.*49; asks his father if he may turn monk, *p.*92; becomes a monk at Maillezais Abbey, *p.*95; is burnt by Geoffrey, *p.*96 (of which there is a more detailed account, *pp.*113—117).
Fromounte (earl of Forest), tempts Raymond to find out where Melusine goes on a Saturday, *p.*98; is threatened by Raymond, *p.*101; slain by Geoffrey, *p.*102 (of which there is a longer account, *pp.*169, 170).

Gaffray (Geoffrey), sixth son of Raymond and Melusine, *p.*49; says he will fight the giant Guedon, *p.*91; his fight with Guedon, *pp.*105—109;

slays Guedon, *p.*110 ; says he will go to Northumberland, *p.*113 ; burns down Maillezais abbey, *pp.*114—117 ; goes to Northumberland, *p.*118 ; he is to rebuild the abbey, *p.*129 ; fights with the giant Grimold, *pp.*141—151 ; enters the enchanted mountain, *pp.*155—164 ; slays Grimold, *p.*163 ; sees Raymond, *p.*167 ; kills his uncle Fromounte, *p.*170 ; rebuilds the abbey, *p.*176 (cf. *p.*182) ; is assoiled by the pope, *p.*180 ; goes to Montserrat, *p.*181 ; hears of Palestine's treasure, *p.*207 ; falls ill, *p.*208 ; dies, and is buried in the abbey, *p.*209.

Gawayn, *prol.* 97.

Gian (Guienne), 6362.

Greffon, son of Uriens, 1562, 1584, 1585.

Grimold the giant, is sought by Geoffrey, *pp.*141—144 ; fights with Geoffrey and flees away, *pp.*145—151 ; found and slain by Geoffrey, *pp.*161—163.

Guedon the giant, wastes Guerrande, *p.*91 ; fights with Geoffrey and is slain, *pp.*105—110 ; was cousin to Grimold, *p.*148.

Guerrande, 2950, 3140, 3157, 3343, 4832.

Guy, third son of Raymond and Melusine, *p.*48 ; goes to Cyprus, *p.*51 ; aids the king of Cyprus, *p.*52 ; marries Flourye, and is king of Armenia, *pp.* 61, 62 ; alluded to, *p.*183 and *p.*192.

Helmas, king of Albany, and husband of Presine, father of Melusine, Melior and Palestine, *p.*152 ; enclosed in the enchanted mountain, *p.*153 ; his tomb, *p.*156 ; his history, *pp.* 157—160 ; alluded to, *pp.*168, 173, 193, 199, and 207.

Hermeny (Armenia), 1637, 5321, 5369, 5372, 5391, 5672, 6275.

Horrible, eighth son of Raymond and Melusine, *p.*50 ; Melusine advises that he be slain, *p.*128 ; he is stifled in a cave, *p.*137 ; alluded to, *p.*184.

Hungery, 5993.

Iason, 1573.

Ihesu, 6525, 6539.

Iohan of Pertenay, 6217, 6233.

Iudas Iscariot, 3337.

Iupiter, 4313.

King of Bohemia ; *see* Brehaigne.

King of Craquo (Cracow) ; *see* Craquo.

King of Cyprus ; *see* Ciprian, king.

King of France, 6265, 6272.

King of Hermyne (Armenia) ; his adventure at Sparrow-hawk Castle, *pp.*186—195.

Lancelet, *prol.*95.

Latin, 6558, 6565.

Lesignen, *prol.*135, *prol.*195. *See* Lusignen.

Lochier, 2486.

Lusignen, built and named, 1138 ; name alluded to, 3725 ; used as a war-cry, 5352 ; the romance named from it, 6420. [Mentioned very often.]

Luxembrough, 1235, 1697, 1802, 2096, 2475, 5333.

Lyon (pope Leo), 4964, 5144, 5156.

Mabregon, *prol.*172.

Machon, 31.

Mahounde, 310, 4313.

Mallers Abbey (now Maillezais), 1252, 2553, 2581, 2591, &c.; burnt down, 2666, 3291—3325; rebuilt, 5104; Geoffrey is buried there, 6099.
Margot, 4312.
Mars, 2671.
Mathefelon, 6236, 6301.
Medee (Medea), 1572, 1575.
Meisiere (Mezieres), 2492.
Mel (Melle, dep. Deux Sévres), built, 1199.
Melior, second daughter of Helmas and Presine, *p.*159; alluded to, *p.*174; keeper of Sparrow-hawk Castle, *p.*185; interview with the king of Armenia, *pp.* 190—194.
Melusine, eldest daughter of Helmas and Presine, *p.*158; her doom, *p.*159; meets with Raymond, *pp.*19—27; marries Raymond, *pp.*33—44; builds Lusignan, Mel, &c., *pp.*45, 47; her children, *pp.*46—50, *p.*92; is seen bathing by Raymond, *p.*100; comforts Raymond, *p.*104; Raymond calls her serpent, *p.*124; she reproaches him and bids him adieu, *pp.*125—134; is changed into a serpent and vanishes, *p.*135; reappears, *p.*139; her name explained, *p.*45.
Merkministre, 2622.
Merlyn, 5973. *See* note.
Meruant (Mervent), built, 1200; given to Thierry, 5007.
Meuse (river), 2491.
Midas, *prol.*36.
Mont-sarrat (Monserrat in Arragon), 5148, 5169, 5296, 5305.
Mychaell, 6462.

Norbelande (Northumberland), 3163, 3168, 4055, 4726, 4823.
Norway, 6278, 6280.

Octauian, 2.
Oedes (Eudes), second son of Melusine, *p.*47; marries daughter of the earl of Forest, *p.*63; alluded to, *p.*183.
Ortholegne, 2464.

Palestine, youngest daughter of Helmas and Presine, *p.*160; mentioned, *p.*174 and *p.*193; she guards her father's treasure in Arragon, *pp.*196, 197.
Panebourght (Pembroke), 5357.
Partenay (Parthenay), *prol.*122, *prol.*146; built, 1204. [Mentioned very often throughout the poem.]
Partenay, lord of, 6145; date of his death, 6182.
Partenay, Iohan of; *see* Iohan.
Pareys (Paris), 2640, 5690, 6202.
Payny (pagan lands), 1564.
Paynymes, 1328, 1385, 1395, 1469, &c.
Peyters (Poitiers), *prol.*121, 3, 21, 32, 174, 521, &c.
Peiteuin (a Poitevin, a man of Poitou), 1374.
Petyuins (Poitevins), 1362, 1733, 1743, &c.
Peito (Poitou), 1220.
Penticost, 6182.
Perceuale, *prol.*97.
Perregort, 6354, 6372.
Poiters, 53, 64, 89, &c. *See* Peyters.
Polin (Apolin), 4312.
Pope, the; 2636, 5144, 5156, 5216, 5224, 5253.
Presine, wife of Helmas, *pp.*157—160; mentioned, *p.*174.
Promission, land of (land of Promise, Palestine), 5713, 5759, 5786, 6063.

Quonig, 4607. *See* Coinqs.

Raymound, son of the earl of Forest, adopted by Earl Amery, *p.*11 ; hunts with Amery, and accidentally kills him, *pp.*12—18 ; meets with Melusine, whom he marries, *pp.*19—42 ; permits his son Fromont to turn monk, *pp.*92—95 ; is tempted to see where Melusine goes on a Saturday, *pp.*98, 99 ; sees her bathing, *p.*100 ; his rage, and self-reproaches, *pp.*101—104 ; hears how the abbey of Maillezais is burnt, and visits the ruins, *pp.*119—121 ; his grief, and how he called Melusine a *serpent*, *pp.*122—124 ; his adieu to Melusine, and lament at her loss, *pp.*135, 136 ; sets out for Rome, *p.*173 ; is pardoned by the pope, *p.*177 ; becomes a hermit, *pp.*178, 179 ; dies, *p.*182.

Raymond, ninth son of Raymond and Melusine, *p.*92, *l.*2550 ; where "Fromont" is a mistake for "Raymond" ; becomes earl of Forest, *p.*184.

Raynold, fifth son of Melusine, *p.*49 ; goes with Anthony to Luxembourg, *pp.*63—68 ; goes with him next to Bohemia, *pp.*74—85 ; marries Eglentyne, *pp.*86—89 ; mentioned again, *p.*184.

Ris, 980.

Rochel (Rochelle), 31, 968 ; built, 1219 ; *also* 1282, 2529, 3807, 5110, 6461.

Romain (Romanée ?), 972.

Romayns (Romans), 2469.

Rome, 266, 4964, 5068, 5119.

Saints, invocation of. On *pp.* 221, and 222, the following saints are invoked : SS. Agnes, Andrew, Augustin, Clement, Cuthbert, Denise, Edith, Germain (Germanus), Iohan the baptist, Katerine, Lauerence, Martin, Mary, Magdeline, More (Maurice), Mychaell, Nicholas, Paul, Peter, Seuerine (Severinus), Siluestre, Steuin (Stephen), Vincent. Also at *p.*224 thanks are given to S. John the apostle, S. Michael, and the Virgin Mary.

St. Cross, church of, 6189.

Seint Johan-of-Angely (now St. Jean d'Angely), 976.

Seint Iougon, 975.

Seint Lowes (Louis IX.), 6199.

Seint Martin's, 2630.

Seint Messent (St. Maixent), 1200.

Seint pursain (St. Pourçain-sur-Allier), 980.

Salz and Barry (Salisbury), *prol.* 178.

Sarasins, 1311, 1330, 1964, 2089, 2099, &c. ; all killed and burnt, 2290.

Sarasyne, 309.

Saturday, 490, 2724, 5598, 5601.

Soudan (Sultan), 1317 ; killed, 1381.

Sperhauke castell, romance of ; 5370—5678.

Suriens, 1387.

Terry. *See* Thierry.

Tewsday, 2670, 3309.

Theophillus, 6459.

Thierry, tenth and youngest son of Melusine, *p.*92 ; is to be lord of Parthenay, *p.*138 ; nursed by Melusine by night, *p.*140 ; goes with Geoffrey, *p.*173 ; governs Parthenay, *p.*175.

Tholouse, 5159, 5199, 5982.

Tiberius Cesar, *prol.*28.

Tourain, 970, 2629.
Toures, 2629.
Tourimz (Tours?), 974.
Trinite, the ; 6434, 6547.
Tristram, 5750, 6008.
Trompe (name of a tower), 1186.
Turkes, 1387.

Valerius Maximus, *prol.*27.
Vandosme, 3484.
Vauuant (Vouvent), built, 1200 ; 2676, 3125, 3368, 3372, 3453, 5007.
Uiart, 978.
Virgin Mary, 465, 6455, 6548.
Urien, or Uriens, eldest son of Melusine, *p.*46 ; goes to Cyprus, *p.*50 ; kills the sultan, *p.*53 ; is made king of Cyprus, *p.*57 ; marries Ermynee, *p.*59 ; noticed, *p.*183.

William, 6175.

Yrlande, 6286.
Ywon, 2490.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

PR
1119
A2
no.22

Early English Text Society
[Publications]
Original series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH